

ARCTIC DIARY OF ANTON M. VEDOE





<u>CONTENTS</u>	<u>Page</u>
Preface	1
Quincy Enterprise Story	2
Brief History of Anton	3
Photo-Vedoe Family 1910	5
Front Face Brochure Vedoe-Peterson Co.	6
Vedoe Family- Copy From Newspaper, SAMHOLD	7
Diary Foreword	10
Notes From Baldwin-Ziegler Expedition	12
Application- Baldwin Ziegler Expedition	16
Declaration of Intention	17
Copy Article San Francisco Chronicle	18
Porter's Story Baldwin Ziegler Expedition	25
National Geographic June 1903	28
Members Of Expedition	31
Anton's Diary Starts- Tromso Norway	32
Leave Tromso For Russia And Then North	40
Fiala Letter To Ziegler-Nat. Geo. Nov. 1903	45
First Issue "Arctic Eagle"	48.1
Map-Course of AMERICA	50
Arrival Camp Abruzzi	51
Map-Camp Abruzzi	55
Map-Teplitz Bay, Rudolph Isl.	61
Day of S.Y. AMERICA's Shipwreck	73
General Order 32	84
Photo-Anton and His Dog Team	88
First Start for Pole	92
Second Start to Pole	95
Map-Part of Franz Josef Archipelago	96
Porter and Vedoe Start 33 day Journey	97
Photo-Nansen's Hut	106
Porter's Report on Sledge Journey	110
Start Sledge Trip-Porter, Vedoe, Rilliet	116
Arrival "Elmwood", Cape Flora	129
Departure for Camp Abruzzi	139
Start 3rd Attempt to Pole	152
Photo- Nearing 82° North Latitude	156
Vedoe, Tessem and Stewart Start South	158
Relief Failure- National Geographic Oct. 1904	135
Relief Plans- National Geographic April 1905	163
Rescue	176
Discharge	178
National Geographic Sept. 1905	179
Annual Dinner- National Geographic Jan. 1906	181
"Fighting The Polar Ice"- Nat. Geo. Jan. 1907	185
Porter's Account of Expedition	187
John Vedoe- Log July 8- Sept. 1 1905	193
Death Certificate	213
Map-Franz Josef Archipelago	Back Cover



Presented to:

NORSK POLARINSTITUTT  
BY

Douglas Vedoe January 1991

Spruce Head, Maine 04859 U.S.A.

# PREFACE

August 1990

This project was conceived about 1934 when I was 14 years old. My father had given me his Arctic diary, and having learned to touch type at home using my brother's study manual, I thought setting the diary in type would be "duck soup". The project languished. All that was accomplished was some tentative date classification. The work of transcription came to life fifty-five years later. I finally began the transcription, when having time after retirement, and with the gift of a wonderful electronic typewriter the work became simplified.

As I worked two things entered my mind; I wished that I had started this when Dad was alive so I could go deeper into the diary entries, and I realized how little I knew of his early years. Unfortunately, the relationship of father to son never crossed into the familiarity of friends where personal history, thoughts and views were discussed. I wish it had been different. I have a million questions for him.

As for his early years I have found some sketchy information in family papers. The diary is written mostly in English. I wondered where he learned to speak and write English; what was his education? I have some answers and will include them in a brief biography of Anton along with a little history of the Vedoe family.

This started out solely as a transcription of the diary, but blossomed into what is here so that Anton's grandchildren, their children, Anton's Norwegian cousins and my brothers and sister would have a broader picture than the diary alone would present and so that they will have an idea of their heritage, as I have done for myself.

This work is dedicated to all the Vedoes who are related to Anton M. Vedoe, my father, and to his memory.

Douglas Vedoe

Rackliff Island

St. George, Maine.

Many thanks to Jean, my wife, for her patience with me while I worked on the transcription, and for her help in proof reading and her suggestions on text.



# The Quincy Enterprise

Quincy News for Quincy People—All the News—Social and Political Topics—City Affairs—Clean, Interesting, Enterprising

No. 111. No. 27

QUINCY, MASS., FRIDAY, NOVEMBER 18, 1921

PRICE, TWO CENTS

## QUINCY RESIDENT IS A FORMER EXPLORER

### Took Part in Attempts to Reach North Pole

It is not every community that can boast a citizen who has spent years in the Arctic regions on North Pole expeditions. So when we heard that there was a former Arctic explorer living in Quincy we hunted him up.



ANTON VEDOE

We found Anton Vedoe, member of the two Ziegler expeditions that made attempts to reach the North Pole from 1901 to 1904. He lives at 581 Cheriton road, Wollaston, and with his partner is head of the Vedoe-Peterson Company in Wollaston.

From the desolate miles of ice-fields that our geographies in school told us stretch for hundreds of miles in that northern portion of the globe, to the comfort and safety of living in a modern and very pleasant home in Quincy is a far stretch. But when we asked whether he did not have some interesting reminiscences that might interest folks who perhaps had not heard much about the North Pole region at first hand, Mr. Vedoe went back almost a score of years, and told vividly of life in the Arctic, of hairbreadth escapes and of thrilling adventures that became common occurrences.

Mr. Vedoe's first Arctic exploring began in 1901. With the Baldwin-Ziegler expedition he set out in a whaling vessel flying the American flag, leaving the port of Norway. Dogs and Siberian ponies were put aboard ship in northern Russia and the little party started out, the ship laden to the gunwales with men, supplies and animals.

Adverse ice conditions made the progress slower than they had expected. Finally Franz Joseph's land was reached, and then there were three months of sledding 35 tons of supplies from the ship over the frozen wastes of ice to a base farther north. Conditions continued on every hand adverse, and the following autumn found them forced to return.

The next and longer expedition came in the spring of 1903, when Mr. Vedoe was again a member of the second party sent out by Mr. Ziegler and commanded by Explorer Anthony Fiala.

During this expedition three separate attempts were made by portions of the party of 39 men to reach the pole, and they did get within 82 degrees, or about 500 miles of their objective. Unfavorable weather conditions, the breaking up of ice floes, etc., condemned this second expedition to failure to reach its main objective, although valuable scientific observations and information were obtained.

The loss of the ship, "The America," which became jammed by ice cakes and then frozen into packs of solid ice, later disappearing completely after a two-day hurricane, was of course a blow that can be appreciated. Hundreds of miles from any civilization, the little party were left in that white stretch of icefields and towering bergs with no ship to take them back to the civilized world.

During the long wait for the relief ship Mr. Vedoe himself discovered a rich vein of coal in the mountains, and more than 30 tons were mined by the party for fuel.

What Mr. Vedoe remembers as perhaps the most thrilling of his endless breathtaking adventures in this land of zero weather, six months' darkness, of long trips over ice-fields, so rough and broken that every step forward was a gamble with death, occurred in the fall of 1904.

With two others, Mr. Vedoe had been detailed to a special expedition into Prince Rudolph Land, carrying ten days' provisions for the short trip. The journey because of conditions of the ice stretched into two months. Imagine the party of three,

with their dogs pushing through the dark, for the six-month night had set in, and suddenly finding that the ice on which they stood had broken away from the floe, leaving them afloat on the ocean and drifting in the current out to open sea.

Their feelings as they realized that they were being carried out on the black water to certain oblivion, Mr. Vedoe vividly remembers, and when they suddenly beheld a huge white mass towering a hundred feet in the air over them as a floating iceberg came toward their ice cake, they stood and waited for the inevitable. Then the crunching and crashing of the ice as the terrifying shape sliced the edge off their floating raft of ice, leaving them again to the less certain perils of the open sea, must have been welcome sounds.

A change in the direction of the wind, after hours adrift, brought their floating house back to solid ice and the comparative safety of the frozen land.

For hours and hours Mr. Vedoe could talk of those years in the north, of adventures and escapes that make some of our newspaper tales seem like child's play.

Of temperature that "never got lower" than 63 degrees below zero; (there was rarely a time when some part of the body was not frostbitten or blistered from the cold), of the long winter months when the moon and the stars were all that lit up the perpetual night; of the fare, "pemmican," a composition of dried beef, raisins, currants and tallow, bear and walrus meat and blubber; of blustery nights in the little huts that sheltered them; no news for month after month of the outside world, and seeing no human beings except members of their own party.

With all the hardships and disappointments and dangers, Mr. Vedoe would not give up the memory of those four years in the Arctic, and he enjoys bringing out his trophies, a polar bear's skull, walrus tusks, petrified fossils, and his pictures, many of them painted and crayoned by the artist of the party.

And when winter winds bring the temperature along the South Shore down toward zero, we can remember a story Mr. Vedoe tells of one member of the party, who after falling into the icy water off a cake, had the unpleasant experience of putting on a complete change of dry clothing while standing on the ice, though, as Mr. Vedoe tells the story, "fortunately the temperature was not low,—only four degrees below zero."



### A Brief History of Anton

Anton Marius Vedoe was born December 17, 1880 in Stockholm, Sweden.

His parents, August Vedoe (Nov. 12, 1849-Feb. 7, 1933) and Martha (Pederson) Vedoe (Oct. 1, 1852-Oct. 17, 1947) were born and grew up in Skreia, Norway. August grew up on the Vedoe farm on the edge of Lake Mjosa, about 50 miles north of Oslo. Martha lived nearby and was employed by the Vedoe family. (I have visited her home and met some of her relatives.)

The farm is still (1990) owned and operated by the Vedoe family. It is fairly large on the shore of Lake Mjosa with mountain hillside behind. The major crops are market onions and onion sets. My second cousin, Odvar, has recently retired from farming and has turned over the operation of the farm to one of his daughters, as neither of his two sons wanted to do farming.

In 1964 I met Einar Vedoe, Dad's first cousin and Odvar's father. I was startled by the close resemblance of Einar to Dad. Einar remembered Dad's visit after the Ziegler Polar Expedition. The intention to visit his relatives in Norway is noted in the Arctic diary.

The Vedoe family did not approve of the marriage of August to Martha. August was disowned and with his wife, Martha, moved to Stockholm, Sweden in 1874 where he was "Keeper of the Royal Clocks". There are allusions in "Samhold" and in the Wergeland chronology to his profession being an architect, but we do know for certain of the clock relationship. I can remember Dad telling me how as a child he would skate with his father on the frozen waterways of Stockholm while August adjusted some of the clocks within his responsibility. He spoke of hot chocolates and music from bandstands along the way.

August and Martha had seven children of which six survived:

Karin Martha- called Carrie. Aug. 19, 1876-Oct. 21, 1932. Came to the U.S. in March 1893. Married Franz Wilhelm Young of Vestergotland Sweden 1896. Four children; Esther Martha, Wilhma Ruth, Gladys Helen, and Frank William.

Thyra- Jan 29, 1879-Oct. 16, 1973. U.S. Aug. or Sept. 1896. She was a seamstress.

Anton Marius- Dec. 17, 1880-April 24, 1942.

John Svedrup- Jan. 10, 1883-June 10, 1948. Worked as a civil engineer for 20 years in Argentina and Cuba. Also worked at Vedoe-Peterson Co.

Lea Ingeborg-Mar. 2, 1885-May 24, 1978. Registered nurse.

Ruth- Oct. 18, 1889-April 10, 1951. Supervisor in the embroidery department of Whitney's in Boston.

Family papers tell us that Anton entered public school in Stockholm Aug. 15, 1888 and graduated June 13, 1895. His studies included Christianity, Swedish, Arithmetic, Geography, History, Natural History, and Geometry. The record shows that he was an excellent student with top grades in all subjects. To my knowledge



this was all the formal education he had. He took some International Correspondence courses, and read and studied on his own. There are a number of exercises on electricity, mathematics and physics among the diary papers. According to his application for the Baldwin Expedition he had "ambition for knowledge". I can only guess that he learned English in the U.S. through his own diligence. He had an excellent command of English with only the slightest Swedish accent. English was the only language spoken in our home.

Anton's "Declaration Of Intentions" shows that he left Liverpool England aboard the vessel "Gallia", arriving in Boston on the 29th of May, 1897. He became an American citizen in 1924.

It is likely that he lived with his sister, my Aunt Carrie, in Everett, Massachusetts at this time. I recall his stating that his first job in the U.S. was in a bicycle shop, and had worked for Gillette Razor Co. My brother, Russ, recalls that he had also worked at Albert and J.M. Anderson Co. in So. Boston, a machine shop. Apparently he had switched from electricity to machine shop work.

He took part in the Baldwin Ziegler Polar Expedition of 1901-02 and the Ziegler Expedition in 1903-05.

We have records of his marriage to my mother, Ida Ragnhild Regina Westerberg on Nov. 22, 1911. From this marriage were five children; Shirley Ida, Thomas Edward, Russell Anton, John Douglas and William Oscar. Billy died in action March 15, 1945 and is buried in the U.S. Military Cemetery, St. Avoild, France, near Metz.

In 1913 Anton with Ida's brother-in-law, Eric Peterson, founded Vedoe-Peterson Co. Moving from Boston to Norfolk Downs (Quincy) Mass. the company flourished through the years prior to the great depression, struggled for existence during the 30's, recovered with the war work in the early forties and was sold to New England Carbide Tool Co. in July 1943.

Though Anton started his career as an electrician his greatest success was in tool making and mechanical engineering at Vedoe-Peterson Co. where he developed the Nu-Angle line of expansion reamers, did job shop manufacturing, design and development. He held a number of patents for the reamers, a tire pump, waterflow control valve, gas and oven controls etc.

About 1916 he built a home at 58 Cheriton Rd. Wollaston where he lived until his death. He had a summer home on Robbins Pond, E. Bridgewater, Mass.

He enjoyed time with all of his family, gardening, his bridge game and in his later years oil painting. His life was full with his Arctic days, happy marriage, successful business, hobbies and having earned respect from all who knew him he died at age 61, a victim of his smoking habit, April 24, 1942.





From left to right; John, August, Thyra, Ruth, Ingeborg,  
Martha, Anton. Missing is Karin.

This picture of the Vedoe family was probably taken in Everett,  
Massachusetts around 1910.



# REAMERS

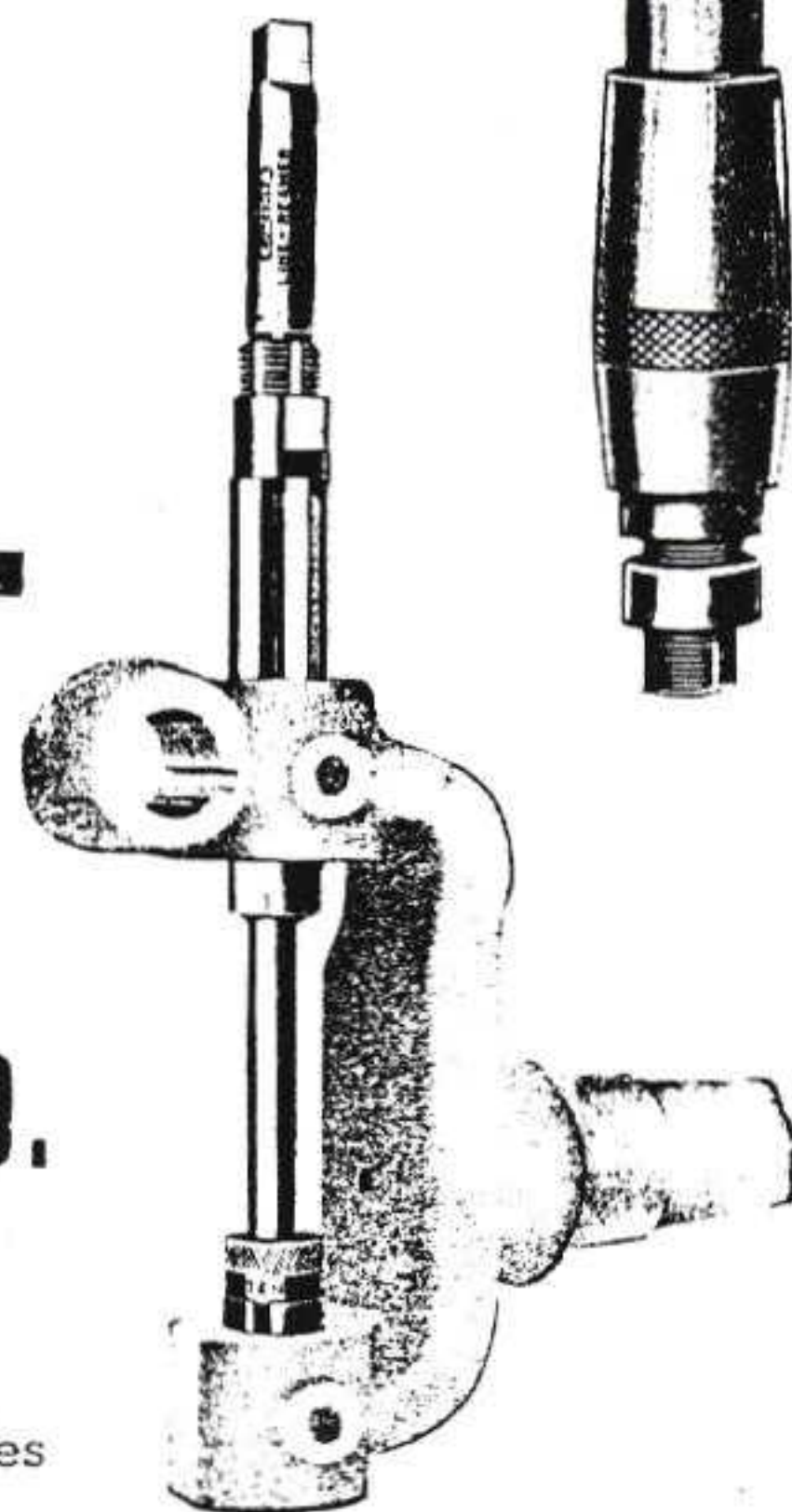
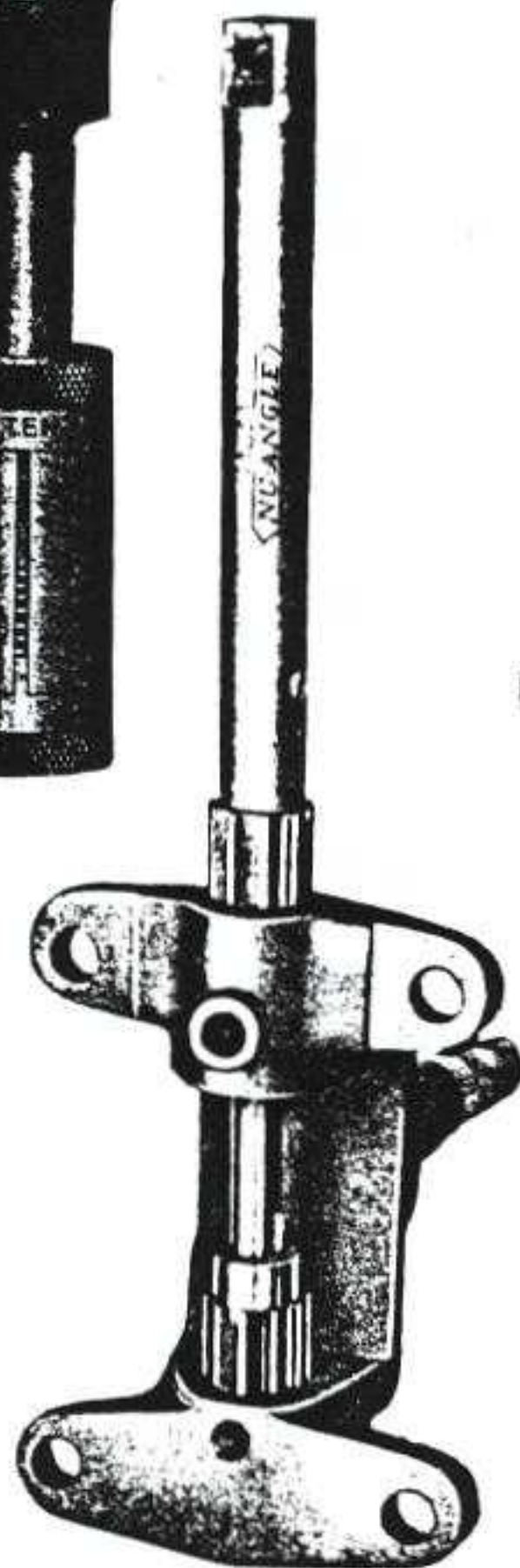
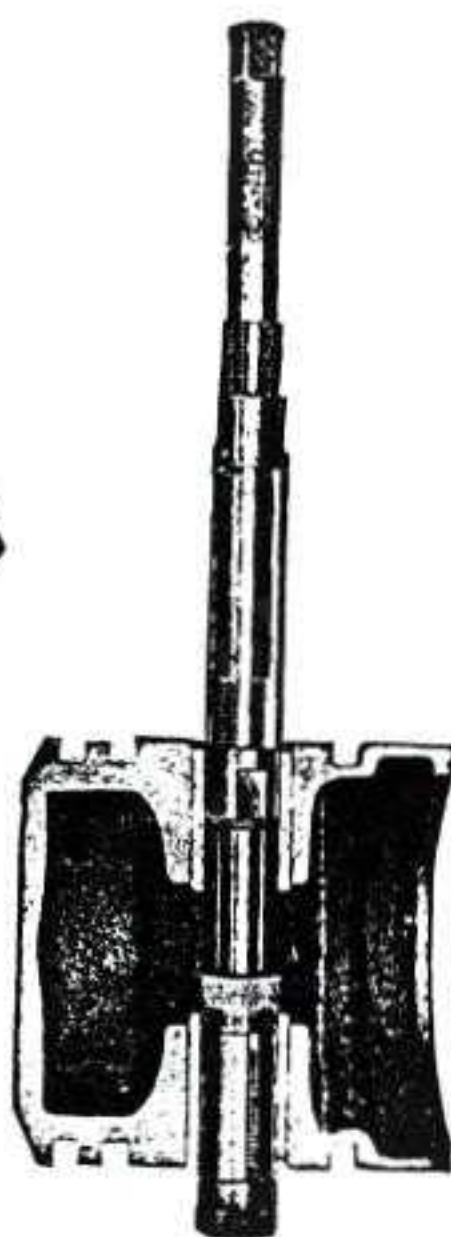
-6-



## PRODUCTS



*Tools of Proven  
Quality and  
Precision*



*Manufactured by*

### VEDOE-PETERSON CO.

NORFOLK DOWNS, MASS.

*Branch Offices*

New York : Chicago : Los Angeles

# OF QUALITY



On April 14, 1962 the newspaper for Vestoppland and Gjøvik, Norway titled "Samhold" published the following article. This has been translated from the original Norwegian by Grethe Goodwin of Warren Maine.

A Centennial Anniversary at Oppegaard in Totenvika

Today it is a hundred years since the then district minister, Edvard Wilhelm Vedøe, in Biri took over the farm, Oppegaard, lower Totenvika, in order to settle there after he retired from his ministry. The family can look back at a 100 years of life and work on the farm. It is not a great celebration because of family ties to the farm, but it is of special interest because of the family's background. The minister's wife who moved to Totenvika was Henrik Wergeland's sister, and at Oppegaard there are still many memories both from the author and from the father, Nicolai Wergeland.

The Rev. Vedøe who became a farmer at Toten in his later years was born in Kristiania. Both his father and grandfather were handicraftsmen. Jens Sørensen Wedøe was licensed as a chairmaker in Kristiania before 1745. It is believed that he came from Denmark, but so far the family has not researched its roots any further back. The son, Andreas Wedøe, was also a master chairmaker, and further he was also a glass tradesman. A chair which still stands at the Superior Court's chamber, and was made by Jens Sørensen, bears witness to the fact that they were accomplished chairmakers. Edvard Vedøe, who differed from the rest of his relatives, both earlier and later ones, by writing his name with a "V", studied with Henrik Wergeland and took part in the market place battle. He was born in 1805 and 1829 he married Augusta Antonette Wergeland, who was 19 years old. The family has saved diplomas and other important papers from his student days, which show that he passed his eliminations with distinction.

The young minister-couple first came to Suldal and Røldal, which must have been a strenuous post in those days. They remained there several years, and after another post at Vestlandet they came to Biri in 1848. Letters have been saved from Nicolai Wergeland to daughter and son-in-law, where he, among other things, expresses a wish for them to return to Østlandet so they could visit one another. Nes, at Romerike was a vacant post, but the people there were rebellious, and besides, this was a call for an older minister.

Nicolai Wergeland was apparently a wonderful letter-writer, but he only writes about private life in these letters. He was also a painter who painted many portraits. Curator Johs. Sievesind and his wife, Camilla, (named after Camilla Collett, since this name was used in the Wedøe family) have a painting by Nicolai Wergeland. It is a portrait of the oldest son of Augusta and Edvard Vedøe, Wilhelm, who journeyed to America. He took the picture along, but now it is back again.

The minister and his wife had 8 children who grew up. The mentioned Wilhelm suffered a tragic death in America, since he was robbed and murdered. Another son, August, who was an architect, also emigrated to America, and it is worth mentioning that he had two sons who took part in an expedition to the North Pole. One of



the minister's daughters, Camilla, was pianist and taught music in Oslo. She was active in the women's liberation movement. She also composed melodies to some of Henrik Wergeland's poems, and she herself wrote poems under the pen-name Camilla Wergeland. Camilla Collet was very upset that she used this name, which she did not have a right to do. This can be discerned from family letters.

#### Minister-proficient linguist

Edvard Vedøe retired as minister in 1861 when he was only 56 years old. It could not have been age that weighed him down, because he lived to be 95 years of age. Apparently he did not get along too well with the people at Biri, and probably he wanted to do something else and be a farmer on the side. He was quite interested in science and mastered several languages. It has been told that he met some officers at Starum once, and they talked to him in English, German, French, and Latin. He answered them in all these languages and then he switched to Hebrew and Greek, but then the officers gave up.

At Oppegaard there are many books and sermons and manuscripts from him, and the idea is to go through them. During his years as minister it is possible that he did enough farming to be interested and get insight into this. That he went out of his way to try new methods in farming is evident from the fact that he once plowed under a whole field of peas in bloom in order to fertilize the soil. The people in the area thought that was awful. His grandson, Einar Wedoe, now running the farm at Oppegaard, believes <sup>had</sup> he peasants or farmhands run the farm for him. He had two farmers whose names were Sören Andersen Stiggerlökken and Johan Steffensen Kallökken.

It has been told about minister Vedøe that he was a generous man, who gave away both change, material for dresses, and other things to the children. One of the oldest living members of the family, Palma Petterson, born Wedøe, remembers him well as an old good grandfather.

His wife Augusta, who died in 1874, has not left much written about her behind. Her father mentions in his letter that she stayed home for the most part, so she was probably more domestic and modest than her sister Camilla and her brother Henrik. Camilla mentions that Augusta did not make much out of her beautiful looks.

#### Family Relics at Oppegaard

Besides things mentioned there are many valuable family relics at Oppegaard. From Nicolai Wergeland there are a "taffelpiano" and other furniture. A pair of old skates are supposed to be from Henrik, etc. A mangel-tree with the figure of a woman as a handle instead of the usual horse has the year 1741 on it and the old iron used for baking altar bread has an inscription which was imprinted on the bread. Further there is a walking stick which Vedoe at the time received from Henrik Wergeland.

Ole Halvorsen was the name of the person who sold the farm to the minister in 1862. Ole had moved the buildings from the earlier courtyard to a new spot by the mountain side, and that was probably an expensive proposition. Anyway, he sold the farm and left for America. From the deed received by Vedoe, it is evident that he paid 2700 specidaler for the farm and everything on it.



### The Next Generations

The next generations have led lives as regular farmers at Oppegaard and have become real Toten people in life-style, even if they still, after 100 years, are considered people "from away" to some extent. It was the minister's youngest son, Otto, born 1854, who took over the farm, since the other children were educated for other positions. After Otto came Einar Wedöe, born 1891, and who is now in charge of the farm. In spite of a hospital stay last fall he has driven down 100 cubic meters logs from the steep hillside above the farm this winter. His wife, Ingrid, comes from Alversund near Bergen and came to Toten as a 20 year old teacher.

The present owner Odvar Wedöe, married to Ingebörg Skaaren-Fystro from Vardal, has very modern farming methods, with great emphasis on gardening. He has 3 greenhouses and a large orchard and he grows cabbage, tomatoes, potatoes, apples, and barley, and he has no animals except a black horse. He won the gold medal with full points at the Ekeberg exhibit, and that tells something about the quality. A diploma for growing fruit from his grandfather's time has a place of honor in the living room.

When the minister and his wife came to the farm 100 years ago a beautiful orchard was started and there are still remnants from this in the form of unusual growing things still thriving. Among other things there are white bush-roses with the Latin name Rosa Spinosissima, which now are being multiplied at the agricultural college. The farm is a good one, in the middle of the fertile Totenvika, with an especially healthy forest along the mountain side and further up the mountain side a "soeter" (summer grazing area) with a view toward Hamar, Gjøvik, and Lillehammer. The Rev. Vedöe really knew about real estate when he bought this farm.

Family traditions at this farm are naturally closely tied to the Wergeland family, but the chairmakers Wedöe have also left their mark on their descendants. An example is Leif Wedöe, who runs a furniture factory at Skreia. He is a good representative who makes high quality furniture.

Otherwise it can be mentioned that the connection with America has been strong, because so many, both of the minister's children and the following generation emigrated. This connection is still intact and is carried on in the new generations on both sides of the ocean.



# DIARY FOREWORD

The Arctic diary is fifteen notebooks; eight covered notebooks and seven books written on toilet paper bound with either rivets or string, plus some loose sheets. The diary is hand written and is fairly legible, except some of the toilet paper entries which in some places were scrawled with a dull pencil. I believe I have made an accurate transcription. I have underlined those words of which I am not certain and left blank when I could not ascribe a word. There were many spelling errors and I have corrected these as best I could, and have added some punctuation. Otherwise, I have not changed the grammar and syntax. This is presented word by word, as written. The diary is in English except for some small portions which I have been fortunate in having translated from Swedish to English by some Norwegian friends; Grethe (Andresen) Goodwin of Warren, Maine; O. Lie-Nielsen of Rockport, Maine; Reidun Aasenden of Clark Island, Maine and Oslo, Norway.

Anton made two trips to the Arctic. The first was 1901-02 with the Baldwin-Ziegler Polar Expedition, Evelyn Baldwin commanding. The second was the Ziegler Polar Expedition 1903-05, Anthony Fiala commanding.

We, Anton's children, were acquainted with the second Ziegler expedition, but never heard any references by Dad to the first, the Baldwin expedition. In 1964 I met Spencer Stewart, who believed then he was the last of the Ziegler explorers and questioned him about the Baldwin expedition. He stated, and this borne out by Dickson and Porter, that there was much dissension and poor management on this journey and brushed it off as a wasted effort. For additional information on the Baldwin expedition I have included excerpts from Russell Porter's "Arctic Diary" and Dickson's account in the San Francisco Chronicle. Also included are translations of some loose sheets found in Dad's papers apparently written while on the Baldwin expedition. These were written in Swedish and Lie-Nielsen and Reidun Assenden translated the Swedish for me. According to Porter, Baldwin did not allow the men to keep diaries.

The opportunity to meet with Spencer Stewart came about in an interesting manner. In the spring of 1964 I received a phone call from my mother, who told me of a phone call she had just received. She was unsure of the content of the call, but thought it had to do with the Ziegler expedition, that the call came from New York City and the name she mentioned was Stewart or Steward. I looked up the crew list for help and found two possibilities; Spencer Stewart and a steward by the name of Spencer. I phoned telephone information in New York and asked for a listing of Spencer Stewart. To my amazement the immediate response was, "Do you want his home or business number?" It was Spencer Stewart who had called my mother, and as Jean and I had plans to be in N.Y.C in two weeks we arranged to meet him. We spent a Saturday afternoon drinking champagne and talking about his polar days and life with Spencer and his wife, Jeanne, in his eastside penthouse. He was in a wheel chair with a broken hip and was trying to locate



relatives of his Polar comrades to distribute to them some of his mementos in which they might be interested. Spencer was the owner of "Stewart Engineering" which built dams, bridges, and other major construction projects throughout the world. He died in the fall of 1964.

Dad was always very close to his brother, John, and kept in contact with Porter and Fiala throughout the years. We have a picture of Dad, Fiala, Porter, Stewart, and Hare (from the Baldwin expedition) taken about 1923 at Stewart's home in White Plains, New York.

To flesh out Anton's diary I have included excerpts from articles in the National Geographic Magazine, a copy of Porter's report on the sledge trip Dad and Porter made in April 1904, the only extant portion of John Vedoe's diary (given to me by Spencer Stewart), which describes his canoe trip with Peters and Tafel in summer 1904. Also I have included a few pictures from Dad's file and copies of maps from Fiala's "Fighting the Polar Ice".

Reference sources:

Vedoe family papers and photos.

National Geographic Magazine.

"Fighting the Polar Ice", Anthony Fiala.

"Russell Williams Porter; Artist, Explorer, Telescope Maker", Burton Willard

"The Arctic Diary of Russell Williams Porter", Russell Porter.



BALDWIN-ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION 1901

These are the only written references to the Baldwin-Ziegler Polar Expedition among Dad's journals. The August 7 portion was translated from the original Swedish by O. Lie-Nielsen. The August 18 through September 7 by Reidun Aasenden. The year is 1901.

Aug. 7

A day with a better ending than this I have seldom had. We have gone under power, full speed ahead all day and furthermore we have shot a bear obviously appeared angry having been swimming around for quite some time. The weather has, as usual, been very changeable, but the ice conditions have been quite resonable. This afternoon Mr. Leffingwell, as he has done for the last 3 days, came down to the cabin and yelled that there was a bear in sight. The first thing they do when anything is seen is to get a hold of Mr. Fiala with his camera and, if possible, shoot what it can be that brings on this excitement. I thought there must be something caught and I proceeded on deck with the other men where I could see a bear barely a hundred yards away from the ship swimming leisurely among the ice floes without any concern for the ship or the danger it was in. In a few minutes Mr. Baldwin showed up on deck with his gun in hand and ordered one of the boats put over and had the ship steer as close to the bear as possible, and got himself ready to shoot. When the bear realized he was being chased he began to plow through the water with greater speed and under the water also, and showing up farther away.....

Aug. 18

The nice weather today has to a certain extent compensated for that we had to work on Sunday. Last night we dropped anchor a couple of times, and we were awakened from our sweet sleep to lift anchor. According to the map we should now be in the vicinity of Cape Trieste [Champ Island]. However, instead of mainland, we find a lot of small islands, and all day long we have been occupied going from one place to another searching for a convenient spot to unload. "Fritjof" has accompanied us for some days. In between we have been hunting walrus, which abounds here. Today we have shot 24; the biggest ones weighed as much as 3000 pounds. We shoot them with a harpoon and by now we have shot 59 walrus and 11 bears.

On \_\_\_\_\_ we arrived at Cape Flora where we went ashore, and had the opportunity to see the houses that an earlier Polar expedition used to winter over. A grave of a member from that expedition had for a while a sad effect on us. A little further down on the beach we found a monument erected a year ago by the Italian expedition as a memorial to the three Norwegians who were left behind and never found. We even found a message from "Fritjof", which had waited for us there for a couple of weeks, but finally proceeded northward. There was also posted on a plank that the Russian icebreaker had passed by Aug. 9.

["Fritjof" was a supply and support ship for "America".]



Aug. 19

The dogs are becoming uncomfortable aboard, were today taken ashore. There was a dragging and hauling of the poor animals, who seemed quite happy once they found themselves freed from the unpleasant captivity. We had some difficulties in getting the first boats ashore. It was not easy to control the dogs, and more than one got a bath in the cold water. As soon as they saw the possibility of reaching land, they jumped into the water and swam one after another. Well ashore, they ran towards the snow for a deserved bath. Some, whose joints were not too stiff, sped toward the highest mountain top where they curled up and rolled like balls down the steep snow-covered slope to again be captured and tied to wires which we placed at the foot of the mountain.

In the morning there was a storm that increased steadily. We had by then got four boatloads ashore, and the last two were just on their way when the storm became so violent that they were powerless with the oars and just drifted further away. Watching from land it seemed quite dangerous. When they started to wave their caps asking for help, two of us jumped in a boat and started to row toward the one in distress. Another boat left from our ship and, going in the same direction as the wind, it soon arrived there. After some tough rowing, we also reached the boys fighting for their lives. The two boats carried a heavy load, and after we had fastened a rope from our boat and with united efforts tried to move toward land, we found it was to no avail. We just drifted farther and farther away. When we had worked for about an hour, soaking wet from the waves and with no progress, we notice that "Fritjof" started to move. She had lifted anchor and now came to our rescue. "Fritjof" took us back to "America" where we were delighted to exchange the wet cold clothes for clean and dry ones. After dinner we tried again to reach land in order to raise the houses, but in vain. Once more we were wet and chose to go on board to change clothes for a second time, and thereafter resume the old usual work moving boxes from one place to another.

Aug. 20

Marvellous weather today has facilitated our work moving "Fritjof's" cargo ashore and raising one of our houses.

Aug. 21

Once again a beautiful day. I felt as if I were at home in the middle of summer. Worked in just a shirt and the snow on the mountain melted so fast that the water started to flood the site of our house. We had to dig ditches to get rid of it.

In the afternoon, while we were nailing pasteboard on the house, a big bear had managed to approach us without being observed by us on land. People aboard the ship, however, had seen him in time, and the captain went out in a boat and shot him from a suitable distance.

Aug. 22

Oh Lord, what work! For sure, if I get home, I will not be a coal miner! Today we have crept on hands and knees in bunkers filled with coal and with an entrance hardly big enough for a



person to get through. Dirty as we are and with scarce water, we forget about cleanliness and make fun of one another. We have formed a club called the "Coalminer's Club". Because "Fritjof" is leaving us tomorrow, we are busy tonight writing to our relatives. The weather is still unusually nice, no wind and rather warm so the snow continues to melt and run in small streams down the mountain side to our house on land.

Aug. 29

Since August 22 the work on the house has proceeded without difficulties. Inside we have made a fireplace and put in a barrel for ice melting, so the boys will be fairly comfortable, although lonely. Dr. S Winyard and the Hungarian machinist from "Fritjof", who will stay with us, and three of the Russians are chosen to be left at the camp. For how long, no one knows. "Fritjof" left us as soon as it was ready. Before leaving, it circled us a couple of times. With shouts of "hurrah" from both sides, it left the sound with full engine and disappeared. That was our last tie to civilization. A member of our expedition left with "Fritjof" to return to America where business demanded his presence.

Sept. 4

The work with cutting meat for the dogs has continued both aboard and ashore. Tslotse has taken a trip with one of our big boats to inspect the ice conditions. It is time to get on northward, or we will have stay until next summer.

Sept. 5

Today we have been busy and worked under good weather conditions. Around 9 p.m. we once again left Camp Ziegler for maybe to return in a few days. I hope, though, that we are more lucky this time and find open water northward. The usual hurrah shouts said good-bye to our friends on the island as we steamed away, again to try our luck.

Sept. 6

Tonight Mr. B. (Baldwin, expedition commander) and some of the others were ashore on an island which became the scene of quite a spectacle. Armed with a gun, they started to climb a mountain slope- Mr. B. first, Fiala next, and the others followed. After a while they were hindered by a vertical mountain wall which was a few meters high and ended in a plateau. When Mr. B. got his head over the top,, he saw two playing bears. He immediately asked the others to crouch and to keep quiet. Then he gave each bear a bullet and shot a third one. Both bears were injured and furious. He had emptied his magazine and had only cartridges left. The others hurried toward him, but Mr. B. asked them to rush to the boat. They ran and tumbled over each other. Fiala today has visible marks after the somersault, and Bernard feels sore all over. Baldwin finally did his bears in, and they rowed back with the splendid catch. Later we cruised about in the ice and discovered a bear far away. The ice was rather weak so we could quite easily force our way through. Although the ship made a terrible noise in the ice, the bear continued to walk straight toward us 'til he was within shooting distance. Then he stopped and lifted his head. Evidently he sniffed in order to find out



what kind of passengers we were. Then Mr. B. shot at him. The bear turned around and hurried away, but not too far as he was obviously hurt. Three of us ran with a sled after him on that miserable ice where we almost went through several times. When we reached the bear, it rose and stumbled toward us, but Mr. B. sent him a bullet that broke his neck-bone. When he fell, the ice cracked and he dropped into the water. From there it was very difficult to get him up, because the ice was so weak all around. But after some risky work, we succeeded in getting him on the sled. As usual, we were then photographed and continued afterward carefully toward the ship. Meanwhile, a storm had developed. It increased and later on we had a real snowstorm that idled us.

Sept. 7

The blizzard had continued all day so no work was called to be done on deck. The poor horses and dogs are shivering. We have managed to build some kind of protection for the horses by means of sailcloth.

[This is the end of Anton's notes on the Baldwin expedition. It is interesting to note that while his writing here was in Swedish, two years later in 1903 he wrote in English. He was on the crew list of the Baldwin expedition as "General Assistant". In 1903 he was "Second Assistant Electrical Engineer" on the "America".]



## APPLICATION FORM

## BALDWIN-ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION

60 LIBERTY STREET, NEW YORK, N. Y.

TELEPHONE 4438 CORTLANDT

Name and address in full *Anton Wedoe Brännkyrksg. 35 Stockholm Sweden*  
Age *21* years. Date and place of birth *Born in Stockholm Sweden 17th of December 1880*  
Education *Public school*

Physical Qualifications *Without any fault as far as I know*

Height *5 feet 5 1/2 in.* Weight *150 lb.*  
Your strong points *Ambition for knowledge*

Your weak points *I don't know of any.*

Avocation *Electrician*

Where, when, and by whom have you been employed? *C. Wold first at Boston Mass.  
Albert L. J. M. Anderson A. St. Boston Mass.*

Special qualifications

Motives actuating you in applying to accompany the expedition *Has always been looking for a position where experience is to gain and where a man can test his ability and show worth. he is worth.*

Married or single? *Single*

Habits as to use of tobacco. Be explicit. *Don't use tobacco in any form*

Habits as to use of intoxicants. Be explicit. *Don't use intoxicants in any form*

To what literary, scientific, social, religious, or other organizations, if any, do you belong?

Give addresses of at least three references *Mr. August Tedoe Brännkyrksgatan 35 Stockholm Sweden. J. Edson Anderson 3 Allston St. Boston Mass. Mr. W. Young 134 Harrison Ave Boston Mass.*

In what capacity do you wish to accompany the expedition?

What remuneration would you expect?

Would you cheerfully perform any duty or task imposed upon you by the commandant?

*I would be glad to fulfill any position or perform any duty or task imposed upon me*

*Anton Marius Tedoe*



## BALDWIN-ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION.

NEW YORK, U. S. A.

On Board Steam Yacht "America",  
Off Alger Island, Franz Josef Land.

Be It Remembered,

That on this *First* day of *March* in the  
year of our Lord one thousand nine hundred and two

..... *Anton Marius Vedoe*  
of *Boston* in said district, an Alien *Electrician*

and a free white person, by his declaration in writing, on oath, sets forth, that he was born in *Stockholm Sweden* on or about the *17th* day of *December* in the year of our Lord eighteen hundred and *Eighty* and is now about *26* years of age; that he arrived at *Boston* in the district of *Massachusetts* in the United States of America on or about the *29th* day of *May* in the year of our Lord eighteen hundred and *Nineteen*; that it was then, and still is his bona fide intention to become a citizen of the United States of America, and to renounce forever all allegiance and fidelity to every foreign Prince, State, Potentate and Sovereignty whatsoever, more especially to Osear Second, King of Sweden and Norway whose subject he has heretofore been. He therefore prays, that his said Declaration and Intention may become a record of this Expedition, agreeably to the laws in such case made and provided.

Whereupon the Declaration of the said Petitioner is admitted to become a record of this Expedition accordingly.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, I have hereunto

written my signature on board the said Steam Yacht "America", the day and the year first above written and in the one hundred and *27th* year of the independence of the United States of America.

*Ernest B. Baldwin*  
Inspector-At-Large, Signal Corps, U. S. A.  
Commanding the Expedition.

Witnesseth,-

*A. P. Hart*, Chief Engineer.

*Leontine Barnard*, Private Secretary.



SAN FRANCISCO CHRONICLE, Monday June 6, 1932

Polar Dash Perils Described by Baldwin Ziegler Explorer  
Message Adrift Thirty Years Ago in Arctic Stirs Memory  
Finding of note off Nova Zembla reveals author as professor now living in Vallejo.

On May 24 of this year a message, attached to a small buoy, sent out thirty years ago by the Baldwin-Ziegler expedition was found by a soviet Arctic station in the southern part of Nova Zembla. The printing of this fact brought to light that the man who wrote that message, Professor Archibald Dickson, is living at 222 Georgia St., Vallejo. The Chronicle asked Professor Dickson to tell the story of that expedition, which escaped Arctic rigors after untold hardship and reached Norway and safety back in 1902, and also to narrate the circumstances under which the message found by the Russians was written. His story follows:

By Archibald Dickson, Secretary of the expedition on board the U.S.S. America and over the polar ice pack.

The Baldwin Ziegler Polar Expedition which sailed for the North Pole in 1901 and of which the writer was secretary, was commanded by the Arctic explorer, Evelyn B. Baldwin of Washington D.C., and was backed by William Ziegler of New York city, the famous Royal Baking Powder magnate.

Three ships were engaged in the work of exploration. The BELGICA was sent to Shannon Island off Greenland to establish a supply station there, as it was the intention of Commander Baldwin, if the possibility existed, to reach the North Pole by dog sledges and Siberian ponies by way of the ice-covered Franz Josef Archipelago and over the polar ice pack from there, continuing the journey down the other side of the world to Greenland; and, if not, to back track over the ice to the ship, ice-locked or remaining as near as possible at a given degree of latitude and longitude in the arctic sea.

Flag ship named AMERICA

The second ship, the FRITHJOF, sailing from Norway with additional supplies, was to connect with the S.S. AMERICA, on board of which was Commander Baldwin, myself as his secretary, fourteen members of the scientific staff and twenty eight Norwegian and Swedish sailors, including Captain Johnson of Sweden, skipper, and Captain Arneson of Tromsø, Norway, our ice pilot. The AMERICA, our flagship was a three masted sailing and steam vessel with powerful engines and a cargo capacity of 750 tons. The original name of the AMERICA was ESQUIMAUX, known and purchased at the time as the stanchest and most famous whaler of the Arctic Ocean north of Europe.

The AMERICA had been ordered to Dundee, Scotland, for a complete overhauling. There, the scientific members from their various homes in America, assembled together with Commander Baldwin. June 17, 1901 with the bunkers full of coal the ship newly painted and the necessary supplies to be taken on at this point, loaded the AMERICA slowly steamed down the river Tay amid shouts of "Godspeed" and "Auf Wiedersehn" from the Scottish people and two English troop ships with their bands playing American martial music, accompanied us some distance as we steamed out into the North Sea toward Norway, Sweden and the Polar regions beyond.



### Takes on supplies

The S.S. AMERICA took on Swedish and Norwegian conserves and other supplies in Trondheim, Bergen and Tromso, Norway; then headed north around North Cape, taking on additional supplies and machinery at Vardo, Finland; down through the White Sea and up the Dvina river to Solombolo and Archangel, Russia.

At Solombolo, Commander Baldwin had a corner on the Sennagrass and trained Samoyed wolf sledge dogs for two or three years previous, so that the Russians had secured for the expedition 425 of these fierce, cannibalistic sledge animals as well as fourteen Siberian ponies to be used in pulling sledges loaded with supplies over the Polar ice pack.

While in Archangel, the capital of western Russia, we were royally entertained at a banquet given the scientific members of the expedition by Governor General Angelhart, with the aid of the Consuls of France, Germany, the Netherlands, England, and the United States.

### Heads for the Arctic

With all the dogs loaded, the canned and boxed provisions properly placed, the ship again started back to Finland where other supplies were still waiting; then the AMERICA pointed her nose due north toward the Pole. Every available yard of canvas was now set to the wind and we sailed for many days to save coal for use in the world of ice just north of us.

Finally when the Polar ice pack was reached, the AMERICA steamed along the southern edge for more than a week before a canal wide enough could be seen by our ice pilot in the crow's nest near the top of the main mast 119 feet from the deck, offering an apparently suitable opening of sufficient distance in the ice to chance a trial. A fairly wide canal was finally sighted and entered, and with a "now or never" feeling with engine engine boilers under forced draught, and orders of "full steam ahead", the ship was propelled as fast as possible on its way north into the very heart of the "continental ice pack".

The heavier ice now began to close in upon us, and the ship

AMERICA was "nipped" with hummocky ice and bergs towering on all sides, threatening to crush us. With the rise and fall of the of the tide, however, the ship would temporarily be released, and instantly begin again to force its way, zigzagging through the Arctic pack day by day toward its goal.

### Bag Numerous Bears

During this time we were having all kinds of exciting and interesting experiences aboard in handling the ship, bagging numerous polar bears, seals and walrus. The latter were dumped into large blubber tanks in the lower hold of the ship to be used for dog feed, lighting, fuel and other purposes.

Franz Josef Land's ice covered and glacier-packed mountainous islands were reached at last and a camp made at Cape Flora, where the explorers Nansen and Johansen and the Jackson-Harmsworth expeditions had found a temporary refuge while making their highest northings. It was here that we made contact with our second steamer, the Frithof, and transferred her cargo of additional supplies to the AMERICA.



The famous ice breaker, IRMACK from Russia, having been ordered by the Czar of Russia at St. Petersburg to contact with the expedition, accomplished the purpose in an ice open fjord near Cape Flora.

#### Andree Tragedy Recalled

It was on Cape Flora, this island of perennial snow and ice that the Swedish government built a hut with supplies inclosed, now half buried in the ice, as a relief cache in the hope it might be found by the balloonist Andree, whose remains were recently found in the ice southwest of the Franz Josef Archipelago, or the point our expedition wintered in 1901-1902, many years after his fatal attempt to sail across the ninetieth parallel by balloon.

Polar bear, seal and walrus were plentiful on the ice and in the open water places here, and a few days were spent at Cape Flora securing bears for their hides and meat, as well as walrus and seal for blubber; when the AMERICA again began fighting the ice north to 80 21 north latitude and 56 40 east longitude where we ice-anchored the ship to a grounded iceberg on the edge of a submerged mountain, to be frozen in for the long Arctic winter night.

The dogs were then taken ashore and attached in pairs to a long tow line rope, spiked to the ice just far enough apart that they could not damage each other by constantly fighting. Portable houses were then built on the glacial shore for the six Russian dog caretakers brought with us from Russia to look after the dogs through the Arctic night season, and, as the sun was fast lowering with days becoming shorter and the thermometer continually dropping a point or two each night, the new ice finally strongly locked the ship on all sides save the propeller, which was kept open by the sailors spending hours daily digging the propeller blades free to be revolved every twenty-four hours in case of pack ice motion.

#### Arctic Night Begins

On October 17 the sun had disappeared for the beginning of the Arctic night, which was now up on us, confining men to their various duties mostly within the ship or after the selection by each member of the scientific staff of his fourteen dogs, twelve for driving and two supernumeraries, from the big pack to segregate them and get practice in the hitching and driving of the sledges, repair of the harness and the training of the dogs to respond to English, instead of Russian commands to which they had been accustomed.

There is nothing on earth more trying to the patience of an ordinary individual than the stubborn, mischievous antics of these Russian wolf dogs until an acquaintance and thorough understanding has been arrived at. The first real signs and recognition of obedience of these at first fierce, but after acquaintance most companionable dogs of the frozen north, were seen in response to those members of the expedition trying to train the dogs who cussed them most. The dogs really seemed to quickly understand and like that part of the game, and soon every man who had a dog team could be heard on all sides, cussing them roundly in words profane and more terrible than they had ever used before, seeking to untangle them from the harness, to stop them from fighting the nearest dog or any other sledge that passed them and numerous other things that generally kept the none



too experienced scientific member in the handling of dogs of this nature, active from a dozen different angles at the same time.

#### Sun Gives a Thrill

These and other activities, through the long Arctic night constantly kept all employed through the partial, semi and total darkness for 154 days before the sun again made its appearance. I was one of a party to ski and climb a glacier some miles distant to the topmost point to welcome the first direct rays of glorious Old Sol returning from his long journey south.

Oh, the thrill of those moments when our eyes and lungs drank in the first warm, life-giving rays of our planets' great radiator -the sun. This was early in the month of March of the year 1902, five months after the sun had said, "good night". During this time all the members of the expedition pursued the line of work and duties assigned them. Porter and Leffingwell, our geodesist, with sextants and telescopic instruments, in the ice igloos, were studying the heavens and stars of the southern horizon, while a southern expedition was studying these same stars, from the Antartics which formed their northern horizon.

#### Balloons Take Messages

Andree and Einar Michelson Lute, the Dane, as meteorologists and Hare, the artist, had charge of the barometers, thermometers and anemometers, with Rilliet and Bernard in charge of the balloons, of which eleven were at different periods of the year sent up, all having attached to them cork buoys with records of the expedition's work prepared by Commander Baldwin and received in dictation by myself, as his secretary, and inclosed in these buoys in the hope of being picked up by whalers somewhere in the Arctic where the balloon would fall, as in the case the "balloon buoy", but recently found by the Soviet government still afloat for more than thirty years in the southern part of the island of Nova Zemlya, between Kara Sea and Barents Sea in the Arctic Ocean north of Russia. This proved to be message prepared as described and sent up into the heavens in one of these same balloons while we were locked, as it were, in another world of icebergs, ocean and continental ice at 80 21 degrees north latitude and 56 40 degrees east longitude.

Drs. Verner, De Bruler and Seitz had care of the health of the members of the expedition to lookafter, as well as prescribing for the various complaints of the dogs and ponies. Fiala had his photographic work; then there was the search for deep sea and marine vegetation and life at the bottom of the sea, under the care of other members of the scientific staff. Winged grappling hooks attached to piano wires were let down through the propeller hole in the ice, the swift Arctic ocean currents carrying these grappling hooks or claws to great depths. They would be drawn up by the "winch", bringing up with them strange submarine creations of vines and green rubber-like palm trees from the lower summer gardens of a heavily ice-blanketed Arctic sea.

#### Sledging Over the Ice

After a seemingly interminable "Arctic winter night" the light of a six months' day had dawned. The winter's preparation for the Polar sledge trip were complete. The day of "going over the top"



had arrived. Commander Baldwin, myself, most of the scientific members of the expedition and a number of sailors who had signed up for the trip over the ice pack, each in charge of his respective dog team, making a caravan of approximately 28 men, 350 dogs, 60 sledges loaded with pemmican (canned meat) food supplies, tents, boats for crossing open water channels etc., all ready and raring to go the limit were now on the way after bidding farewell and good luck to those left on the ship.

After weeks of sledging through storm and blizzard, digging our way through fields of hummock ice looking like cities torn by cyclones and imbedded in ice and snow, at last Crown Prince Rudolf Land, ice covered and barren was reached, where we discovered the remnants of the camp of the Duke of Abruzzi, son of the King of Italy, who had made the highest northing at one time, and near his camp, now practically buried in the heavy ice, we made our 30,000 pounds "farthest north" cache within 360 miles of the North Pole.

#### Most of Dogs Lost

The many days of laborious work and exciting trials in reaching this high northing by sledge had now seriously tallied up against the party- frozen hands and faces through terrible storms and blizzards with the thermometer ranging all the way from 30 degrees above to 67 degrees below zero, most of the sledges and dogs with nine of the ponies had been lost on the trip without losing any of the men.

The open season of turbulent, drifting ice fields and bergs in motion was again nearly upon us, black clouds in most directions to the south signaling the breaking up of the ice pack, as few, if any, clouds appear in the frigid weather of the winter or night season over part of the continental ice fields.

It was now found impossible to go on, and the danger of failure and fatality in getting back to the ship was hourly increasing by the widening area of the dark clouds spreading all over the entire southern horizon. So after a hurried conference Commander Baldwin decided to attempt the trip back to the ship with the remaining dogs and broken sledges- a fierce, perilous journey, some of which was accomplished on shifting ice floes, crossing the floes where the breaks were not too wide apart, feverishly working our way south, often on soft surfaced and floe ice, sinking in hip-waist deep at times with a bottomless ocean pit yawning below.

#### Nearly Miss Ship

There were whole days in which we drove our dogs through fog so thick we could scarcely see twenty yards ahead, using only a pocket compass to guide, which in heavy fog often ran us in pie circles.

We finally reached the latitude and longitude where we had left the S.S. AMERICA with the chief engineer Hart; the skipper, the ice pilot and members of the crew who had remained on board to keep the ship in position, and who had now despaired our safe return. Providentially, the masts of the ship became visible for a fraction of a minute only through an opening in the fog lying a mile or so to the southeast of us, appearing like the



oasis to a lost caravan on the desert of Sahara. But that sight saved the party, or we would have passed the ship without knowing it and having exhausted our return supply of rations, save barely enough to last another forty-eight hours, our party would doubtless have been lost and possibly destroyed, the same as Andree in the boundless wastes of ice now in motion to the south and southwest beyond.

#### Welcomed With Joy

No words can describe the ecstasy of our feelings at the real sight of the ship. We had all let our beards and hair grow throughout the long cold winter month for protection on the ice, and with three or four inch thick hair half way down our back, on the heads of all the expedition members, plodding along in skin suits and worn, discolored parkas, the scene, as we greeted each other in joyous hysteria, beggars description.

All on board the AMERICA had given us up as lost. The ice had broken up generally and the AMERICA was set free, floating, steaming and holding its position against heavy ocean currents and charging bergs and ice floes. Day by day she had attempted to maintain her position in the presence of constant imminent danger. Chamberlain Glacier, a few miles across the channel, with its wall of ice 100 feet high and hundreds of feet below the surface, facing the sea, was now calving icebergs the size of city blocks for a distance of more than twenty miles up and down the channel with the roar of terrific distant thunderstorms, and these long trains of icebergs churning the thinner pack ice high in the air as they left their mother glacier and came hurtling down the channel, bidding defiance to any foe that might attempt to block their way out to the open sea to the south.

#### Given Up For Lost

Up to a week before the ice was in motion, the men aboard the AMERICA had been sending small parties to the tops of all the surrounding glaciers with signal flags, while those remaining on board were sending rockets every few hours in the hope of attracting wherever we were on the ice, to the location of the ship at the time.

But, hurrah! we had sighted the ship at the very time we had begun to march away from it and now with our hearts full of gladness and songs upon our lips. The dogs on ship now sensing our approach began a ferocious but welcome symphony of barking and chorus howls, responsive to the long wolf call of the remnants of the approaching main pack.

The whole ship was now instantly alive with excitement, boats were lowered and put out for the nearest fog-covered ice packs from which the sounds appeared to come; and when we finally "hove" in sight there were reunions never to be forgotten, and (here ye all), "there was a hot time on the old ship that day".

#### Looked Like an Eskimo

When we repaired to our cabins, Fiala and I having one together, will I ever forget my feeling when I had the first sight of my face in a foot square looking glass in our cabin? I looked for a number of seconds before I realized that it was not the picture of an Eskimo (and a rather ugly one too), hanging on the wall



instead of the image of myself after being on the ice way from the ship in sunshine and storm, blizzards and cold for fifty-four days, unwashed and happy, handling my own twelve Samoyed wolf dogs and two supernumeraries, which I had by this time learned to love dearly, after an 1100 mile dog sledge trip, sharing experiences of weal and woe over the Arctic Polar ice pack on the top of the world.

It was soon realized by Mr. Baldwin himself and the rest of the party in conferences held, that nothing more could be done that year, and that the only wise thing to do would be to attempt to reach civilization if at all possible in 1902 while the chance was open before another night season, near at hand, set in and the whole Arctic world would again be frozen up as tight as the middle of an iceberg and of greater surface scope than the moon.

After leaving a large cache of the remaining supplies yet on board at a point on one of the newly discovered islands named "Camp Ziegler", and when all was ready, Chief Engineer Hartt, upon orders from Commander Baldwin through the skipper began to maneuver the good old ship AMERICA through icebergs and shifting millions of acres of smooth and hummocky continental ice toward a world of green fields and life and action, then seeming to be as far away and as hard to reach as the planet Mars.

Day after day the engines churned and the ship bucked with ice packs and pans separating here and there, leaving the struggling AMERICA a little farther south each twenty four hours of effort.

Dynamite was repeatedly used to blast and break the heavier, new ice forming to block our way when the glad token swells of the open ocean began to be felt in the ice pack long before the water could be seen. We all knew that once the open sea was reached we had a hundred to one chance of finding land and home and civilization once more. This was finally accomplished by using sails and the little coal left in the bunkers together with wooden boxes, spare masts and anything consumable in the shape of boiler fuel still on board.

We finally landed in..... Norway, thus ending the dangerous part of a Polar expedition voyage, little account of which has ever been written, due to some later controversy between backer and commander and the petty jealousies of contending parties in New York city, where the expedition had its origin.

As secretary of the Baldwin-Ziegler Polar expedition, 1901-1902, and after years of experience and following the records and stories of similar expeditions in the Arctic and Antarctic oceans, I more deeply than ever appreciate the ability and wisdom of our leader, Evelyn B. Baldwin, who should have wonderful story to tell regarding the expedition in which so many wondrous adventures were experienced by himself and all the members of the expedition in the Polar regions north of Russia, and of which so little is known.

\*\*\*\*\*



PORTER'S STORY

For contrast to Dickson's somewhat florid and biased account of the Baldwin Ziegler Polar expedition the following is Russell Porter's story of the same expedition, taken from his book "The Arctic Diary of Russell Williams Porter".

"(in) 1901... reports of a big expedition were in the air. A man worth millions who believed money could find the Pole had been found, and his purse was open to an unlimited extent to whoever would undertake the job. The man worth millions was William Ziegler of New York, and his choice for commander was Evelyn Briggs Baldwin. [A footnote states; Baldwin was ... an observer for the U.S. Weather Bureau from 1892 to 1900 and metrologist on Peary's north Greenland expedition in 1893 and on the second Wellman expedition to Franz Josef Land in 1898-99 and he made a voyage to Spitsbergen in 1897.]

"As Mr. Baldwin's efforts to attain the pole, he is almost better known as the man who discovered Mr. Ziegler. Never before ... had funds been placed without stint at the disposal of a pole-seeking aspirant. (\$250,000)... I enrolled as artist and surveyor.

"Baldwin's plan was to attack the Pole from the other side, .... from Franz Josef Land..... He had purchased the finest whaler of the Dundee fleet, the ESQUIMAUX, rechristened her the AMERICA, and enrolled her in the New York Yacht Club. ....In addition to the AMERICA there were two auxiliary ships....the BELGICA was to land a house and stores on the west Greenland coast against our retreat in that direction; the consort, FRITHJOF, to carry three years' surplus food. ...forty members (including)... six Russian dog and pony drivers and a crew of Scandinavians. Siberia was combed for nearly five hundred dogs, about fifteen Siberian ponies, and countless reindeer skins and Samoyed coats. Tons of pemmican, dog biscuit, dried fish, condensed foods and compressed baled hay. ....the AMERICA looked like a floating haystack.

"...Across the North Sea, up the Norwegian coast by the Lofoten Isles, across the Arctic Circle, and down into the White Sea to Archangel, Russia.

"Archangel presented strange contrasts: log huts and squalor, with beggars everywhere against fine homes and princely clubs... The banquet in our honor was lavish with choice foods and wines... was our last taste of the fleshpots of civilization for over a year.

".... One thousand miles of Arctic Ocean separated us from... Franz Josef Land... unknown until Von Payer, an Austrian, ran across it in 1879, lost his ship and had to reach civilization in boats via Novaya Zemlya. A good deal of the Barents Sea is cluttered with drifting ice; some of it navigable, some closely packed near the Archipelago. We were negotiating it over a month before sighting land, waiting for leads to open up, some of which proved dead ends that required a return to open water and further trials. A landing was made at Cape Flora, a spot around which is centered a good deal of the history of the region. Here Nansen contacted the Englishman Jackson after the Norwegian's memorable drift across the arctic basin and sledge journey southward. Then for us followed a desperate attempt to work north between the islands for a high latitude in which to winter. Only the descending



polar night called a halt and forced us into winter quarters on a southerly island called Alger, ten degrees from the Pole. All the channels were jammed with ice. Once the ship ran aground.

The site chosen for the quarters was a flat area on the south side of the island, with the AMERICA anchored a hundred yards off shore. Portable eight-sided huts were erected where the Russians lived. A stable sheltered the ponies, and the dogs were strung out on long stake lines outside. The remainder of the expedition lived aboard; a daily routine was laid down for all of us, and we settled down for the long night of more than a hundred days.

To harden the men for the spring sledding and to become familiar with driving dogs, Mr. Baldwin instituted a series of trips to the other end of the island, bringing back loads from a cache landed there earlier in the fall. It was during these trips the the first dissatisfaction with the commander arose among some of the men. The distance to the cache was not far-perhaps eight miles- but the trips were made in darkness, and it wasn't long before two parties were lost, and relief parties brought them back in rather bad shape, with feet and fingers frostbitten. They naturally asked for sleeping bags or tents, perhaps both, in case it should happen again in the drift storms that come up so suddenly in the North. This the commander refused, giving as his reason that the added load would mean that much less freight could be brought back. Many of the fellows were "put on the mat" and reminded of their signed agreement to obey their commander under any and all conditions. The outcome has gone from me for the present; perhaps it was a compromise. Nevertheless, from then on the seeds of discontent were sown. Leffingwell, the chief scientist, complained (and with reason) that his work was suffering from inability to carry on his observations as he was continually hauling freight.

..... Mr. Baldwin with the Russians established an advance post at Kane Lodge on Greely Island, fifty miles north. Shortly after, with the return of the sun, every available man, dog, and horse was drafted for hauling supplies northward. ....several tons of food and equipment were landed on Rudolf Island, the most northerly of the group, only to be picked up by by Fiala in 1903. ... There would be something almost humorous in this vagary of fate were it not for the heartbreaking drudgery expended on dragging that stuff over hundreds of miles of ice.

...Mr. Baldwin left me much to my own devices... as artist on the expedition. ....On our return in the fall, Mr. Ziegler on hearing that Baldwin had retained all my artwork, saw to it that my drawings... and notes were returned to me.

...near Coal Mine Island .... I found a water hole and near it several walruses sleeping.... They were tame enough. I could prod them with my alpine stock and they would only grunt in disapproval.

...one day while stormbound.... someone suggested... trying out the possibilities of dog meat as a diet. ...a dead dog outside ...was soon dismembered and in the pot. ....the feast was not a great success. ....decidedly doggy.



.....As a result of Mr. Baldwin's policy of concentrating on advancing supplies north, the year yielded little to science. With virgin land all about us, no one was allowed there. It was forbidden ground. As a result, Leffingwell produced only a meager traverse of the region bordering the freight trail. Since then, Leffingwell has done fine work by himself clearing up unknown territory on the north coast of Alaska. Year after year he has left his home in sunny California and, alone, with a meager outfit cleared up several thousand square miles that were blanks on the chart. ...in getting together (afterwards) and talking over old times... Mr. Baldwin's ears must have burned. The pendulum apparatus loaned by the government remained unused.

As the summer wore on,..... a hydrogen generating plant (was) installed, and several balloons inflated and set loose. It must be remembered that there was no radio in 1902; we were quite isolated from the rest of the world. Suspended from the balloons were strings of buoys that were freed automatically as the gasbag descended to an earth, ice, or water surface. Each buoy contained a message, several of them have since been recovered-one only this year (1931), on the shores of Novaya Zemlya.

"About this time there was a rumor that the commander was signing up some of the men to remain over winter while the ship returned to civilization to prepare for another attempt the following year. As no diaries were allowed to be kept, my memory is a little hazy on the point. An attempt was made, however, to free the ship for a return home. Dynamite was used to blast out a channel through Abedare Channel, and it was not long before we felt the welcome heave of the ocean beyond the margin of the ice I say "welcome". Everybody was anxious to get home.

"When the ship arrived at Tromso, orders were given to allow no one ashore. The captain, Johansen, with whom Baldwin had had trouble, took French leave over the side. The ship was in filthy condition, fairly alive with human parasites, so the rest of us felt justified in following the captain."

Thus ends Porter's account of the Baldwin-Ziegler Polar Expedition.

As Porter noted Leffingwell did considerable work in Alaska and the Canadian Arctic. Anton Vedoe was invited to go on a trip of exploration in 1906 by Leffingwell, but as we know he did not accept.



From the THE NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC-June 1903

MR. ZIEGLER AND THE NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY

At the invitation of Mr. William Ziegler, the National Geographic Society is to direct the scientific work of the north polar expedition which Mr. Ziegler has equipped and which is known as the Ziegler Polar Expedition.

The National Geographic society has chosen as its official representative on the expedition Mr. William J. Peters of the U.S. Geological Survey. Mr. Peters will be second in command, and will have entire charge of all the scientific observations and determinations of the the party. Mr. Peters is one of the splendid corps of explorers of the U.S. Geological Survey. He has made several notable journeys in Alaska, the most remarkable of which was in 1901 when as leader of a Survey party, he made a sledge journey of 1600 miles. (National Geographic Magazine Dec. 1901, p.399)

The expedition sails from Trondhjem, Norway, about June 20, on the steam yacht AMERICA, which has been thoroughly overhauled and strengthened during the past year. They will advance as far north as the ship can take them, and will then land on Franz Josef Land, where the winter will be passed. As soon as light returns in 1904 the march for the Pole will begin. The AMERICA stays with the party. In June, 1904 an auxiliary vessel, under command of Wm. S Champ, will go north to carry additional supplies and to escort the expedition home.

The commander of the expedition is Mr. Anthony Fiala, of Brooklyn, N.Y. Mr. Fiala was second in command of the first Ziegler expedition. He is about 33 years of age, strong vigorous, and would seem to have all the requirements for a successful leader of an arctic expedition.

Mr. Ziegler has shown himself an enthusiastic and generous supporter of arctic exploration. When his first expedition returned unsuccessful in reaching the North Pole, though it had cost him several hundred thousand dollars, he at once announced that he would send out a second expedition. Everything that experience or thought could suggest has been provided. The party will take 30 Siberian ponies with them. The last expedition had a number of these ponies and found them much superior to dogs. They are both stronger and more enduring than dogs, and while they eat more they can carry more in proportion. The ponies can go anywhere that a dog can go and are more reliable, for when they come to a hummock they do not dart in different directions and upset the sledges. Hay to feed the ponies is being carried in solidly compressed bales. Besides the ponies, 200 dogs are also taken.

On the first Ziegler expedition eight nationalities were represented, and great confusion resulted because of the varieties of language. Every member of the present expedition is an American by birth or naturalization; (at this time both Anton and John Vedoe were Swedish citizens) most of the men have had experience in arctic work before, either in Alaska, Hudson Bay, or on whaling vessels. The sailing master, Captain Coffin, as captain of a whaler, has for 25 years battled with the arctic ice. Mr. Russell W. Porter, of the scientific staff, has had service in Greenland with Peary and also accompanied the first Ziegler expedition. Mr. Francis Long was a member of the Greely expedition of 1881-84.



Mr. Ziegler's ambition to plant the American flag at the North Pole is patriotic and laudable. The National Geographic Society is glad to indorse this worthy object and wish him and his gallant men success.

The instructions of the National Geographic Society to Mr. Peters regarding the scientific work to be done are summarized in the following report to President Graham Bell by Mr. G.K. Gilbert, Chairman of the Research Committee:

May 19, 1903

Dr. Alexander Graham Bell, President National Geographic Society.

Dear Sir: The Committee on Research was instructed by the Executive Committee of the Society to consider the possibilities of scientific work by and under the direction of Mr. Peters during the Ziegler Arctic Expedition, and to recommend the lines of investigation to be followed. ....

The considerations influencing the selection of these lines are; (1) that Mr. Peters will have very little skilled assistance; (2) that during the long night to be spent in camp on Franz Josef there will be abundant time at his disposal, including his own and various assistants, and (3) that in the journey northward his attention will be quite fully occupied in the work of determining the route and position of the party, and with such executive work as may fall to his share. I think it well, therefore, that he limit his plan for research chiefly to such lines as can be best followed on land, and that he restrict his attention in the main to such studies as his education and previous training best qualify him to conduct.

Gravity- It is recommended that a determination of gravity; be made by pendulum observation at the winter camp.....

Tides- It is recommended that systematic tidal observations be made at the base camp.....

Magnetisim- It is recommended that systematic observations of the usual magnetic elements be made at the base camp. It is important that the declination be observed..... at some point where a previous record has been made, and also that the magnetic station of the present expedition be definitely marked..... The determination of declination will have immediate importance..... because if the Pole is approached the compass will afford the most trustworthy means for orientation.....

Aurora-.....it is desirable to make systematic observation of auroras.....The question whether the aurora is ever accompanied by sound is one to which attention may well be given.

Meteorology-.....in the present state of meteorologic investigation that regular observation at Franz Josef Land of pressure, temperature, and surface wind, while desirable, is less important than the determination of the height, drift and velocity of clouds.....

Sea Depth- ..... it is very desirable that soundings be made during the northward journey..... (which) may aid in the determination of position on the return journey..... (and) make contribution to the general body of geographic information and supplement the important determinations made by Nansen.....

Other Observations- It is not recommended that any special preparations be made for observations in geology, zoology, or botany,



although the geologist will welcome samples of prevailing rocks, and especially any fossils which may be found, and the zoologist will be glad to have record of birds and mammals seen.....



MEMBERS of the EXPEDITON

1. Anthony Fiala, Brooklyn, N.Y., Commander
2. William J. Peters, Washington, D.C., Chief Scientist, second in command.

FIELD DEPARTMENT

3. Russell W. Porter, Springfield Vermont; First Assistant Scientist and Artist.
4. R.R. Tafel, Philadelphia, Pa., Second Assistant Scientist.
5. Francis Long, Brooklyn N.Y., Weather Observer.
6. George Shorkley, Camden, Maine, Surgeon.
7. Charles Seitz, M.D., Evansville Ind., Assistant Surgeon.
8. J. Colin Vaughn, Medical Student, Forrest Hill, N.J., Second Assistant Surgeon in charge of the dogs.
9. H.H. Newcomb, D.V.S., Milford, Mass. Veterinarian.
10. Chas. E. Rilliet, St. Louis, Mo., Quartermaster, equipment.
11. John W. Truden, Pittsfield, Mass., Commissary.
12. Jefferson F. Moulton, Sergeant Troop D, 2nd Cavalry, U.S.A., Assistant Quartermaster, ponies.
13. Spencer W. Stewart, Brooklyn, N.Y., Assistant Commissary.
14. John Vedoe, Boston, Mass., Assistant Quartermaster.
15. Pierre LeRoyer, Three Rivers, Quebec, Canada, Assistant, dogs.

DECK DEPARTMENT

16. Edwin Coffin, Edgartown, Mass., Master.
17. Edward Haven, Lynn, Mass., First Officer.
18. James W. Nichols, New Bedford, Mass., Second Officer.

CREW

19. Peter L. Tessem, Trondhjem, Norway, Carpenter.
20. Franklin Cowing, New Bedford, Mass.
21. Allen W. Montrose, Lowell, Mass.
22. William R. Meyers, Boston, Mass.
23. Chas. Kunold, New York, N.Y.
24. Harry Burns (Harry Paxton), Dunkirk, N.Y.
25. D.S. Mackiernan, Dorchester, Mass.
26. Alfred Beddow, London, England.
27. Elijah Perry, New Bedford, Mass.
28. Gustave Meyer, New York, N.Y.
29. William Ross, New York, N.Y.
30. John J. Duffy, Waltham, Mass.

ENGINE DEPARTMENT

31. Henry P. Hartt, Portsmouth, Va., Chief Engineer.
32. Chas. E. Hudgins, Norfolk, Va., First Ass't Engineer.
33. Anton M. Vedoe, Boston, Mass., Second Ass't Engineer.
34. George D. Butland, Brooklyn, N.Y., Fireman.
35. Augustinsen Hovlick, Trondhjem, Norway, Fireman.
36. Sigurd Myhre, Trondhjem, Norway, Fireman.

STEWARD'S DEPARTMENT

37. Bernard E. Spencer, Boston, Mass., Steward.
38. Clarence W. Thwing, Boston, Mass. Cook.
39. James Dean, New Bedford, Mass., Cabin Boy.



Feb. 8, 1903 Sunday [Tromso, Norway]

Arrived Feb. 8, Sunday at 6 A.M. Met Mr. Hartt in Grand Hotel. He did not feel quite well. I got a room in the hotel though they were not ready to receive me on board the AMERICA.  
Monday 9

Mr. Hartt sick. Stopped in bed all forenoon. He got off the bed in the afternoon feeling a little better. I was at his bedside all forenoon. In the afternoon I went on board the ship and met Mr. LeRoyer. I found the AMERICA in almost the same state as when I left Tromso in September. Some men were working on taking out the blubber tanks. Later in the evening I met Captain Kjeldsen in Mr. Hartt's room. Stopped in the hotel overnight.

Thursday 10

Mr. Hartt very ill today. Was near him most of the day. I got orders from him to go onboard and see how the works were progressing. Found the men still working on the tanks and pumping the ship. Coming back to the hotel at night, I found Hr. Peder Hendriksen, one of the "FRAM" men accompanying Mr. Hartt. Stopped at the hotel overnight.

Wednesday 11

Mr. Hartt still sick. Went on board with him before dinner. A heavy wind blew up in the afternoon. The men were working on the tanks having found one half full of salt which they had to empty even two full of water delaying the work of taking the tanks out. Had to sleep on board overnight on account of storm, fixing our beds best we could down in cabin.

Thursday 12

Been on board most of day. Wind blowing all day, giving the ship a heavy list. Mr. Hartt found it not safe to take out anymore tanks before he could get some ballast in her. To that end he sent me ashore to see about the water boat coming over to fill some of the remaining tanks with water. We went ashore together at 6 p.m. Stopped at hotel overnight.

Friday 13

Was called at 2 a.m. LeRoyer who had come ashore with his wife, the strong east wind having nearly capsized the ship. Left his wife on land and followed us on board. It was then calm. The wind had thrown the ship over so badly that the ship's bell began to ring waking them up, and LeRoyer thought it high time to leave when the bell gave its warning. We could do nothing before the water boat arrived. Half past eight a man came on board asking Mr. Hartt to come ashore, someone wanting to buy the tanks. He sold the tanks for 200 kr. One tank got adrift a strong wind blowing

Saturday 14

4 men working down in the hold tearing up the planking, found ceiling first rate. Been on board all day.

Sunday 15

Mr. Hartt drunk, causing an awful lot of trouble. Had to keep him company all day and night. He paid all bills in hotel and made up his mind to leave and move on board today. I could not get anything to eat before seven o'clock in the evening. He would not let me leave his side of fear that he would go and do something wrong.



Feb. 15 cont. - He kept the hotel awake all night going round kicking the doors like a little horse. He used the bell so frequently that they had to cut the connection in order to keep him quiet. He was down on the commercial travelers because they had kept him awake some night and now he had got into his head that he was going to tear down the whole hotel and it was a hard job to keep him from doing it. He got asleep at 5 o'clock in the morning and at that time I was so tired and sick that I sneaked down in my room and got a few hours sleep. At 8 o'clock he came down and woke me up and gave me a call down and says, "that's the way you take care of me, ey! You'd better be careful young man." Well I went up spoke to Mr. Hansen and he told me he had been here and put in his apology and said that he was not going to leave the hotel. He is making me so tired that I wish that I I had never come on the expedition.

Monday 16

4 men worked on cleaning up lower hold. Captain Kjeldsen had some men and the custom house officer on board to release the ship of the seal it was put under. In the afternoon Captain Kjeldsen's men pumped the ship. Found only a few inches of water. Mr Hartt was on board a couple of hours in the morning. Went on shore at eleven o'clock and got drunk.

Thurs 17

At six o'clock I went down to shore in order to get on board. An awful wind was blowing and I could and I could not make myself heard from the ship. I got on board at nine o'clock. Captain Kjeldsen told me he was sick of the whole affair and wanted to throw up his work as soon as possible. It came to my knowledge that Pierre had been on shore all night drunk. He came on board half past eight and kept up his drunk all day. As I intended to live on board, I had my trunk and valise taken on board. The men left for dinner at twelve o'clock and came on board with my things at half past two o'clock. They scraped the hold and hoisted up the remaining dirt. They left half past three to bring the lighter and take the old planks and dirt on shore. They could not on account of low tide get it off ground and did not show up until following morning. Mr Hartt came on board at 4 o'clock drunk. Pierre had behaved all right until then, but now he broke out and swore and threw his hat on the floor and jumped on it and got a hold of the old man and shook him and promised to scalp Capt. Kj. for that he told Mr. Hartt that Pierre had been drunk. I never saw a man act like he did before. He was certainly wild. We got him quiet, but all my thoughts of stopping on board overnight had flown away.

Wednesday 18

Both Pierre and Mr. H. drunk. Mr. Hartt was not out of the hotel all day. Men scraping all iron in hold and painting. At one o'clock I asked Pierre to put me on board. He went down the icy ladder and drop the line for the boat and whether he slipped or jumped in the water himself I don't know, but anyway there he was swimming like wild beast and shouting in the cold water. I helped him up and got a man to row after our boat. I went ashore at two pm and told the men coming from dinner to take our boat over to ship. At 4 o'clock I tried to get on board but a heavy wind was blowing so they could not hear me. Hansen came on down to the hotel at 9 o'clock. He just come from the ship where he had left Pierre sound asleep. Pierre had been jumping around naked for hours in the snow, crawling on hands and feet imagining he had a



Feb. 18 cont.-

a rifle in his hand and exhibited the most laughable exercise pointing his gun at some unseen moose that he imagined was running round on deck. Work going on scraping and painting lower hold.

Thursday 19

Mr. Hartt's birthday. Drunk all day. Did not attend to any kind of business. Men working in lower hold.

Friday 20

Mr. Hartt sick. Captain Kjeldsen's men pumped ship in the forenoon. 11 men scraping and painting lower hold. Been on board all day.

Saturday 21

Mr. Hartt was very ill last night. He ate a little but his stomach is out of order. I was up in his room until 4 o'clock in the morning. At that time he was resting quiet and easy. At 7 a.m. I went up there and found him awake and feeling a little better. On board the work is going on down in main hold. Deck is leaking, the water coming through everywhere in cabin and upper cabin and between decks. Captain Kjeldsen very eager to get some coal on board, but as Mr. Hartt can't see any use in having it on board now when works and repairs got to be done all over they will not come to any agreement in that direction.

Monday 23

3 men working in lower hold. Hansen sick. Custom house officer on board in the forenoon taking out cameras to be sent to America. Ladder put in its place at 4 o'clock.

Tuesday 24

4 men shifting salt bags and working in lower hold. Mr. Hartt received cable from Mr. Champ about the anchor chain. Box of cameras sent off to N.Y. Mr. Arne wanted to know about furs. He sent off a telegram to Mr. Champ asking about them. Cost 21 kr. and 35 ore.

Wednesday 25

Work of storing sails and stuff in forepeak going on. 4 men working. 1 man on board taking up and looking over the deadlights. LeRoyer(Pierre) and lady went on shore after dinner. Mr. Hartt remeasured chain and sent off a telegram at 10 o'clock. Paid 27 kr.

Thursday 26

LeRoyer came on board at 2 o'clock last night or rather this morning drunk and made an awful racket. He broke on chair and called Mr. Hartt "son of a bitch" and all sorts of names. We did not get any sleep. He had left the old lady ashore. Today he was sober until 11 o'clock when I noticed he had been drinking. He brought his wife on board at half past ten o'clock and probably had brought some liquor at that time. 3 men working in lower forecastle. I made out couple of drawings of chain links. Men sounded pump-found 14 inches. Ship pumped. 1 man working on deadlights. 2 Carpenters working on stanchions.



Friday 27

3 men working tearing down bunks in forecastle. Carpenters through about 5 o'clock. Mr. Hartt arranging about purchase of skins with Mr. Arne. Sent off a telegram calling for 4000 kr. for buying skins. Mr. Arne had at a previous time said that he could secure the skins needed, 1000. Now he does not bind himself for more than 500 at the price of 6.50 a skin and wants 2000 krs. as an installment.

Saturday 28

3 men on board work in forecastle going on. One man looking over deadlights. He got through a 4 o'clock. Mr. Hartt made a contract with Mr. Arne to buy the skins, if possible 1000. He gave Capt. Kjeldsen order to pay to Mr. Arne 1800 kr. 500 skins has to be delivered ready for tanning before 1 of April.

Sunday 1 March

I was out skiing with Mr. Ostensen and Didricksen from 11 o'clock until 5 in the afternoon.

Monday 2

Hansen came on board 8 o'clock. Sounded and pumped the ship and found 15 in. of water. 3 men worked in lower forecastle. The bunks torn down, the place cleaned up and the men started to scrape iron braces. Mr. Hartt drunk. Some of these businessmen know how to use his hospitality. Mr. Hartt received a cable not to buy any furs until Mr. Fiala comes. He left Saturday.

Tuesday 3

3 men working scraping lower forecastle. Mr. Hartt sick in bed all day. Captain Kjeldsen took out 6 sacks and one box of crackers out of the storehouse to be sent down to the horses.

Wednesday 4

3 men working on the same job. Mr. Hartt sick in bed.

Thursday 5

Work in lower forecastle going on. Three men working. Mrs. LeRoy moved on land today. Mr. Hartt sick in bed.

Friday 6

Same work on board ship. Hansen came on board a 9 o'clock. 3 men Capt. Kj., Alvik, and Mr. Hartt were on board today looking over needed repairs. Mr. Alvik will have charge of the work in engine room instead of Hartt. LeRoy drunk. He bought a dog off Capt. Arnesen for 15 kr. Mr. Hartt is gaining health. He received telegram and letters from the office and that started him anew. Mr. Fiala leaves N.Y. tomorrow.

Saturday 7

2 men working. Hansen was not on board all day. Mr. Hartt thought it best to stay on land while he would get perfectly well. Mr. Kraft was up in his room and asked about the engine work but he could not as before was arranged get the job because the ship offered to make it cheaper and Mr. Alvik says that Mr. Hartt promised him the work when he first came here and he says he would have nothing to do with America if Kraft goes to



Sat. 7 cont.

work there. As it is now, Mr. Hartt told him to have his men ready to start on possibly Monday.

Sunday 8

Mr. Hartt is feeling much better and we were out for a walk on the afternoon. We found the little America ashore indicating that LeRoy was ashore.

Monday 9

3 men working in lower forecastle. 1 engineer and 1 helper put in the afternoon down in engineroom. The ship pumped, 14 inches water. At 8 o'clock Captain Kj. and the customhouse officer, Jacobsen, came up to Mr. Hartt. Mr. Hartt received 25 kr. for which he made out a receipt Kj. called for drink after drink and as he was pretty drunk when he came up he soon got so bad that we did not know what to do with him. He started to call down both me and Mr. Hartt in the worst way and threatened to kill all of us being in the room. Mr. Hartt tried to get him to sleep, but impossible. At last Mr. Hansen and I had to drag him home aided by two of the hotel boys. Mr. Hansen and I pulled on each one arm and the two boys were pushing behind. On the way home he tried his best to break loose and start to fight. He said many a thing that was hard to swallow for an American and to judge from the look of Mr. Hartt he was very angry when Capt. Kj. left the hotel.

Thursday 10

3 men working cleaning up the holds. 2 men have been working in the engineroom. The high pressure valve stem put in place also link for same and the low pressure started on. Received a letter from Mr. Fiala.

Wednesday 11

3 men in engine room. Low pressure valve looked over. Low pressure steam cover put in its place and bolted on. Turned engine without difficulty. Two men working in between decks scraping and painting boiler tubes. I spoke to Captain Kjeldsen, he apologised for his behavior of Monday night. He had a very sore head.

Thursday 12

5 men working. 3 in engine room, 2 in between decks. Mr. Hartt is fairly well now after his illness. He has been in the engine room all day looking after the work. I put the connection for the butterfly valve in order this afternoon. The men put the air and circulation pump together. One bearing for crank on donkey pump keyed up. A new plate for fire room floor ordered from shop.

Friday 13

3 men working in engine room. 2 in between deck. A boilermaker ordered on board in the afternoon. Wennerberg sick after dinner.

Saturday 14

Work in engine room going on. Boilermaker working on cutting out a door opening in coal bunker.

Monday 16

Work going on in the coal bunker. One carpenter on board. Work in engine room still going on. 6 men working in all. From 8 till 1 o'clock at night Mr. Hartt and I were arranging with Herr Edelsteen about the electrical plant which he thought he could furnish much cheaper than Hr. Fuchs in Bergen had offered. He



Monday 16 cont.

thought a turbine or fast going engine directly connected to the dynamo would be both cheap and the most practical

Tuesday 17

Some work going on in engine room and coal bunker. Herr Edelsteen was on board and took needed dimensions in case we want to put in the donkey boiler which he thought he could get from us. At night he had put his prospect with price to our disposition, diem 25 kr. Hansen sick all day.

Wednesday 18

The engineer is packing pump and other packing boxes. Timberman is working in the coal bunker. 3 men scraping and cleaning up engine room. 1 man scraping and painting icehouse. An awfull storm has been blowing the whole day. The port wire has been wearing and tearing on its bit so badly that we are afraid that it will not hold much longer. At 12 o'clock Mr. Hansen in the hotel sent a man on board asking for 350 kr. our bill reaching to about that sum. I have been taking the stock of the starboard locker and cleaning it out a little. Mr. Hartt gave Captain Kj. orders to draw the money out of the bank and give them to him at night. Captain Kj. came up there 7 o'clock and said that he had no orders from Mr. Champ to give Mr. H. any money. Mr. H. showed him his orders

received in New York. Captain Kj. went to have them translated though he could not understand them. However, he came back at 8:30 o'clock and stated that everything was alright and Mr. Hansen could have the money. Mr. Hartt waited until 8 o'clock and after that he had to go to a party he was giving for the young ladies Ebeltoft at Pettersons Restaurant.

Friday 20

Had the engine running for the first time today. Everything went pretty good although there is some work to be done before everything can be called OK. The donkey pump plunger will have to be packed and the engine keyed up. We sucked the ship at 7 o'clock.

Saturday 21

The plunger for the donkey pump repacked. The men cleaning up grating and the dynamo room being put in order to receive a coat of paint. Two men knocked off work. A ships carpenter was on board with Mr. Alvick to have a look at the upper cabin where

a new door got to be cut out. The upper forecastle bunks fixed up to receive the crew.

Sunday 22

Had breakfast on board at 11 o'clock. At half past four we went on board to have our dinner, but we had to steal a boat at the wharf row for ourselves Leroyer being asleep so he could not hear our calls. Mr. Hartt was in a bad temper and it came to a little quarrel as usual.



Monday 23

I have taken stock of all lockers in engine room. Mr. Hartt was on board at 7 o'clock this morning. Carpenter working in upper cabin. Some work going on in engine room. We went to Capt. Kj. at 8 o'clock tonight. He is pretty sick having been in bed for two days. He is very weak.

Tuesday 24

Started work in lower cabin today. Also in engine room tearing down bulkheads. Mr. Hartt wants to make room for a pump there. A barrel of coal oil brought on board. One man knocked off. Only 4 men working now. Two in engine room and two carpenters in the cabins.

Wednesday 25

Work in cabin going on. Two carpenters working Hansen and Vennerberg cleaning up and painting in engine room.

Thursday 26

3 carpenters working in cabin. 2 men in engine room.

Friday 27

Same work as yesterday. Customhouse officer was on board Mr. Hartt wanted to take a look at the stores in the powder magazine. Everything there found to be dry; the deck showing no leakage.

Saturday 28

5 men working. Mr. Hartt received telegram from Mr. Fiala that the officers and crew will arrive tomorrow, Sunday, at 7 a.m. Mr. Fiala himself will not be here before Tuesday. Had fire under the boiler but did not raise steam with any pressure. Hansen and Leroyer worked in upper cabin today. I kept fire in the forecastle both today and yesterday. got 25 kr. from Capt. Kj. private. (This ends the first book. Also, in addition to the journal are sketches and dimensioning of the various compartments of the ship America.)

March 28 Sunday (should be 29)

Captain, first mate and crew arrived at 7 a.m. Mr. Hartt, Captain Kj. and I were down to meet them at the quay. Captain Coffin and officers took in on Grand Hotel. The crew at Corneliussens Hotel. They were all on board in the forenoon. Mr. Coffin and Hansen ate breakfast together with Mr. Hartt and me. I had a talk to some of the men. They seemed all happy and had had nice time coming over. At night I saw Mr. Hartt pretty drunk quarreling with Hansen in Gr. H.

Monday 30

Captain and mate on board with Hr. Alvik arranging about cabin. Hansen was on board although Mr. Hartt discharged him Saturday. Mr. Hartt drunk all day-not on board. I met him at 7 o'clock at night. He met with Hansen. Asked him who sent him on board to work. Hansen said he did. Mr. Hartt called him a liar and they departed with all sorts of fine remarks about each other.



Tuesday 31

At 6 pm Leroyer came up to my room. He was to go down and see Mr. Fiala when the steamer would arrive. I could not go down there as I had orders to be on board to look after the work going on. Anyway I went up to Mr. Hartt. There I found him awake but in bed fairly sober. I told him that he was expected to be down at the quai to receive Mr. Fiala. He got up, dressed and started to drink out of a whiskey bottle. I warned him but he would not listen. At 11 am Mr. Fiala, Capt, and mate came on board. I shook hands with him and found him the same good friend as of old. I followed them ashore at 2 pm as interpreter. At 4 pm I was on board again. I left Mr. Fiala in Grand Hotel with orders to come up to his room at 6 pm. He wanted to have a talk with Hr. Edelsteen the electrical engineer. At said time we were there. Talked things over, but Mr. Fiala would not decide on anything before Mr. Hartt had straightened up. He told Hr. Edelsteen to call on him at 6 tomorrow. He asked me to go up and see Mr. Hartt and tell him that he had liked to have a talk with him tomorrow and tell him that he was feeling bad about the way he found things topsy -turvy and tell him that he would not have any monkey business and there was plenty engineers besides him and that if he would not straighten up he would have to go back to N.Y. I saw Mr. Hartt and after helping him to something to eat I finally got him to take his clothes off and go to bed promising to be sober tomorrow. Two carpenters working on board. Vennerberg worked half day.

April 21 Tuesday

Left Tromso last Wednesday. Everything went fine. Mr. Hartt was drunk the first day out and very happy. I stood his watch and as he says now to his satisfaction.

22 Wednesday

Cleaning up in the engine room.

23 Thursday

Mr. Hartt drunk. Was going to discharge firemen but kept jumping around so that captain go tired waiting on him. He (captain?) blew the the boilers at 6 o'clock. It was a grand sight to see him working those firemen. He got them all three down there and had them working so they were laughing at him and themselves. Butland, the fireman, arrived last night.

24 Friday

Firemen discharged and paid off. Butland started to work this morning. Mr. H. drunk. Heslept on board 'til 2 o'clock this morning. I kept awake looking after him and followed him to the hotel.

28 April Tuesday

Ship got into dock at 12 a.m. Dock empty a 3:30 p.m. 4 men cleaning up fireroom. Letter from father.

May 5 Tuesday

Still in dock. repairs both out and inside going on. Put the new donkey pump in place this afternoon. Firemen scaling boiler. Carpenters working. Received Kr. 1 from Mr. Hartt and 10 from captain.



May 6 Wednesday

Work going on in engine room. Mr. Hartt drunk. He received a telegram from Mr. Champ as follows, "Give Captain loyal sober support otherwise will recall you." He paid my private bit of 5.95 kroner in the hotel. At 9 o'clock he turned in after which I talked him out of going up to see Captain and answer the telegram

May 7 Thursday

Mr. Hartt still drunk and I will say he makes me sick worrying for him. Captain asked for him today. He had a telegram saying, "Sign Mr. Hartt on the articles with the counsel, if not will have to engage another engineer." I laid my worries for Mr. Hartt tonight, but he don't seem to care. he got some funny ideas in his head. Propeller put in place today. Scraping boiler. Two men connecting up pump. Captain said that a second engineer will be here in a few days.

May 11 Monday

I am perfectly dissatisfied with Mr. H. He is worrying me, suspicioning me of doing all kinds of things behind his back. Awfully jealous on the slightest favor coming me in hand. He calls me, "son of a bitch-bastard". He swears at me and does everything to buck against everything that's done on board the ship. All this is all right. I may be all what he calls me, but I show myself just as I am and I can't be otherwise. But he is the biggest bluffer that ever walked on two feet and he may be hiding something that may be worse than what he accuses me of. I write this hardly knowing what I am doing. Mr. Hartt and I are the very best of friends sometimes, but when he is drunk, I will have absolutely nothing to do with him.. He made me exceedingly angry tonight at the supper table, throwing all sorts of rough comments on me, and the time has come when I have to put in a word myself, if I don't want to be stepped on all over. Things are getting to look as kind of serious. Stewart is wild. Mr. Varney thinks that Captain never will go with us.

May 28 Tuesday

Mr. Fiala arrived here last Monday. Tomorrow he leaves for Stockholm. He is going to Russia.

June 10 Wednesday

The scientific staff arrived here this morning. John was not with them. He left them in Christiana (Oslo) last night for Stockholm. He will be here the 14th. Rilliet is the same old fellow. Dr. Seitz and Mr. Long they are the only ones of the old party. Mr. Hartt left me this afternoon to follow Rilliet up town on some business matter. The crowd is to report on board to Captain this afternoon.

June 18-03 Thursday

The stores and supplies are coming on board fast now. Every day brings the old AMERICA nearer the bottom. Mr. Champ is here and he seems to be quite busy. John arrived here last Sunday night. Mr. Peters got here today from Hamburg where he has been looking after some instruments for the expedition. Last night Mr. Hartt was ordered to move up to the Brittanic Hotel in order to get away from bad company and liquor. Mr. Varney, the first ass. eng. , together with the cook, Mr. Smith, was sent home to America today, both having spoiled themselves by drinking.

June 20 Saturday

Left Tromso today after having taken on board part of the equipment left there last spring. Peter Leroyer was taken on board and his wife leaves for the States Monday.



June 30 Tuesday

Captain's 52nd birthday. Mr. Champ treated us on wine.

[For the period July 1 through July 14, 1903 Anton wrote his journal in both Swedish and English. Grethe Goodwin has translated the Swedish portion for me and I will use it as it contains more information and because it was written in Anton's native language flows easier.]

July 1, 1903 Wednesday

We are now sailing across the White Sea in the best of weather at a speed of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  knots on the way to Solombal, Archangel. After all the repair work has been done and all supplies and equipment have been brought on board at Trondhjem we were finally ready to leave this nice city on June 23. We had the best of time we've had in maybe two or three years, and we had good weather during our two month stay there. Tivoli and Fossestuen were frequently visited, and we had many good times there, which we won't easily forget, until we have other experiences to take their place.

On the 26th we arrived at Trano to on board the dogs, which had been left there from the last expedition. They were taken care of and watched by Mr. Svendsen, mate on Fritjof's auxilliary boat, during his last expedition. They were delivered in good condition, clean and nice looking, although they were a little shaggy because most of them were shedding their hair at this time. There were 187 including the puppies. We left Trano in the afternoon and arrived at Tromso on the next day which was the 27th. There we took on the leftovers from the Baldwin-Ziegler Expedition which were left there in the spring when

the AMERICA was brought to Trondhjem. On the following day I went ashore and visited my old acquaintances and took farewell with them the same day. Since I did not have much time I could not visit my old living quarters and the place called "Charlottenlund" where I had so much fun, Mr. Hartt and I.

About 10 o'clock in the evening of the 28th we took off from there. I really felt that I left something behind when I left the little hospitable city in Norway. During my long visit there I experienced many happy and carefree days, and they will never escape from my memory. On the 29th we passed the North Cape and proceeded around North Norway and by the Russian coast at Murmansk, and now are going straight ahead through the White Sea. Captain Coffin had his birthday yesterday on June 30. Mr. Champ made a short speech in honor of the day and toasted the 52 year old. We met a few ships, mostly carrying wood, from all different nations. Because of heavy fog we had to come to a stop for a few hours.

Everything on board is in good order. The dogs, which are placed in a fenced in area in a place built in the middle of the deck, with room for 30 horses, are busy trying to tear \_\_\_\_\_ off each other \_\_\_\_\_. The five surviving horses from the last expedition were taken on board at Trano. Even they are in first class condition. They are horses with a history. They have all have been on Franz Josef Land,  $81^{\circ}45'$  N.L., and have suffered many hard times with cold and hunger. Poor animals, they are surely going up this time, never to return again.



July 2 Thursday

We are now approaching the Dvina exit and have taken the Russian pilot on board to bring us over the bar. "America" is heavily loaded and draws  $18\frac{1}{2}$  feet, and the pilot thought we could hardly get over the bar which lies outside the delta, but fortunately we had just arrived at high tide and got across without any difficulty. At 12 o'clock we arrived at Solombola and anchored at the same spot as two years ago. Mr. Trontheim made a short visit onboard, and one of the Russians from the last expedition, whose name was Stephan, came on board, and was happy to see his old "Skyderlingar" horses and dogs still alive and in such good condition. The whole day passed with business concerning horses and dogs.

July 3 Friday

Today we worked hard at rearranging of the \_\_\_\_\_ cargo on deck which consists mostly of hay and some supplies to prepare room for horses and dogs. The scientists went ashore in the evening to look at the Russian city.

July 4 Saturday

Horses and dogs were taken on board this forenoon. Everything ran smoothly. All the animals are in fine shape. Among the horses there was one that attracted special attention because of his beautiful color. He is grey with the front of his body white, which gives him the appearance of an \_\_\_\_\_ horse and his name has been determined to be "Sirens". Otherwise there are many of them which are attractive, and most of them look like they could stand some hard times. While we are here we have a chance to take advantage of the open bath. God knows when we get a chance to enjoy such luxury again.

In the evening some of us went ashore. Mr. Champ hired a little boat which usually sets us ashore and picks us up at Archangel, so that we did not have to shake the long way in taxis. Solombola lies about 2 Eng. miles from Archangel. When we came to the city we went to the best restaurant and drank a highball and listened to the music, and there was a show where black ladies performed, sang and danced national songs.

Afterwards we took a walk around the city. There is much of interest to see and if one does not consider the mystical which accompanies everything Russian, the city does not offer any great attractions. Everything moves so quietly, and the interesting thing is to observe people, who act as if they were afraid of something unknown and dangerous. A lot of crippled beggars drag themselves around in the gutter in the most disgusting way. A taxi would come roaring by from time to time with a drunken passenger tumbling from side to side, ready to fall out at any moment.

July 5 Sunday

At 12 o'clock midnight we left Archangel. We were forced to anchor when we reached the light to wait for high tide in order to go over the bank. While we stayed there a figure without a coat crawled out from under the boat where he had hidden. He explained that he was an Englishman and that his ship had left the harbor in Archangel, and that he now had to get back in some manner. He was elderly and would not mind going with us, if possible. He was sent back with the pilot ship when it left us.



July 6 Monday

We are now moving full speed along the coast of Murmansk. Some rain in the afternoon. We are now setting course for Vardo where we believe we will load up coal to replace what we have burned the last weeks.

July 7 Tuesday

Seasick the whole day.

July 8 Wednesday

Still poor weather with seasickness. I have not eaten anything since yesterday morning and have no need for food.

July 9, Thursday

At 3 o'clock in the afternoon we arrived at Vardo. Here we received our last mail. I received a letter from my mother and father and some other friends. I wrote many letters and postcards with my last greetings to my family and friends. Some of the scientists went ashore in the evening. They soon returned completely dissatisfied with their visit. They found no places of entertainment or sights to see, except for the little fort, "Vardohus", which is the most northern fort in the world. The harbor in Vardo is protected from the ocean by a magnificent breakwater which caused admiration by all because of its solid construction, so sharply different from all other buildings in the little town. It is built of stone to a \_\_\_\_\_ thickness and must have cost a lot of work. The harbor was full of Russian fishing vessels and a few coal barges and cargo ships. The Russians come here to buy fish which is the only export item of the little town. As far as the eye can see one sees gallows where fish is dried in the rigging of the boats, and even on the streets fish ; was hanging to dry and everything is penetrated with the unpleasant smell of fish.

July 10 Friday

I was ashore today in the afternoon and went shopping for several items necessary for such a long trip.

July 12, Sunday

We have brilliant weather and have not met any ice yet. Mr. Fiala was out in one of the boats to take pictures of "America" under sail. We have sailed the whole day and save a good amount of coal. At 11 o'clock we had to make a fire again. The good wind had died completely and the hope for it to come back was as good as none.

July 13 Monday

The wind has died completely and it is warm and quiet. We have gone at half speed all day. This afternoon at 5 o'clock we met the first ice and along the edge of the ice we saw a seal catcher. We tried hard to \_\_\_\_\_, but the captain went by the little boat without talking to it. The ice is very open so have had no difficulty to go through it all afternoon and evening. We have just about passed the 75th parallel. Everything is proceeding well, although we had not figured to meet ice so far south. The daily duties of the scientists are now to feed and take care of the horses and dogs besides to take out provisions for the steward at times.



July 14, Tuesday

Now we are right into the ice; ice as far as the eye can see in all directions. All night it was like glass, so we could maneuver through without difficulty, but towards morning it tightened and forced us to go south again. All morning the course was easterly and at 4 o'clock in the afternoon we went south. The captain and the mate are continuously on the look-out now. I set up an electric signal bell from the crow's nest to the engine room to get a quicker connection. We see some sea birds, but we haven't seen any seal or bears yet.

[Now back to the diary as written in English]

Wed 15 July

Have been lying still all night for fog. At 11:30 we started with sunshine and fine weather. Have been going east mostly. Can see open ice-free water from the crow's nest in east and north to east.

Thurs. 16 July

Today I put up a signal bell from crow's nest to pilot house. Before they have given signals with a whistle and it has always been hard when a strong wind has been blowing. Now they only touch the button so many times required to go in any direction and it will be heard and understood in the pilot house. This does away with a man on the bridge to answer the whistle. We have been running east all day. Stopped for fog a couple of times.

July 17-04

Today we have been lying still all fore noon, foggy and rain. About 4 o'clock it cleared up and we started out keeping north, east. At 9 o'clock it became foggy and thick so we had to slow down and go slow, maintaining the northeasterly direction. We have been keeping east all the week in search for an open lead, but as yet we have not struck any opening which would be safe to follow. We tried some the first bays, but always turned out to be a blind bay formed ice edge reaching a few miles into the solid pack. Those bays are quite frequent. If we can't see the bottom of them, we observe the sky light over them and the reflected snow shows whether there is water or not.

July 18th-03

A beautiful day. We do not make much progress towards north. The last observation puts us lat.  $73^{\circ}47'$  and we continue to go south. Some of the men believe that we are going to winter in Vardo. Well, it does not look much better. I have not see any floe ice yet. The ice we meet is only broken up ice and we find no difficulty in going through it. This forenoon I was up in the crow's nest and as far as I could see in all directions there was ice, probably only broken \_\_\_\_\_, but it looked to be pretty well bunched up. We have gone through several small ice belts. Mr. Haven says we are working for a lead he has found way east leading north. In order to get there we have to navigate around some of the points reaching for south.

JULY 19th-03

Going north half speed all night and open water. At 9:20 this morning we stopped and spoke to a sealing vessel. I wrote a letter to my parents and sent it on board with Mr. Fiala who



From the NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC MAGAZINE- November 1903

THE ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITON

The latest news of the Ziegler Polar Expedition is contained in a letter to Mr. Ziegler, written by Commander Fiala ten days after leaving Vardö, Norway, and received by Mr. Ziegler in New York the latter part of September. As far south as 75° north latitude the expedition came upon a compact barrier of ice, which they followed to within sight of Nova Zembla without finding and open lead. At the time of the writing they were returning toward the west, intending to try and force a way northward through the ice barrier between the 46th and 47th parallels of east longitude. The ice conditions were thus exceedingly unfavorable at the start, but probably after forcing their way through the barrier they found open water beyond. Mr. Fiala's letter is as follows:  
Barents Sea, July 20, 1903

Dear Mr. Ziegler:

We are rapidly nearing a sail, and in hopes of this reaching you I write hastily.

We left Archangel on the 4th of July, but as Mr. Champ has probably told you we were delayed by a storm in the White Sea, reaching Vardö, Norway, July 9. At Vardö we took on coal and water, leaving there the evening of the 10th. Since then we have been skirting the edge of the ice pack, vainly looking for a lead. We made a direct course from Vardö, striking the ice at 38°30' E. Long., 75°38' N. lat., and then went into the ice to the 75°38'; but it was so solid that we returned and went eastward and southward along the edge of the pack, looking for a lead, until we were near the shores, in plain sight, of Nova Zembla last night in latitude 72°45'. Not finding a lead of any character worth going into the north ice, we are returning northward and westward, where we intend to push into the ice between the 46th and 47th parallels of E. long., as Captain Coffin thinks it will be the best place to try to FORCE our way.

Instead of being a particularly good year as to ice conditions the indications thus far seem to prove otherwise, and the strange silence, from the lack of life, that broods over this waste of ice is peculiar. Dr. Shorkley said to me that it seemed to him like a graveyard of ice. We have indeed struck a peculiar season; numbers of dead birds strewn on the cakes of ice and not one polar bear has been sighted, and only a stray seal once in a great while. It either indicates immense fields of ice north or lots of open water. Let us hope for the latter.

Everything aboard has been pleasant and harmonious. Men are in splendid condition and happy, though impatient to get north. The horses and dogs are in particularly good form and we are particularly thankful for the coal we took on in Vardo, for we feel we shall need every ounce of it, as we look at the long unbroken mass of ice.

Yours sincerely,      Anthony Fiala.



The AMERICA has been entirely refitted the past year- new decks, new rigging, new boilers, new engines. She makes 8 knots an hour without any help from the wind and rides very easily in spite of her tremendous cargo. The dogs and ponies were taken aboard at Solombala, near Archangel, and seemed in splendid condition.

The expedition left Vardö in excellent spirits and excellent condition. Most important of all, the men and crew had had a chance of working together for several months before the actual start, and it was the unanimous opinion of all that harmony and goodwill would continue.

The AMERICA left Trondhjem June 23, Archangel July 4, and Vardö July 10.

At every port and wherever the expedition or any members of the party went they were received with great courtesy and everything was done by the officials and people to help the work of the expedition. This courteous treatment was much appreciated by all and acknowledgment of this kindness to them is gratefully made by Mr. Ziegler. Special thanks are due to Professor H. Geelmuyden, the distinguished observatorist at the University of Christiania, for loaning the expedition the 20-cen. alt. azimuth circle by Repsold.



went on board. All around where we were the seals were jumping and playing and it seemed to be quite a rich place of seals. We turned back to Novaya Zemlya last night and started back north west in open water and evrything indicates swift going now. The donkey pump broke down last night and I had a stiff job patching it up. it is \_\_\_\_\_ so \_\_\_\_\_ it hangs together I expect to see it fall apart any moment.

July 20

Going north or generally north all afternoon and evening. Have probably passed  $74^{\circ}$  now on return. Beautiful weather has followed us all day. We see a lot of seal and birds and a couple of big logs of driftwood passed us, one in the forenoon and one in the afternoon. Mr. Peters gave a lesson in the cabin about reading of the sextant and he will give one tomorrow night too. Everything is running very smoothly except my stomach. It doesn't seem as does like the diet on board, although of the best kind. I presume it will have to be a little used to the canned goods before it will be well again. Yesterday we made about 2.5 miles. Today's observation places us at  $76^{\circ}45'$ . Done a little bucking this morning and night. Mr. Fiala shot a seal.

July 21st-03

Very little advance today. At noon we were stopped by \_\_\_\_\_. Then entered and going through a couple of small strips of pretty open pack ice belonging to the main pack, the first of this kind encountered yet on this trip. We are up  $75^{\circ}30'$  L. and  $45^{\circ}$  Long. E.O.G. From the place where we turned near Novaya Zemalya we have been following quite the same course as the Duke of Abruzzi took with so good result. At seven the temperature is  $28^{\circ}\text{F.}$ , the lowest so far. The scientific staff is helping the crew coaling, a job which they don't seem to like very much. Well it is not pleasant to get dirty with coal dust.

July 22nd-03

Today we have been navigating in the outskirts of the main pack. What progress we have made is yet to be seen. The best kind of weather is favoring us, but we had rather see a good breeze spread the ice for us so we could get through without too much waste of our precious coal. At three p.m. we had to stop, the ice closing up on all sides. Quite a few small seals circle the around the ship and tonight three were shot. Two of them sank but the third one shot by our leader was safely harpooned with a boat hook and hauled up by Jimmy, the cabin boy. Mr. Peters gave another lesson in navigation for the scientific staff tonight.

July 23rd-03

Been at stop all night. Cleared up this morning so that we could start our work squeezing through the now a little opened up ice. We started about 8 ock. and after a lot of backing and going ahead we managed to gain about a half a mile until we were obliged to stop again at 9:30 a.m. At noon we got under way again and all afternoon and evening we made pretty good headway through the pack, mostly thin slushy ice. At 12 midnight we were still working our way through with but little progress.



July 24-03

After quite good run all night and forenoon we had to stop in front of a great field of ice extending in all directions as far as we can see. In yesterday's and last night's run we probably made about 35-40 miles. The men are eagerly discussing the shooting qualities of Mr. Truden. They are having target practice every day and at such yesterday Mr. T. swore up and down that a couple of brown grease spots on the target was where his bullets struck and it was quite impossible to move him out of that idea. Well, the men found that he was entitled to first prize and so they asked me to make a medal of brass for him with the inscription, "Capt. John Truden, presented by the members of the Z.P.E." I made it and now they it in the showcase for exhibition during the next two weeks. Truden himself seems to be tickled, especially as there is put down quite a little work on it and it will be a fine souvenir. Mr. Fiala was out on the ice blasting, but the results were only a hole in the ice and the surroundings blackened by the smoke. It seems to be a hard problem how to blast this ice. It does not matter how big a quantity of explosive is put down under the ice, the result is always only a hole unless it is done in the edge of the field or in a small floe, then it might crack and split, otherwise not. We steamed for a couple of hours after noon, but had to lie up again on account of fog and lead conditions of the pack. A little snow this afternoon.

July 25th-03

After having been at stop all night we steamed up this morning about 10 ock. and did a little bucking for about an hour and a half. Fog set in and shut out the view. At dinner time two bears came swimming along, passing astern of the ship within 75 yards and they were not observed very long before the whole deck was full of armed men that started to fire away on the poor beasts as soon as they reached the nearby ice edge. There was 7 men firing away just as if they were paid for it, and it did not take long before the two animals, covered with blood, were rolling around on the ice. Both badly wounded, but none dead. One had a leg shot off, and probably back broken. He lay on his back and we could see how he tried his best to gain his feet, but he was down for good. The other was turning round trying to bite his wound, falling down on his paws now and then, dragging himself along to behind a hummock where he dropped down seeming to be played out. The little boat was lowered and put out. As soon as it struck the ice, the bear behind the hummock managed to get up on his feet and galloped away and before the hunters could get within reach he jumped into the water and disappeared, swimming away at full speed. The other one was shot and killed at last after some painful minutes. It was skinned and cut up and taken aboard. A party went out to look for the other one, but after a couple hours fruitless search they had to come back. Mr. Hartt was presented in Vardo with a carrier pigeon which he kept imprisoned in a little cage. Today he thought he was going to give him a little exercise and he let him out. It flew up and



# The Arctic Eagle.

Vol. 1.

Barents Sea, July 31, 1903.

No. 1



- MAGNETISM IN THE POLE -

QUESTERS—  
CAN THERE BE ATTRACTION IN THE POLE?  
IN THE ICY, FROZEN QUARTER,  
WHERE FOR MILES AROUND, THERE'S NOT A SOUL  
AND ICE, IN PLACE OF WATER.

FIALA AND CREW—  
"OUR BOAT IS ON ITS FEARLESS SPREE,  
AND EVERY MAN ABOARD IT,  
WE GUARENTEE, AND ALL AGREE,  
THE POLE DRAWS US TOWARDS IT."

## LOOK OUT, FORWARD

A U.S. Revenue cutter is said to be patrolling the southern coast of Franz Josef Land, in the vicinity of Cape Flora. She is reported short of crew.

## WHAT'S THIS?

Vardo, July 14. (wireless).—A captain of an English steamer here, is looking for a certain carrier pigeon, which he says disappeared on the afternoon of the 10th. The police have searched the harbor in vain, and intimate that the only vessel to escape their vigilance was the America, sailing from this port that evening.

Use Dr. Vaughn's Vegetable Vimvigor, bark restorer for dumb dogs

## FAREWELL TELEGRAMS

Received at Archangle, Russia.  
"Godspeed" Ziegler.  
"Godspeed and safe return"  
Alice Shorkley.  
"Best wishes and good luck"  
Giaver.

Received at Vardo, Norway.

"Good luck. Safe return. Best wishes one and all. Any unpaid bills send to me. See you next year.  
Champ.

Sent from Archangle, July 4th., to Wm. Ziegler, 60 Liberty St. New York City.

"We start northward celebrating the glorious Fourth. Officers and men join kind remembrance and pledge loyalty. An revoir from all." Fiala.

Vol. 1. THE ARCTIC EAGLE No. 1.

On board S.Y. America. July 31, 1903.

Published whenever convenient.

This maiden effort of the "Arctic Eagle" is a flyer; a feeler, as it were, to test the market for such a paper among the reading public of Franz Josef Land. Its future will depend largely on the support it receives. We can confidentially assert, with due regard for the truth, that it is the only paper in six hundred miles.

We desire contributions from the different members on any matter of interest to the Expedition. We reserve the right to reject or accept any or all such data, but do not hold ourselves responsible for the opinions that finally find expression in our columns.

The Commanding Officer compliments Officers and all Members of the expedition on the good work and enterprising spirit, that has characterized the expedition thus far. We are on our way north in an endeavor that will possibly place each man individually historically before the world. As to how that history shall read, will depend on the individual member. So let us vie with each other in our interest in the expedition, and endeavor to help toward the object of the expedition by faithfulness to our trust and with a spirit of helpfulness to all that will be as uncritical as it is valuable.

Sergt. Moulton is thoughtfully smoking over this problem—Why do brown spots on a piece of cardboard count bulls eyes, while spots of the same color on a seal signify clean misses?

We note with pleasure, as we go to press, the universal feeling of kindness and good fellowship as evinced in the presentation to our dear lieutenant of a beautiful silver (?) medal, now on exhibition along with a tattered trophy. The

inscription is touching; the trophy most wonderful. How he will cherish this token of our admiration in the years to come, when, surrounded by his friends at home, he tells of those marvellous feats of sharpshooting in the far north.

"I can't understand," quoth the mighty bear hunter, "why I'm so billious. I think there must be something the matter with my stomach."

By the way, Anton, how is the bathing in Trondhjem?

Who busted the mainspring in the music box?

Casket—"This is fine coal we have."

Cardium—"Yes; remarkably fine."

And our letters went by the same boat.

Bl—o—o—o—w.

## WELL OFF BY COMPARISON.

Sailor (shouting)—Man overboard.  
Seaside passenger (groaning)—Lucky dog.

## A DAILY THOUGHT.

To know how to wait is the greatest secret of success.

## Advertisements

Just out. Hartt's new book.—entitled: Dark Deeds of the Shaft Alley, or The Coal Passer's Revenge. By subscription only. Price, 2 kroners.

Crow's nests, bird cages, sounding machine boxes, horsestalls, airshafts, etc., furnished in styles at short notice. Address Chips, Glory Hole.

Note—Barrel heads busted at one blow of the fist.

Use Dr. Newcomb's Nonesuch Knockout Nuts.—For peevish ponies.

Try Dr. Shorkley's Selfsustaining Sassafras Syrup.—For colds and colic

## Lost.

On July 24. somewhere in the middle of Barents Sea—one torpedo. A reward is offered for its recovery.



circled around a little and it looked as if it was to take a long trip, but after a few turns it landed in the rigging. She is missing now and has probably started for home. It was too bad, if only she had a message to bring back to civilization. Today has been a day of many happenings. At last tonight the new arctic newspaper came out. Its name is "The Arctic Eagle" and is very nicely gotten up. It is to be published whenever convenient.

July 26th-03 Sund

Skiing, shooting, another bear shot. The problem who is the best shot on board has been settled today amongst the scientists. There has been a lot of arguing about Truden's "brown spots" and this was the only way to get the question settled. Truden proved to be the best shot by far, and some of the other "sharpshooters" turned to be way below average. Truden's score was 18. Dr. Shorkley and Mr. Fiala 17 and the rest worked gradually down to 4-5. Porter and I went out skiing for a couple of hours. Another bear was shot today by Leroyer and Dr. Vaughn. He came along the ice quite close to the ship.

Captain Coffin is a nice old man. Sometimes he makes me laugh. He can come and talk to anybody about anything just as though he was talking to one of his best friends. He talks so unconcerned, jumping from subject to another. Tonight he came into the engine room where we have the coffee pot standing to keep it warm during the night. He came in there to have a cup. I asked, "Are we close to Novaya Zemlya now, Captain?" "Oh yes", he said, "We can see it from the crow's nest." So he said, "If that coffee pot would fall down on the shaft there would not be much left of it, would it, gosh?", he said and walked away. That little incident made me laugh all evening.

July 27 Mond.

Tied up all day surrounded by big floes which threaten to close us in which necessitates a sharp watch. A pretty stiff N.E. wind has blown all day and we are expecting the wind to open up the ice and give us a chance to continue our northward trip. It has opened up so that we can see some streaks of open water north, but they run east and west. At noon lat. was 76°34'.

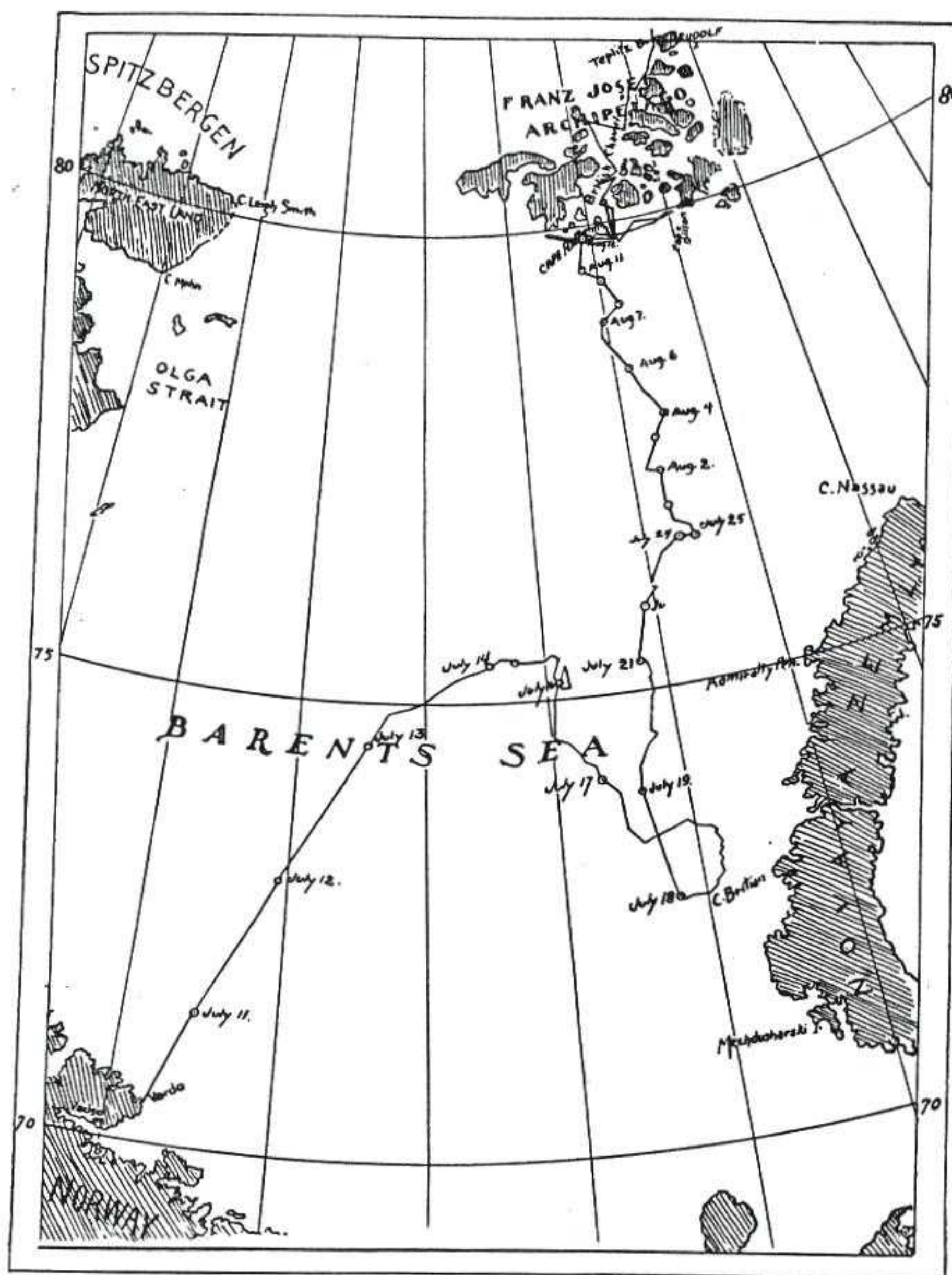
July 29-03

Just before 8 ock. this morning the sun came out for a few minutes and brightened up the before hazy surroundings and widened the view so that we in north could with our eyes follow a streak of open water as far as the clouds of fog would allow us. We got up steam immediately and at 8 ock. we started off.

July 31-03 Friday

Time is going past and we do not make much progress towards our goal. This forenoon we steamed for a few hours in pretty good leads, but they are not everlasting these leads. You steam up one of them and everything seems to favor your hard and tiresome work of watching the many turns and hindrances in the narrow streaks of open water. You navigate port and starboard, astern and ahead and as far as you can see the lead goes north opening out in some larger open space of water which you are aiming for. Can you only get stretches you will always find some lead that will take you still further on just a few more inches.





COURSE OF THE S. Y. "AMERICA" FROM VARDO, NORWAY, TO TEPLITZ BAY, RUDOLF ISLAND, FRANZ JOSEF ARCHIPELAGO



(This is from a loose leaf fragment and probably July 31.).....  
\_\_\_\_\_ and we will be there. But it is not meant to be so. You go for full speed pounding against that last strip of ice and you imagine yourself next minute to be steaming through open water as a well earned prize for all your work of the last hours, there the veteran ice-breaker goes crushing and breaking, her bow raised way up in the air only slowly to fall back into her own track, the ice in front being too heavy.

August 1

We started 11 o'clock last night and we are now steaming full speed in fine leads straight west.

(end of third book)

Sept 3-03

A strong wind has been blowing all day and has caused a lot of excitement. It began this morning about one o'clock by breaking up the edge of the ice where we are tied up. Floe after floe floated off and we had hard times saving what stuff already lowered down on the ice. Some of the lumber and the gangway drifted off, but luckily we managed to drag all the valuable hay and sledge material out of reach of the furious waves so that it was saved for a while, although the ice was cracking inside the place where we stacked them up for the time being, not having time to haul them through the exceedingly rough stretch of about 1000 ft. that separated us from the beach where they would be safe. The big hawser snapped off and we were forced to get up steam while the broken ones were replaced by new ones fore and aft to keep us from drifting away. A party consisting of Long, Tafel, Truden, and Sergeant Moulton with two sailors went out after breakfast to look for the horses, but they came back at 4 o'clock without having seen anything of them. Tafel stopped behind. All the men were engaged (continues)

[Diary entries for August are missing or were not made. On August 31 "AMERICA" reached beyond 82° north latitude, a record northing. The same day she returned to Teplitz Bay, Crown Prince Rudolph Island where she tied up for winter quarters at Camp Abruzzi. The entries for Sept. 3 are in Teplitz Bay. A number of ponies had broken loose while unloading.]



in moving the supplies further in on the ice as it threatened to break off and go to sea any moment. I was helping in that work all afternoon as I was off working in the engine room. All the lumber belonging to the house was sledged ashore and in safety. The horses, although not in very good trim after standing still for two months, did excellent work hauling the sledges through the hummocky ice. I was just to go on board when I had the bad luck to fall into the ice water trying to climb the ship side on a rope when that all of a sudden gave away and I dropped into the water over my head. I got up safely and climbed on board and changed clothes. Whiskey and wine was issued after the day's strenuous work, also cigars. Another party is getting ready to go out in search of Mr. Tafel and the horses with intention to stay out until they find out what has become of them. Tafel's absence is causing not little alarm. He has not had anything to eat since this morning and went out poorly dressed, and the wind has increased so he must not have it very pleasant up on the glacier where the wind will go right through him. The horse in the crevasse had disappeared altogether when the party arrived there this morning. That is the second horse we lost. There is still eight that we don't know whether they are alive or not. At 10 o'clock Tafel came back with two horses played completely out. He had been down to Cape Fligely where he had seen the rest of the of them, but as soon as he advanced towards them they charged away out of sight. "Snips" came right up to him followed by another and he brought them safe back. On the way back he had sought some rest by lying down on his back, but the horses started to kick him and scrape uneasy and hit him once very gently in the head with the hoof but hard enough to wake him up and make him realize that he had better start on his way home again.

Sept. 2nd.-03

A strong gale has been blowing all day. The hawser snapped off several times and in order to keep up to the ice we had to run full speed all the time and even then it was difficult. The ice broke up piece after piece so that we had to work like slaves in order to save what stuff we had unloaded. One cake floated off with seven dogs on it and several others drifted off. In all we lost 14. At 8 o'clock the dinghy floated off on a cake and nothing could be done or at least was done to save either that or the dogs. Most of the stable timber drifted off too. During the day the wind was up to 65 miles per hour. Nothing could be done to save the horses, if they are still alive.

Sept 3rd-03

Dr. Vaughn and Sergeant started out this morning a 3 o'clock in search for the horses. The wind has slackened down somewhat but is still blowing about 20-25 m.p.h. We changed place for the ship last night and moved down in lee of the shore a little East of of the camp and from here the unloading proceeds, but already the hummocky ice forming great obstacles for the sledges; several of them are pretty badly damaged already.

Sergeant came back 7 o'clock tonight with one of the horses.



He had had 3 more but he had to leave them a little ways from the camp not being able to drag them any farther. He was utterly exhausted when he came on board and it was hard to get any information from him. What we could find out was that the horse Dr. Vaughn said fell down in a crevasse, the rider barely escaping by throwing himself off as the horse disappeared. As the poor animal was beyond their power to save they sent him a bullet through the head. They had thereafter directed their steps to Cape Fligely where they located the other horses all together. Sergeant sought some of them and while Vaughn was chaining the others a heavy fog set in and they got separated. Sergeant started home, but Dr. Vaughn has not yet at 12 o'clock turned up. Mr. Fiala and Leroyer went out at 9 o'clock to look for the ponies that Sergeant left behind, but came back not having found them. At 11 o'clock Leroyer and the sailor Mac started out equipped with tent and provisions for two days in search of the Doctor. We are beginning to feel anxious as to his welfare.

Sept 9-03

The last of the equipment and provisions wanted ashore.

Sept 11th- 03

The work is going on ashore on house and tents. A double flooring with tar paper in between is going to make it free from draft. Also the walls are double, one layer of 3/4" boards outside covered with tar paper and another layer inside of some kind of boards alltongued and grooved. The three tents, 50 x 20 feet, which were to serve as shelter for dogs and horses and one for provisions are now made into one immense big airy building, cutting out the two ends of one and one end of each of the other two and sewing them together over a big skeleton frame. The little magnetic observatory on the north side of the camp is nearing its finish. All these buildings and tents make the place look like a village. All our stores together with Abruzzi's big stacks of provisions together with all the dogs and horses and men hustling around makes things look very lively. A strong wind is blowing tonight threatening to break our hawsers and drive us out to sea. It makes the sand like snow flying around in the air so that it is impossible to see even up to the camp, and it is quite dark. The moon is slightly visible.

Sept 12th 03

The work on houses and tents are progressing rapidly. The only signs of animal life since we arrived has been the bear and cub the first day up to this night. A heard of white fish passed by going south, Very few birds and no seals and only one walrus.

Sept 13th- 03

A strong north wind has been blowing all day and kept the ship pounding against the ice edge so that we had to steam out about 200 yards and drop the anchor. The wind is bringing along narrow strips of broken up ice but of the main pack is nothing to be seen yet and if it is sufficiently far off it may be shut off from the coast altogether this season by the young ice which is already forming in the bay.



Leroyer and Tafel are ashore tonight and have been previous night to watch dogs and horses. Tafel celebrated his birthday this evening with cake and wine. The chief is exceedingly happy tonight. It looks a kind of suspicious to see him walk around with a straw in his hand and strong fumes of whiskey around him. It is getting quite dark now at night and especially so tonight when the heavens are covered with very dark skies way up north.

Sept 14th 03

The work on houses and tents progressing. The horses are already installed in the tent. The majority of the dogs will be kept loose only the biggest fighters will be chained up. They will be fed in the tent and they can suit themselves whether they will sleep or not there as the entrance will be left open for them any time. That is the only way to keep them in good health. Very little fighting is done amongst them now and only 3 killed by the others the first dogs we landed there. The sailors are coaling. We moved the (ship) into the ice edge again a little to south of the place we had before. The pack is keeping away yet although the narrow strips of last night are still visible up north. In east no ice to be seen. The new ice is forming quite now as it is getting colder every night. The sun is circling lower for every day and at midnight when it is under horizon it is quite dark.

Sept. 15th-03

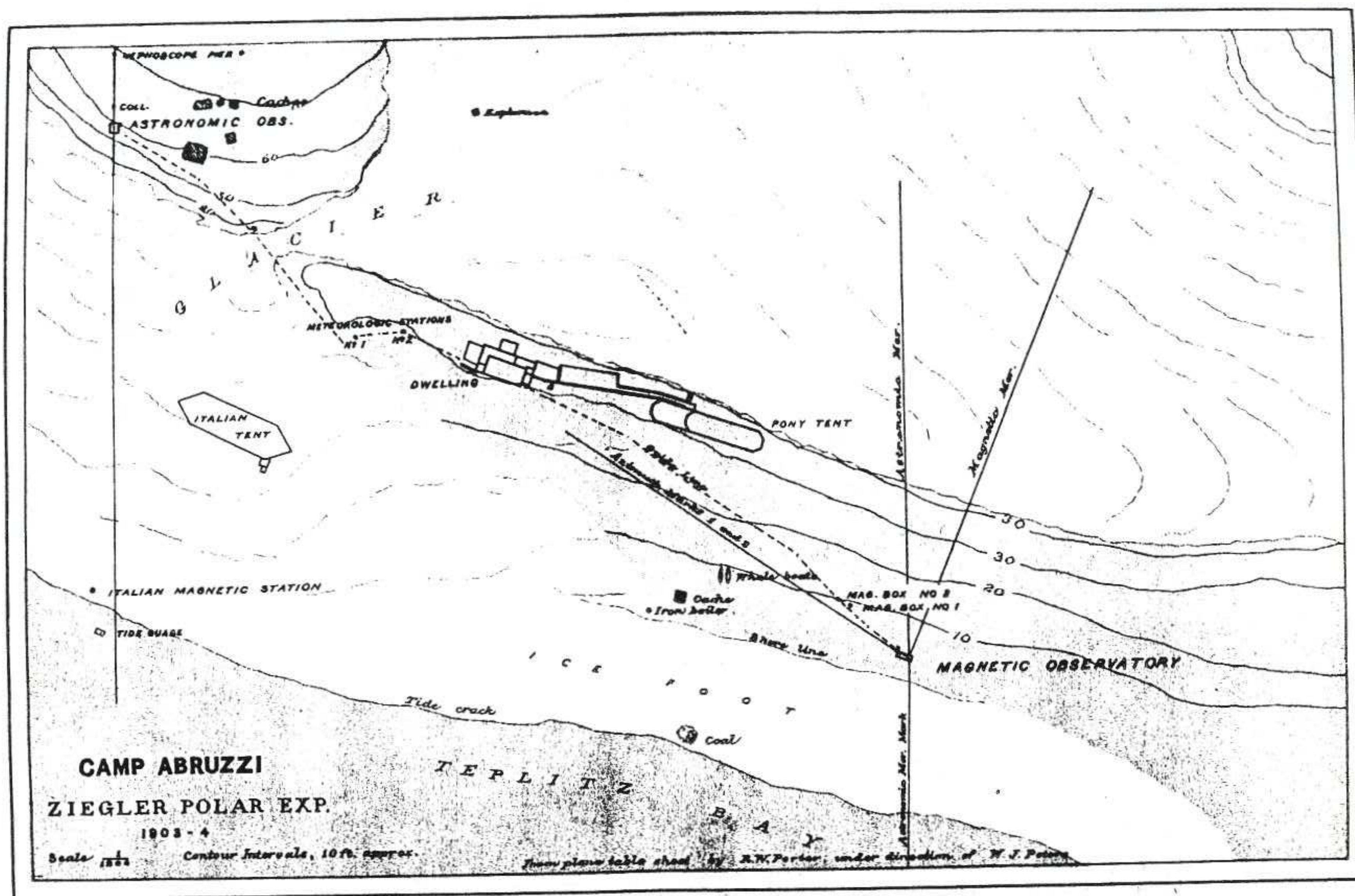
It has been a very nice day. A light east wind blowing. The ice seems to be hesitating whether to come in or not. In north, it seems to be in motion towards south although slow and as yet it is pretty well spread out. In east no ice showing up. It must have been considerable more of open water in that direction. I took a trip up to camp this afternoon and viewed the works going on. The horse tent is a grand sight with all its sturdy ponies side by side in a long row, 27', with a long tin lined trough in front of them to eat hay oats. And now any drinking not allowed. They are all temperance now. I went from there to Cape Saulen where I found a ladle left by Abruzzi which he probably made use of when catching bird's eggs. No birds were there now but bones and feathers were strewn all around.

Sept. 16th-03

The temperature last night was 13 +F the lowest. The ice is closing in slowly on us so that the ship surrounded today. The whole bay is filled up with lightly packed ice. All the generator is taken ashore today. In the engine room we have been busy the last days repairing and putting up stoves ashore making stove pipes and fixing up barrels for melting of ice both ashore and on board. That is one of the main things on these expeditions to have enough fresh water so that the members can keep themselves clean. The inclination is very strong not to wash. If once gotten to be a habit it is almost impossible to get clean again and all kinds of dirt will collect all around and that together with lice as a probability will make life disagreeable in these regions.



FIGURE 1



A. B. GRAHAM CO. LITH. WASH. D.C.



Sept. 16

A northeast wind with snow blowing all day. The pack was driven by the wind off the shore again opening a large space of water.

Sept. 17 1903

The winter is coming slowly. 8°F, the coldest today. The ice, which during the night had come close up to the land foot ice, opened up again this afternoon. At 5 o'clock this afternoon it was still opening slightly causing the young ice to break up and the pieces to shuttle over each other and form ice twice the original thickness. At 12mn. the pack is way out to sea again. The sky is clear and the night is brighter than the preceeding cloudy days. Butland, the fireman, is causing endless trouble. He is very lazy and it is almost impossible to make him do even the lighter work. I have had him four watches in the shaft alley scrubbing, but as yet he has done nothing to speak of and tonight he is playing sick. The doctor can't find no fault with him. In the evening I was out skiing.

Sept. 19-03

The pack is coming closer now. Larger floes are coming in and a couple of tremendous icebergs are hovering a few miles off. Mist and drift snow clearing up at short intervals and a strong north wind blowing has made the work outside anything but agreeable. I went over to the short but steep hill above the camp and made a jump where I intend to take my exercise as often as possible. I made several jumps but my landing below the leap and sliding down the rest of the hill reminded more of a snowplow than a skier's beautiful attitude.

Sept. 20th-03

Two dogs were killed today making the number as 8 killed by the rest. It has been a fair day with sunshine although a pretty strong wind has been blowing all day and after 6 o'clock in the evening it began to snow a little. The sailors have been unloading a great deal of provisions on the ice these last two days. As the ship is pretty well frozen up in the young ice we rushed tonight to blow the boiler down, and we are going to give her a well needed cleaning the following days starting tomorrow. Butland is still sick. The dogs are coming around in fine shape now. The horses have picked up a little, although slow. They are kept to work alternately dragging the provisions from the different stacks to their respective places in the tent. One storehouse which is built on two sides of the house extending out about 10 feet covered with wire netting and tar paper. The mud put in the stable for the horses is thawing up and forming a slush. It keeps the horses wet and is beginning to cause soreness in the joints of the legs. To prevent that the ashes going out of the engine room is transported over there and spread out on top of the mud and it makes a very good floor as it does not mix with water very readily, but lets it through and keep dry on top.



Sept 26th-03

A 45 m. wind with drift has been making my work outside everything but pleasant. I intended to solder all joints on the line drawn over yesterday but I found it nearly impossible and will wait until tomorrow. Maybe the weather will allow the work to be without too much trouble. I have to solder them with a candle in a tin box so that the wind can't blow it out and at the same time I use candle grease instead of acid. This evening I was over to the house in order to measure the voltage and try the incandescent lamps. I found the voltage to be only 60-65 and the lamp would burn but very poorly so it will be of no use to put them up as long as we can't increase the potential.

Sept 27th- 03

The blizzard is still making the work outside unpleasant. On board here everything is so quiet since the scientific staff moved ashore. The only thing that enlivens things a little is the music box, but that will soon be taken ashore so and then we will have nothing but our own lovely voices. At the table we are only six now. Three engineers, captain and two mates. The cook and the mess boy have moved down in the room which the doctors occupied before. Thwing is doing fairly well alone as cook. The cooking is a little different from what it was when the steward had charge of it. Mr. Spencer is very happy since he came away from the ship. The ice pack is keeping off shore and the shore fast ice; at least that is to say about a mile and a half from the bottom of the bay. By measuring I found the distance from the shore and out to the ship about 6000 feet and the ice frozen on the outside of the ship I will judge to about 2000 feet. The open water seems to be about two miles today and stretching from Cape Saulen to Cape Auk with its inner edge.

Sept 28th-03

Almost calm today and about 20 + F. I have been working all day on the lighting for the house. Soldered the joints and raised the wire up on poles so as to keep them out of the water flooding over through the tidal crack now and then. In the house they are working on fixing their rooms in the best possible way with the shelves and tables and seats each one to suit himself. Mr. Peters is setting up his instruments in the magnetic observatory and has a great trouble keeping the place free from iron. There is not a single nail or iron object in the whole house. It is wholly put together with brass screws and copper nails and tacks and has been quite a difficult job. Even the dog collars may have to be taken off as the iron buckles cause the magnetic needle to vibrate when they happen to run around there. Mr. Porter is setting the great circle in astronomical observatory where he is to take the astronomical observations.



Sept. 29th-03

I finished the work on the line for the house this afternoon having been a nice day about 20°F and just a slight breeze from north and strong enough to make the slight cold noticeable. The sailors on board have finished the housing in the ship. It is covered over with canvas from stern to the main mast and it makes it so hot, especially in the enging room, that it hardly possible to sleep there. In order to give a little ventilation we had to cut out a flap on either side of the skylight and let the wind play right through. Forward it is all closed in under the forecastle head taking in the hatchway to the forecastle.

Sept 30th-03

As the light<sup>A</sup> shore does not burn satisfactory, I have today been working on setting up the old dynamo from the last expedition and will try to run it in series with the other one, or else run it up to 150 volts potential and utilize it only for the light in the house as I found out that I lose nearly fifty volts on the way over there. In the afternoon I was called ashore to solder some patches on a tank for ice melting purposes for the dogs and horse tent. While over there the light breeze freshened to about 40 miles an hour with drift snow which makes it impossible to discern the ship from the house and while going back after having eaten my supper the lighthouses served very well as a lead line through the sleet and drift. Rilliet is getting together the sledge stock to take it onboard as they have decided on putting the sledges together on board.

Oct 1st-03

I went over to the house this morning to finish up the job on the water tank. By 11 o'clock we had it all ready, Dr. Vaughn helping. I wonder what Abruzzi would say if he could see us how we handle his nice gas generator. The dome on the purifying tank is taken down, a hole cut in the side, and two grates put inside and furnished with a smoke stack. It makes an excellent stove. The upper part of the tank is cut down and all the rivet holes in the bottom are plugged up and several big patches are riveted and soldered onto the sides. It will be a large pot on top of the stove for melting ice in the dog tent and if it works the way it is expected to work it will furnish all the animals with water which is far better than snow, especially for the horses. The wind has been blowing in strong gusts from east all day. The ice pack is driven almost out of sight leaving a large expanse of dark open water with black heavy skies hanging over it through which the sun sends its rays now and then enlightening the snowy landscape. Temperature about 15°F.

Oct 2nd-03

Temperature today has been 22°F, hardly any breeze, fairly clear weather. I have worked on the old dynamo and have it running generating current up to 150 volts potential. I connected up for the arc light in the house and no doubt it will give good light, but the question now is that the increased load on the engine takes more steam and more coal. That is a disadvantage



that can not be helped and in case we can not afford to burn more coal daily than we done up to this date the idea of having better light ashore will have to be given up. They are burning three stoves all day ashore- two for the kitchen and one for heating up the big room and at the same time it serves the purpose of melting ice for the dogs and horses. All the coal used ashore is taken from that Abruzzi left on the ice and in his book he says that he thinks nobody will ever find it again because he thinks it will sink, but it has not sunk yet, and the ice so far in is not liable to break for many years. The ice in bay has not been broken within a mile of the shore right outside of the house. On the north and south side of the bay it is broken open up to the glacier east of Cape Saulen and about a mile and a half north of Cape Auk. The pack today is remaining out of sight and although a light north wind has been blowing this evening there is no sign of it at 12 o'clock tonight.

Oct. 3rd-03

Temperature 12°F early this morning. At 11 o'clock tonight it is 11°F. A light S.E. wind. Tonight the aurora was seen in light green ribbon in the southern heavens for about 10 minutes. They were waving slightly changing shape and color. The night is quite dark and feels a kind of raw chilly, although it is not very cold. Everything is silent around the ship. The pack still keeping away leaving the same wide belt of open water hardly visible through the darkness of the night. The stars are shining overhead and now and then the sound of a barking dog comes from the camp indicating those always growling animals can't be at rest even in the midst of night when everything else is at rest in the darkness.

Oct. 4th-03

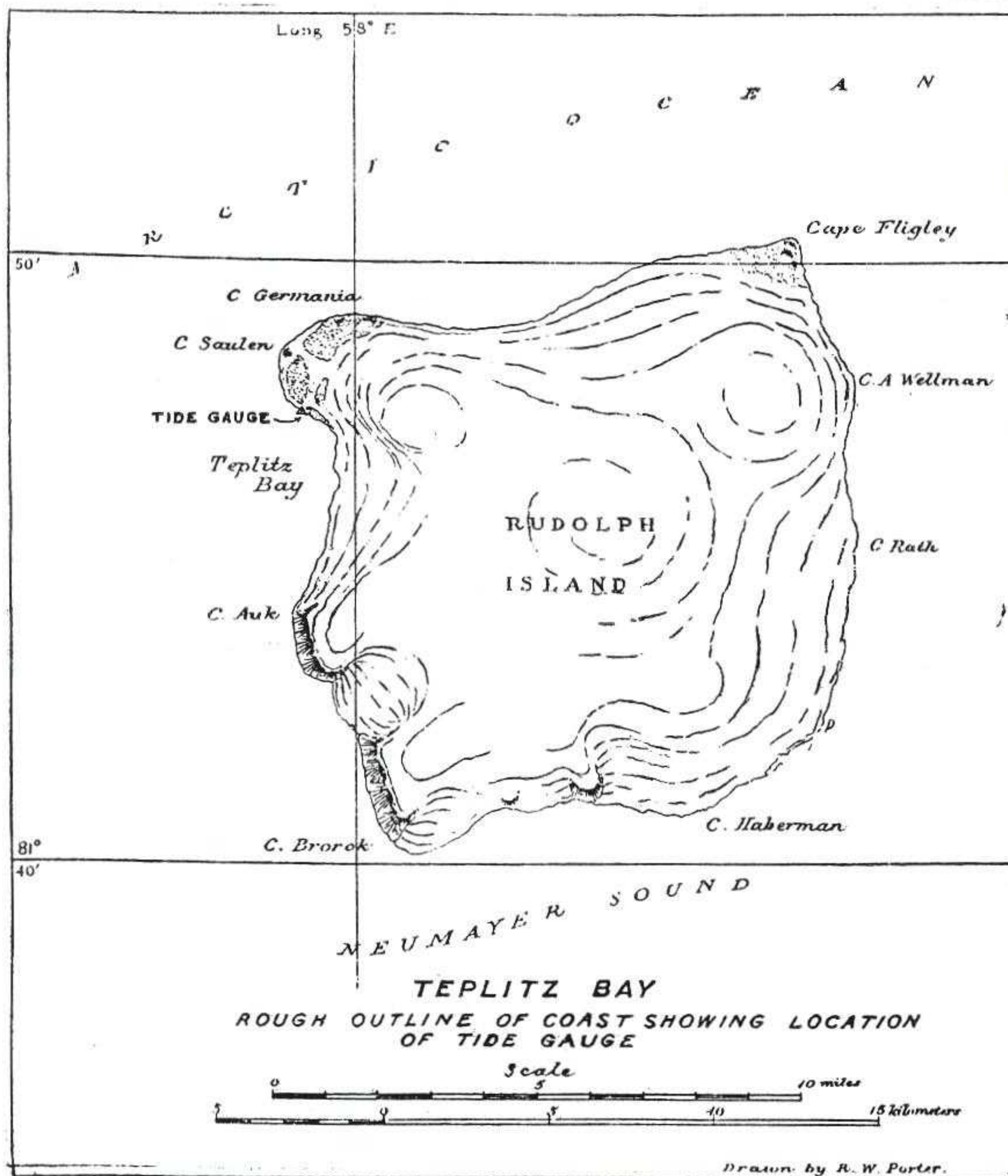
I started out this morning on skis for Cape Auk about 9:30 accompanied with about a dozen dogs. I crossed the glacier where they left me and turned back to the ship except Sally, a yellow bitch. I followed close to the mountain ridge on top of the glacier and as it became steeper nearing the Cape I had to take the skis off and walk carefully down towards the place where our cache was. The snow was nearly all swept off the glacier and made the descent quite difficult. As I came down to the rocky shoreline, I passed some old bear tracks. Next minute the dog set off like an arrow and soon after I heard it bark in among the big hummocks. I guessed there must be bears and left my skis at the cache which have fresh signs of a quite recent visit by bears; opened bread boxes were strewn all around. I hurried up among the hummocks in the direction from where I heard the dog and now and then as I came nearer the place, I could make out the snarl of a mad bear. I got my gun ready and crawled on hands and feet up on one of the biggest peaks and from there I saw three bears and the dog jumping all around them causing them to turn like a merry go round. They were two medium size cubs and one full grown bear apparently the mother. Now and then one of them made a wild rush for the dog which kept on barking and bothering them. I crawled down and got a little closer up on another peak from where I fired at the big one, but missed. Now the she bear caught sight of me and seemed quite annoyed. As I fired again I wounded her slightly. She gave a grunt and all three started down to a level place on the ice where she commenced to lick the wound. The small cubs crept close up to her. The poor things seemed to know that something had happened to their mother and as the dog would not leave them alone one of them chased it away now



and again always turning back to the mother. Well, I had only two cartridges left and must to any price kill the big bear or otherwise I would have to make a rather unsafe return journey. From where I was it was too far to make sure of getting a good shot, so I crept a little closer and fired, but instead of hitting the big bear I wounded one of the cubs. One cartridge left and three bears within 20 steps, two wounded, a rather serious position. Well, I did not think much of that! I put the last cartridge in the barrel, took good aim at the big one's heart and fired. She made a turn and dropped dead with the blood streaming out of the mouth. The poor cubs did not have time to find out what happened to their mother. They had all they could do now to free themselves from the furious dog which seemed to be wild when she saw the bear fall. The cubs were big enough to put up a good fight with any man, so rather than to rush anything I started back to the ship, leaving the dog fighting the two cubs. I knew they would hardly leave their mother until they were forced to do so. I hurried up and got help and more cartridges so we might be able to kill the cubs. So from the Cape to the ship is about 5 miles quite heavy walking in some places, especially up the inside of the glacier where I had to carry the skis. Half past two I arrived there, drank a cup of coffee and ate a slice of bread and started back after a few minutes followed by three of the sailors. When we came to the place where I left the bears, only one of the cubs was alive. The other, against my expectations, lying dead alongside of the dead mother. I was quite surprised to find it dead as I had left the two of them, full of life, fighting the dog. The dogs that followed started a wild dance with the now alone cub and it was very difficult to get a shot at it without hitting a dog. I held the gun ready and at a favorable moment when the dogs had cleared away enough to allow a bullet to pass, I fired, at the head, but missed, and it darted off followed by the dogs which chased it way out on the thin new ice where we could not follow. We walked for a while and had many a hearty laugh at the comical sight. The bear ran at a pretty good pace, now and then stopping to shake the dogs off, making a regular somersault leaving the dogs rolling to all sides. They soon disappeared among the hummocks out the other side about two miles off from where we could hear the dog's furious barking. In the meantime Butland arrived and told that he had met John who had been down at Cape Brorok, and on his way along the shore had been made aware of the presence of bears by his dogs. He found them and put two bullets in the "sleeping" she bear and killed one of the cubs. Even his ammunition gave out so that he had to go back leaving the one cub which we found watching her dead sister and mother. Butland and I started to skin the two bears while the three sailors kept watching the bear and the dogs who were coming back toward us again. After a while there was a horrible chase after the poor bear among the hummocks and out on the new ice where the dogs managed to chase it down in the water quite close to us, but we would not shoot it out there for fear that we would not be able to bring it in the old ice if we killed it in the water. I gave my gun to Mac., and Butland and I kept on skinning the bears. After a while I looked up. I saw the bear and two dogs within 50 feet and were on top of a nearby hummock. When he saw us, he ran down on the other side and we started off with our knives in hand to cut it off. We caught it on the



FIGURE 5





the other side where it had crept up under a block and like a cat was rubbing its back against the ice. We did not have any gun and none of the other men was in sight. We went up within 20 ft. of the poor thing and Butland uttered his intention of going up close and kill it, but I warned him. Next minute it was off again and the chase continued for about an hour up and down with many tumbles for men and dogs and bear, but finally it got out on the ice and the dogs followed it for a while and left the poor motherless thing running out of sight. We were all tired and when we had finished skinning we dragged them over and hid them in the cache putting a lot of bread boxes and pemmican tins on top of them. As none of us thought himself able to haul the load across the glacier and as the dogs too were all played out by the wild chase we left them to be brought home to the camp later on. It was 7 o'clock when we came back to the ship all tired and hungry. Instead of following the glacier edge all around the bay we jumped down in a good place and went across the new ice thereby shortening the way by a mile.

Oct 5th-03

The temperature today is 0° F. I am very sore after the unusual exercise from yesterday. In the afternoon I put up two electric lamps on deck under the tent. The whole camp was out on horseback this evening and offered a curious sight in the many funny attitudes possessed by the men. As they passed the ship Rilliet had to step off declaring his horse being too short to ride on. Some of the longlegs could easily have let the horses walk off from under them if they only had stretched out their legs a little bit and the little steward was all out of sight until the show turned and started back to the house.

Oct 6th-03.

It is getting colder and darker every day. The thermometer showed 4° F. last night. The men ashore continued their exercise on horseback today. In the engine room we commenced to repair and look over the ports and joints of the engine.

Oct 7th-03

Today I went over to Cape Auk again in order to bring the bear skins back and seven of the sailors followed with lines and man harnesses so as to be able to pull the load back. We left at 2 pm and crossed the ice in the bay and I intended, if possible, to round the glacier point at the Cape instead of crossing the glacier. It would save time and work, but as soon as we entered the young ice we had to cross some quite wide cracks showing that the ice was in motion and although I had no fear as to the strength of the ice itself I could in the distance detect several of those cracks and found it best to go up on the glacier instead of risking to get a cold bath. Butland and Meyer followed me.



The rest kept on making for the point. I got across safe but from glacier we could see how the sailors had to go in all directions to avoid the cracks and before they reached the Cape all of them were more or less wet and one of them had been down in the water to his neck. They were all cold and started back across the glacier right away. Butland and I chased up the bear cub and after two hours severe chase I caught up with him and killed him about two miles out on the ice. We dragged him into the cache skinned him and cached the skins again. When we arrived he was lying right up in the cache on top of the two skins from which he had drawn the boxes. He had not less than 8 bullets in his poor heart awful tough. It was 7 o'clock when Butland and I came back on board.

Oct 8th-03

John and I got the permit of Mr. Fiala to go over to Cape Auk today. This time we took a dog team and sledge. Five harnesses were got ready and 9 o'clock in the morning we started with five of the best dogs. I chose Butland to be with us as he is the only one of the crew that knows anything about dog driving. While I went over to the house to get things ready he started ahead across the ice and had already entered the glacier at the usual point by the time we were ready to start. The weather was excellent and the dogs pulled good. One of us was leading while the other sat on the sledge urging on the dogs. Instead of going out on the ice I decided to follow the bay all round on the glacier because it would have caused us a great deal of trouble to lift sledge, dogs up on the glacier as there was no place where it would be possible to run it direct from the ice on to the glacier without lifting as the face at no point was less than 8 feet high. Everything went well until we had gone about a mile and a half. I was running ahead of the team when all of a sudden the snow gave way under my feet. In the same instant I threw myself backward and escaped by a hair falling down into a 40-50 feet deep crevasse. As soon as John saw me fall he stopped the dogs and we followed the crack which was snowed up all over so that it was hardly detectable. About 100 feet from where we stopped we found a hole from which now and then came weak sound as of a shrieking dog. We drew the sledge to the edge and by creeping out on the ice we were able to see

down the crack and about 30 feet down we could make out 3 dogs who had fallen down and been imprisoned how long is hard to tell (There is a space in the narrative here. The diary continues:) and I could very well imagine what a strenuous work it must have been for Capt. Cagni and his men three years ago to haul sledges up the steep incline and over the slanting glacier tired and worn out as they were after their long journey and story.

Oct 13th-03

The ice moved out last night leaving a narrow strip of open water about 2 miles from ship reaching north and south.



It cracked all round the ship and parted from the shore ice not so that it will be any harm. In the afternoon I was over to the camp on skis and did a little skiing on the hill above. The snow is excellent. Temperature about freezing .

Oct. 14th-03 Wednesday

In the camp they are getting ready for a sledge trip to Cape Fligely. Dr. Vaughn was on board the ship with a dog team today. He is making trials with harnesses and traces. The men ashore are taking their daily rides on horseback over here every afternoon. In the engine room we are still working on the engine. The dynamo is running from 7 in the morning until 11 at night. We have breakfast 8 and supper 6.

Oct. 15th-03 Thursday

In the engine room we are working on fitting in new H.P. cross-head brasses. The dynamo is running all day from 7 in the morning until 11 at night supplying light all over the ship and for the arc lights ashore. It is running smoothly and causes no trouble. The engine has to be looked over now and then but has yet run to our perfect satisfaction. Mr. Fiala, Leroyer, Dr. Vaughn left at noon today with two dog teams of seven dogs each and provisions for five days for Cape Fligely and probably a trip round the island and they seem to count on being able to do some hunting for the weather is fine, but the going is pretty hard in the deep snow of the last days. The sailors are fetching ice from the iceberg and keeping the stern hole free from ice and the rest of day, they are helping on the sledge work in between decks.

Oct 16th-03 Friday

Mr. Peters is rigging up his tide gage in the hole along the ship's side kept open by the overflow water from our condenser which is running all day. I have stripped the low prs. eccentrics today and brought them and the draglinks (or liners?) up. The sledge party is still out. The men ashore do not seem to care much about exercising the horses when the leader is away. At least the parade has not passed the ship this afternoon. The weather is damp and raw but not very cold. \_\_\_\_\_ has been away for about a week, probably at Cape Auk. He showed up yesterday and looked very poor and sick. A week ago he was round a bit just as at \_\_\_\_\_ and I bet \_\_\_\_\_ would have given his supper if he had seen him in his present state of health.

Oct 17th-03 Saturday

A strong east wind has been blowing all day with a velocity of up to 38 miles an hour with drifts which made it very unpleasant outdoors. The sledge party must have regular "sleeping bag time" out of it as it is impossible to travel in this kind of weather.

Oct 18th-03 Sunday

No sign of the sledge party yet. I was over to the house this morning to look over the arc light which refused to work.



I made a help magnet for it and introduced it in the upper end of the magnet spools and it had a great effect on it by lengthening the arc and preventing short circuit of the carbon which has happened now and then when it has been burning for a great while.

Oct. 22cnd-03

At 7 o'clock tonight the before light breeze freshened up to a gale blowing violently from the east at the rate of about 70m.an h. I sat down in my room and was just going to light a cigar when the ship gave a jerk and heeled over to port. In a minute I was on deck and in the roaring storm. I could make out that a crack about 2 ft. wide had opened between the ship's side and the gangway, and as I went over to the other side I saw the ice move away from the ship's side rapidly opening up to about 50 ft. in a few instants. We had three lines out forward and one aft. The engine was gotten ready in a hurry in case the lines should break. At 9 o'clock we were all ready in the engine room. I expected the light line for the house to break any minute and at 10 o'clock it happened. Shortly after the lines forward gave away. We swung out in the dark. The stern line yet holding and by going astern with the engine we were able to take the most strain off it and kept there for awhile when all of a sudden the engine refused to work and then we were left to the wind. The line parted immediately and we drifted off helplessly into the dark waiting any minute to hear the ship crash against the ice. To make the situation still worse the Captain filled right up, and the first mate seemed to have had his part too. Well, we worked like slaves trying to make the engine, but when one of the ropes had tangled up in the wheel and got twisted so tightly round the blades and shaft that it was impossible. The second mate kept his head and had got the anchor ready and dropped it with 85 fathoms of chain. It was a horrible situation. Every one was discouraged seeing their commander in such a state not knowing what to do. We had all been working hard and it was 1 o'clock before we dropped the anchor. It held and no ice seemed to have come this way so we were out of danger for the moment. By lowering down a electric lamp in the propeller well we could detect the rope and the propeller, but nothing could be done to clear it; at least nothing was done. Well, everybody was tired and weary, but none could sleep.

Oct. 23-03

The wind commenced to blow all night. Nobody but the Capt. and the first mate slept. After breakfast in the morning we got tools ready to cut the line round the propeller. One man was lowered down on a rope and with an axe attached to a long pole kept chopping and cutting on the rope. A very tough work, the waves splashing up in the well drenching them who taking turn at it. Still stuck to it, knowing their lives depended on getting where it started



while we had steam in the engine room. Worked the engine back and forth. By 1 o'clock we were at last able to turn it half a turn and 1:15 we put full steam on and to our great joy the engine moved round and after a few moments run the wheel was all clear. All tired and played out went to dinner and had just finished when the sec. Mate sang out that we were drifting, the anchor having lost its hold. It was still dark as night and we were not able to see anything but the wild tossing waves at the ship's side. The engine was started up and keeping full speed we were able to hold our own against the wind, our drift being reduced to nothing. We steamed all of afternoon. At 7:25 the wind calmed down all of a sudden, and at eight we stopped the engine. The anchor was heaved up and dropped again with 70 fathoms of chain out. I have not slept any since the night of the 21 M. and am utterly tired. My limbs are aching for most of rest. Hudgins has been sleeping all afternoon and he goes on watch at 12 m. night and I will then be able to get 6 hours sleep until 6 in the morning when I go on watch again. About 11 o'clock I went on deck and as I looked out in the night a sharp flash struck my eye for a few seconds. I watched a few minutes but everything was still. I thought I might have been mistaken, but anyway I told the chief and he immediately went after two signal lights which we burned in case it should have been a signal from the shore. Although none of us thought that we are close enough to see any signals in the dark and as I saw it in southerly direction it must have been a mistake. We all supposed that we were south west of the island.

Oct 24th-03

At 6 o'clock this morning when I turned out we were still in the same position only waiting for the light so that we could find out where we were. During the night we had to encounter several \_\_\_\_\_ of ice but by working the engine we were able to break them up and saved the ship from being dragged along with them. At 10 o'clock it cleared up and we were able to see the faint outlines of a glacier and two black masses of mountains straight south of us. By 11 o'clock it turned out to our great surprise to be Cape Saulen and Cape Germania and we were not far away from either. Against our supposed southerly drift we had drifted north. As the anchor was impossible to heave up we cut the chain and steamed down to the camp and at 12 o'clock we were up against the ice, our provisions and boats still there. Mr. Fiala came onboard and he said he was glad to see us back. He had not known that we were off until last night when he and Mr. Peters went out and instead of finding the ship they found a hole where the ship should have been. They had immediately fired off rockets and signals and they were very glad when they had seen ours. So I was not mistaken when I thought I had seen flashes south last night.



Oct 25th-03

Got engine ready and started up slow 9 o'clock this morning. The wind has shifted to north and is blowing at the rate of 5 m./h. Young ice to the thickness of 3 in. has formed during last night and is now breaking and doubling up and pressing on the ship's side causing it to heel over so that we can't keep anything straight. The main pack is visible on the other side. The open streak about a mile and a half aft. By working the engine we were able to clear out the new ice between the old flow and the ship's side so that we could tie up both stern and bow securely along the fast ice with an anchor at either end together with lines and wires. Mr. F. was on board tonight and I understand that he is going to move on board again. Rilliet was down in our room and we had a jolly good time. I playing accordion and Hudgins and he were singing and laughing until we got tired and went to bed. A happy time under circumstances.

Oct. 26th-03

The sailors have been working all day on making the ship fast to the ice. With all its lines running out in all directions it suggests a telegraph station. Mr. H. suggested to me Sunday to think over some electrical display for Christmas. A howling storm has been blowing all afternoon and it is still blowing in night. Extra watch is set on deck and the engine is ready any minute.

Oct. 28-03

I have connected up the line for the house today. It was broken in several places and down back of the poles on shore. I had it all connected and running this afternoon. While ashore I partook in the daily exercise on horse back and made the run out to the ship and back again for the first time in the horses. In trying to break up a dog fight, Sergeant fell without injury to to either himself or horse. Each man in the house is occupied making either dog or horse harnesses. They all feel very bitterly towards the captain and mate for their acting in the storm. It has been nearly calm all day but a little colder than usual.

Oct 29th-03

It is remarkable how high the temperature is. It does not feel at all like winter some of the days although everything is dark and gloomy day through and a pretty stiff breeze generally is blowing from either east or south. The electric lights is running from 7:20 a.m. to 10:30 p.m. both ashore and on board. We keep 50-55 lbs. on the boiler.

Oct 30th-03

Blowing quite hard all day bringing in the pack ice. A little pressure is noticed tonight. Been turning out about 60 toggles for harnesses. The sailors got through coaling this afternoon. During days when coaling goes on every thing is dirty from the dust that flies all over the ship and into everything.  
(End of 5th book)



Nov 1st-03

The temperature dropped down to  $-22^{\circ}$  F. last night and all day it has kept around  $17-18^{\circ}$  with a light northerly breeze. The ice moved out about 50 ft. last night leaving the open space to freeze forming a long strip of excellent skating if skates had been at hand, but to the worse there is not a pair on board. I was over to the house this afternoon and they all seem happy enjoying the Sunday with card playing (and) work on the harnesses. The house is pretty well snowed under now. My harnesses were sent on board this morning.

It has been rather cold today. This morning it was  $22^{\circ}$ -F and it kept there all day and a light north east wind. The ice moved a little squeaking along the ship's side, but as it is only young ice it will not do any harm. Instead it forms a kind of cushion taking away the pressure exerted by the heavier pack outside. I have been working on my dog harnesses most of the day.

Nov 3rd-03

Last night the temperature went down to  $28^{\circ}$ -F. and today it has been about  $20-22^{\circ}$  -F. and a light north wind. I took a trip over to the house this afternoon. It (is) quite dark at noon so it is pretty hard to find the way over there especially if it is a little cloudy as the case was today. It would be a good thing to have a lamp about midways to the house. Mr. Fiala called me up this evening and said he had heard that I had behaved very well during the storm and would like to congratulate me and said that he would not forget it and that he was glad to find me so interested in the expedition. He said a few words about the coming sledge journey and that he would see that I would get sufficient outdoor exercise so as to be prepared for the coming hardship. He is going to take 24 men in the field. The men with the horses will have two each to take care of and every dog team will be composed of 11 dogs. In the house they are about through with the harness work; only a few horse harnesses being left to finish.

Nov 4th-03

Full moon last night. Two bears visited the ship last night about 4 o'clock in the morning. The dogs got scent of them before the night watch were able to get within reach for them and chased them away. One of them got away out on the ice but the other ran over towards the house and was shot by the watchmen there Mac and Perry. Hovlick got a gun too and went out and froze his ears so that he has big blisters on them now. The bear was one of the largest shot yet. It is still about  $20^{\circ}$ -F. Tonight the moon is shining beautifully and not the slightest wind and a faint aurora is stretching from horizon to horizon east and west through zenith. It forms three different lines running parallel to each other very much resembling colored ribbons shook by a strong wind. I have made a pricker and been working on my harnesses all day.



Nov 5th-03

Working on my dog harnesses most of the day and turning out toggles for my own and another set of harnesses. The moon is shining beautifully tonight and no wind. Temperature is 17°-F. One more magnetometer is to be put up ashore. Mr. Peters has some doubts as to the locality of the observatory. Last Sunday we had a violent magnetic storm and at the same time a brilliant aurora lit up the heavens. The weaker auroras he thinks have no influence on the magnetic needle.

Nov 6th-03

The moon seems to have brought nice weather with it. There is almost calm and the temperature is very steady. It is lighter during night than daytime with the moon unclouded but there seems to be open water in the neighborhood. A quite thick fog has been lingering round here all day.

Nov 7th-03 Saturday

The temperature today is 18°-F. A heavy mist is hanging around the ship and over the ice on account of the open water. I was ashore to look after the arc light which has been burning less satisfactorily of late. The lamps out on the ice ARE on the same line I am afraid have something to do with it on account of the dampness probably causing partly short circuit. Everybody over there seems happy. Dr. Vaughn and Sergeant swearing and cursing each other as usual. Dr. Vaughn and Pierre are making new light dog collars for the trail as the old ones now in use are too big and in the way for the harness.

Nov 8th -1903, Sunday

Mr. Fiala is sketching a lot of comical pictures from last and this expedition's happenings. The moon is clear and a ring is visible around it. It has been perfectly dark for a week now and it is not advisable to take any long strolls any more. The daily exercise has to be limited to a walk over to the camp.

Nov 9th-03

Last night the temperature dropped down to 42° below F. The weather is calm and the cold is not felt very much. There has been a terrible noise in the ice around the ship but no visible movement. The noise probably caused by the severe cold expanding the ice and contracting the bolts in the ship causing them to crack loudly. The dogs are more than unusually quiet. They seem to lose all life in the cold. Instead they curl up to a ball and show their nose only when they are disturbed. I was over to the camp for some straps and lashings for the dog harnesses which I have finished this afternoon. Some of the men from the house were here tonight. Mr. Peters generally walks over here every night to play Mr. Hartt a game of chess. During the day the temp. has been around 40°- F. We expect to have an increase on the dog family. Lipka is pretty sick in the coal bunker in the small gallery where I made her a bed of some old flags and straw.



Nov 10th-03

The temperature today is about 45°-F. steady. Lipka had 7 puppies last night. All alive and hungry. I have been working on the magnetometer for Mr. Peters all day. Sigurd our Norwegian fireman is sick. Perry, one of the sailors, having his place. We shut the dynamo down at 9 o'clock after Thurs. in order to save fuel

Nov 11th-03

The cold spell is continuing. Last night it 46°-F. I have been working on the magnetometer for Mr. Peters in the forenoon. The afternoon I have spent reading Robinson Crusoe. Hudgins and I have every other afternoon off alternately and then we take turns looking after the eng. and dynamo which we shut down.

Nov 12th-03

Was called 4 o'clock this morning finding the bed shivering. I laid and wondered what it could be thinking it being the little engine running away from controls but I was soon taken out of those illusions by a loud cracking and hammering on the ship's side and in an instant was well aware of what was going on. I jumped up, got some clothes on, found everybody awake, some packing their clothes and making ready to leave. Going on deck everything was in a wild motion under a deafening noise, the ship shaking from fore to aft like a young tree in a storm. The ice could be seen by the pale light from the moon tossing around, crumbling up, raising on end, and falling down doubling and redoubling while; a good S.S.W. breeze was blowing The engine was put together in an instant and in a few minutes the steam was high enough to run the light engine giving light all over the ship and testing the shore circuit we found that it was not broken. About 25 minutes past 4 the noise grew still and a light fog setting in instantly out of the new ice at a hundred yards distance. 5:20 it started anew and then all the sailors walked over the gangway with clothes bags on shoulder. It kept on for about twenty minutes and then ceased only to continue about 7 o'clock. Then for about 15 minutes everything was in the wildest tumult. All sledges were taken on the ice. The noise in the poor ship was something horrid and we fear the worst. As yet no sign of leakage is visible. She took the worst pressure amidship and astern and rose about three feet on the port side not so much on the starboard. We made signals for men ashore by flashing the lights and are waiting to see them over here. 8:20 the men with horses arrived here and now everything of value goes down on the ice and loaded on the sledges. The water in the fire room came up over the plates and the bilge pump was started. To our great relief it was easy pumped out and no big leaks as yet. In the meantime the ice is raging with fury and it can distinctly been seen where the side is bulged in on the starboard side. I have one of my bags of clothes on the ice and another ready to be taken out any time.



The ship has risen still more so the gangway is almost straight up and down. The noise ceased shortly after and by 10 o'clock the wind calmed down and the moon came out and spread a welcomed light in in this chaos of destruction. It was located some cracks in the old fast ice on both sides of the provision cache and the men were immediately called to remove it to a safe place a little ways in on the ice. We can as yet not tell what has been the fate of the rudder and propeller but the chances are that they are destroyed the ice being piled up around the stern to a considerable height. All along the old ice there is a ridge of ice about 15 ft. high and offers a grand sight in the moonlight.

Nov 13th-03

3:30 this morning the wind started to blow from east all the same time increasing in strength. The cook and 6 sailors not willing to risk another drift took their clothes and left the ship for shore at 4 o'clock. About 4:30 it was blowing a living gale with sleet. All the time we feared that the ship should break loose from the shore ice, but it seems as we were pretty well squeezed in here the ice parting about a quarter of a mile outside of us leaving the nearby pressed up ice hanging on to the old fast ice. The ship, nevertheless, took a light starboard list. John, Mr. Peters and Dr. Shorkley came over here about 7:20 managing to take themselves out here by following the electric lines and each of them had a lantern but two went out. About 8 o'clock the wind calmed down a little and I could from deck detect our electric lamps and which we had tinned and having wrapped their lamps with cloth so that no wind would penetrate into them, Mr. Peters, John and Dr. Shorkley left again and arrived safe in camp. Dr. Vaughn Sargent and Mr. Truden came over in the forenoon and stayed for dinner. The wind not blowing so violent now. Jimmy and Bedow are cooking and doing very well. After a lull at noon it freshened up again and blew very hard all afternoon and evening and shifting around to south and SSW it kept on all the time increasing until after midnight and the temperature gradually rising. At 10 o'clock we could feel the ship working loose but she did not change the position she had after the pressure. She is leaking a little more than usual so that we had to pump her out the water commencing to flood the fire room floor, but as she is still under pressure and about 4 feet out of the water it is hard to tell what she will do when she settles down and takes her natural position. The timbers then springing back may leave some cracks for the water to leak through. The men from ashore will have to stay here over night as the wind is blowing worse than ever. 7 more puppies were born today.

Nov 14th-03

The wind has ceased during night and is now, 8 o'clock in the morning, hardly noticeable from the west. The temperature rose during night and is now +25° F. It is thawing under the tent and the deck is leaking down in several places probably being out of place by the pressure. In the afternoon and evening the wind



changed over to N. and N.W. The temperature falling so that from being 25°+ F. 8 o'clock in the morning it fell to 3°-F. at noon and 20°-F 8 o'clock at night. The sailors that went ashore came back this morning and tonight the whole crew and officers were called to meet in the workshop in between decks and Mr. Fiala gave a short speech warning the men to be loyal and stay with the ship. Temperature 33°- at 11:30 pm.

Nov 15th-03

Mean temp. today -18° F. and a sharp wind making it feel the worse. The ice pack has been quiet around the ship but its irritating grinding could distinctly be heard from the distance out in the dark night.

Nov. 16th-03

Was over to the house this morning to look at the arc light which is causing a great deal of trouble on account of the low voltage. Down in the magnetic obs. Tafel was working taking the reading of the magnetometer every 2 mn. for four hours every day and 24 hours in a stretch every Wednesday. John was onboard tonight. He had a drawing of a new odometer which he wants me to work out for him. The wind is west about 12 mph.

Nov 17th-03 Tuesd.

The dogs are getting sorted in teams now and as soon as they are pretty evenly divided so that they will be of about equal strength as near as possible they will be handed over to the men to take care of them and give them proper training. That I think is a very good way. Let every man that is to drive a dog team get used to the animals and the animals used to him. They are very affectionate dogs and a little good treatment will make them work double willingly and keep their spirits up. It is a very wrong thing to mistreat a working dog. As soon as he is licked, he will lose all interest for you and his work and he will behave so frightened for you that instead of paying attention to things in front of him he will now and then keep turning his head looking after you and stop pulling which is the cause (of) so much aggravating work on your side. I will probably take my dogs over to the ship so that I can attend to them myself and see that they get in good trim. The sledge work has been hindered for a while after the tumultuous days of the pressure and when all the sledge material and everything was thrown out on the ice. Things will be in order again so as to start tomorrow. The lamp ashore has been causing a lot of trouble of late so I went over to the house and brought it on board and have been working on it all day. Will try it again tomorrow. The temperature tonight is 23°-F. A bright aurora and calm. John was on board tonight and as just a while after he left I went up on deck and I could by the swinging of his lantern perceive that he was running afraid of bears I thought. Well, it is not very pleasant to walk alone in the dark night over the one mile long way where every piece of ice turning up in front of you takes the shape of a bear.



Oct. 18th-03

I was over to the house and put the arc light up and at the same time I had my dogs picked out and with a team of 5 I rode over to the ship where I got them chained up to look after them myself I brought over a box of dog cakes too, so that I can feed them. The temperature has been steady about -30°F. and hardly any wind. What little wind blowing tonight comes from S.E. The furs were given out today ashore. I will get mine tomorrow.

Nov. 19-03

This afternoon I was out training my dogs. Went over to the house and got my fur skins for my fur clothes and then drove back again full speed. It is an unequal exercise both for me and dogs and I take great pleasure in it. While I walked in the house one of them made their escape by biting the traces in front of himself and slipping his own collar. This will be avoided by putting such dogs in places where they would not be able to chew the traces.

Nov. 20th-03

A strong wind came up just after dinner today and has been blowing all afternoon. The direction is S.E. Charley (Hudgins) went ashore this morning but the wind keeps him over there so I will probably have one night undisturbed sleep. The temperature is about 11°F.

November 21st-03 Day of S.Y. AMERICA's Shipwreck

At 5:30 I was called by Hovelick telling me that the ice had begun pressing outside and was closing up on the ship. I got out and went up on deck where I could hear a rumbling and roar of the ice on our starboard bow only about a 100 ft. off. Through the darkness I could perceive the glistening of water a little ways out. I went down in the engine room, found the chief awake, and started the electric light agoing. Just then the pressure cracked the ship's side and commenced that horribly enervating grinding noise. Everybody was awake now and walked around whispering and silent with anxious looks on their faces. 15 minutes later the old ship commenced to crack and work up out of its bed. She leaned over to starboard and began to shiver like a leaf. The engine room grating commenced to shake as I stood watching the boiler. I could see it move over to port about a foot, the ventilator just touching the gauge glass. A rumble of ice falling in on deck was heard and of crashing timber. I ran below to see whether she was gaining any water and found it streaming in through some leak in the shaft alley and filling rapidly under the plates in the fire room. It was evident that she was crushed in somewhere mid-ships. We started the donkey pump, but it did not run long, the whole frame was sprung out of position and the fly wheel soon stuck against the grating. The fire room was now flooded reaching up to the middle fire which was soon put out. Throwing down the grindstone, anvil and ash bucket to stand on I crawled along to the port bunker door, the starboard bunker door being completely submerged on account of the list, and managed to throw a few shovels of coal on the fire so as to keep steam to run the dynamo. It was high time to leave the place. Everything was squeezed out of shape. The feed pipe joints sprung a leak sending two streams of hot water out over the place I had just occupied. In a few minutes the platform was flooded, the water reaching up to the steps of the stairs leading up to the grating. Seeing



that nothing could be done, knowing the ship being lost we solemnly began to pack our clothes and belongings and threw them over the ship side where some of the sailors were engaged carrying it to a safe place in on the ice. The ship had a good starboard list and ice blocks weighing tons were piled up on deck, the whole railing and bulwark on that side being crunched in and torn away. Several signals were fired but not responded to, so at 7 o'clock a man was sent ashore to call for help. All sorts of useful articles were pitched down on the ice. At 8 o'clock some of the men came over from ashore with horses and sledges and began sledging the stuff ashore, and everybody was soon there helping. The pressure had stopped by this time. We sledged everything we could ashore and worked hard all day and in the evening hauling up coal and taking it ashore. It was blowing and drifting bad when we quit work at 11 p.m. Being a long and hard day's work we were all tired. The storehouse was cleared out for the sailors to sleep in and the rest of us slept on the floor, table and benches wherever we found room

Nov. 22cnd-03

I slept very uncomfortable last night on the seat alongside of the table. Every joint and muscle was aching and sore all over from the hard board. It was blowing hard all forenoon and no attempt was made to save anything from the ship until after dinner. We went on board and tore down as much lumber as possible from the cabin. The water has risen about 1 foot more. By further inspection in the hold we found the whole side smashed in, the ice forced through in several places. As soon as we got bags over the crew, started to heave up more coal and by supper time we had a collection of 39 bags out on the ice. All lumber and other stuff was sledged up to the house. After supper Mr. Fiala held service and a treatment of gin was given along with a cigar to each man. Everybody was willing to go out and save more while she is still held by the ice, but the commander told the men to leave it 'til tomorrow as it is Sunday and everybody is in need of rest. Everybody is happy and the little steward is so played up that he is keeping us all awake until after we turned in.

Nov. 24th-03

The wind slackened down during the night so that it was possible this morning to go out to the ship and all the sledges was brought off the ice on shore even most of the lumber and still more from loose on board. It was not very safe on board and now and then, while we were working, someone would shout, "She is sinking, come aft.", and I guess we forgot about all the nice things we had collected and rushed headlong for the ladder. But it was only false alarm. She is settling slowly and this afternoon she was riding on the hawsers which are as tight as violin strings. It is blowing



from south east and in the afternoon it increased in strength and the drift makes it very bad to work outside. At 11 o'clock the anemometer registered 69 m. an hour and we hardly expect to see the ship any more. There was only a strip of about 100 yards outside of her and the high temperature the last days prevents any freezing to amount to anything. Then, as a last sort of honor, an American flag was nailed on to the \_\_\_\_\_ mast. The stove was put in place this afternoon and Mr. Truden and the carpenter with the assistance of some of the sailors are working in putting up bunks and finishing the kitchen in the storehouse. It will all be quite comfortable as we have saved a lot of good lumber. After supper Hudgins and I put up the pipe and had the fire going all working to perfection.

Nov 25th-03

The horrible wind and snow drifts continued all night so that we had to dig our way out this morning. The temperature was +6° this forenoon. During all day it has been more or less windy and and heavy fog so that we could not tell whether the ship was gone or not. The heavy roaring of the sea indicated that there was some open water close to the shore. The work on the galley is completed and the cook and steward has been cooking on the range tonight. We are all in the best state and very little gloom seems to enter into our thoughts though everyone knows that we will have a perhaps hard retreat to make in the spring. Well, we have everything we need and nobody sick and with the help of God we will be able to push through to even two years more up here and down at Cape Flora where we have to await the relief ship next summer if it can manage its way up through the ice. Mr. Fiala and Truden went over to see about the ship tonight and found it still in the same position. As to repairs of her, there is no possible way for it. The ice is broken in to right aft of the mainmast.

Nov 26th-03 Thanksgiving

The storm has continued all day and has at some times blows with a violence of 58 m. an hour. At 2 o'clock in the afternoon it was comparatively clear but the wind still blew about 40 miles. Rilliet and I started over to the ship to bring on land a tarpaulin. We got there in safety and climbed up the side on the ladder and walked around in the remains of the before comfortable America. The ice is all over the starboard side where the ceiling is totally crushed in. Down in the engine room the water has risen to half ways up the staircase. We found an old American flag in the cabin which we took and spread it over the tops of the cylinders as a last act of appreciation of the old engine. It has done a lot of good work and I felt rather sorry to see the engine which I have nursed like a baby and which is the first and, perhaps, the last I have handled. The new electric plant is of no use to us any longer as we have no boiler to drive the engine and no storage batteries and no windmill. By the the time we got up on deck



again the wind had increased and we were not able to see any distance off. We threw a few things down on the ice and climbed down with difficulty. After we had the sledge loaded with the tarpaulin which we found after a little search in the snow the lantern blew out and we could not even see the ship much less the camp or trail, but we knew about how the wind was and all the heaven eventually was pretty clear and setting the course by the two stars, Castor and Pollux, we started off and followed the direction as close as possible. Some times the wind would take the sledge and skiing out in a circle and almost near the time out of our hands at last we after a hard pull we were able to distinguish the light in the house and were soon there and safe. We expect the ship to drift off any time and it seems a miracle it is still holding in the ice. The wind is east and off shore and open water just a few yards on the outside of her. As the accident to the ship has altered conditions quite a little the Thanksgiving could not be observed as first intended. The dinner was not extra elaborate as the kitchen is not in shape yet for any festivities. Mr. Fiala held a service after supper and gave us an outline of the plan for sledge journey or rather sledge journeys as we will have to make one to Cape Flora and one north. The party north will be composed of 22 men, 15 horses and 12 dog teams. 10 men return after 7 days and next detachment after until 18 days elapsed. The last party to consist of from 4-6 men with provisions for 12 days. He warned all men to cleanliness in and around the house to avoid sickness and so that we all would keep in good health for the coming field work. I have been working with Porter on a chronograph for the star observations in the evening. The temperature is tonight is +9°. Nov 27th-03

We have done a little sledging between the ship and the house although the wind has been pretty strong all day. The temperature has been +6° and the wind close to 50 mph. This storm has now been blowing ever since the 23rd and it seems as though it would not cease. Sometimes the drift is pretty bad and at times it is clear. The snow is beaten down very hard and furnishes good traveling, but the wind prevents outside work.

Nov 28-03

A new storehouse is now under construction in the south east corner of the house. The former now being occupied by the sailors. It is sheeted with lumber from the ship and will make a quite comfortable dwelling for 18 men. The new storehouse is to be occupied by the quartermaster's supplies.

Nov 29th-03

The storm has been blowing all day with heavy snow drift. At times it reached a velocity of 70 miles an hour. All passageways are blocked up and it is impossible to keep them clear. The roof over the passageway between the house and stable was stepped through by someone and commenced to fill up with snow rapidly before it was detected and repaired. No work done, everybody at rest. Most sleeping in their bunks. The usual service was held at 8 o'clock at night.



Nov 30th-03

The storm ceased this morning after having blown continually for 9 days or since the 21st, the night of our shipwreck. It reached the highest velocity last night between 8-10 when the anemometer registered 76 m. an hour. This morning it was nearly calm the temperature being  $+9^{\circ}$ . It felt just like the summer. We commenced sledging from the ship of lumber and provisions from the cache on the ice. A heavy mist has been layered around the camp all day and it has been very dark, but as we even a clear day can't do any work outside without the aid of lantern which we have to carry with us whenever we go, it did not bother us any. In the afternoon a light breeze sprang up from north east and the temperature fell right away to  $+2^{\circ}$  and it is more than likely that we now will get a cold spell. The lathe I put up in Mr. Peter's room Saturday and tonight I turned out two blocks for ratchets to be used in securing the Repsold Circle in the astronomical observatory. (end book 6)

Dec 1st-03

We have had a quite good day of weather today. The wind has been west and the noon has been out at times through the clouds. The ice has set in again and a little pressure could be observed. I have been working in the morning on patching my pants which I have been unfortunate to tear in several places and then until supper out in the storehouse and after supper on the chronograph for Mr. Porter.

Dec 2nd-03

This has been a very fine day. The moon has furnished brilliant light all day. It really looked like the sun to our eyes after having had with dreadful dark and storming weather for so long time. Hudgins and I with Hovlick to help us went over to the ship and picked up a variety of stuff mostly tools and iron. All iron and piping together with fittings were brought ashore. It was a pleasure to work in the moonlight, I was down in the hold and had a look at the big gap grinning against me. There always chance to get all the coal we want and a number of necessary things could be taken ashore yet. The ice is thick enough to bear any place inside. On the outside the snow is heaped up forming a wall about 10 feet high and about 20 feet from the ship which makes it look from a distance as if the ship was way down while she really is in about the same position as when we first left her way up in the air. In the moonlight the ice pack is invisible like a white line about a mile off and young ice is found between.

Dec 3rd-03

The temperature this morning was  $-2^{\circ}\text{F}$ . and last night the lowest  $-16^{\circ}$ . A light west wind blew in the forenoon with snowdrift and nobody cared to go on board the America. I have been working all day on fixing up our room. Mr. Nichols, Hudgins, and I are now lodged in the room previously occupied by Mr. Truden and Rilliet. Mr. Truden has built a room for himself and Rilliet in the S.E. corner of the house with a door leading to Mr. Fiala's room. I have been sleeping on a bench ever since the unfortunate day of the



shipwreck and have at times felt very miserable. Our room is very comfortable and big enough. If people ever will come up here they will be surprised to find how well we are provided with everything imaginable. The two storehouses are ready and Rilliet has with some men started to make room for a workshop in the old storehouse which is under good cover (Tar paper and wire netting stretched over a frame of wood work) while the new storehouses are dug out in the snow and covered with tar paper. Temperature tonight is  $+2^{\circ}$ .

Dec 4th-03

Temperature  $-1^{\circ}$  Wind about 12 m. an hour.

48 bags of coal was taken off the ship and sledged up to the house. I have put up a telephone line and phones between the astronomical observatory and the house and brought two loads of coal from the ship after supper. I worked on Porter's chronograph which he now is going to alter so that he will be able to put wider sheets on and take the whole series of stars without changing sheets.

Dec 5th-03

The weather continues to be fine although it has been cloudy all day only now and then letting through the weak rays of the moon enlightening the landscape. The east wind has caused the ice to open up and a long dark streak is now to be seen stretching from Cape Saulen past Cape Auk. We have been busy sledging stuff from off the ice outside the ship and the four whale boats were dug out and hauled up on terra firma. The ponies are doing excellent work and are a great help to us in this kind of work as they are easier handled than the dogs.

Dec 6th-03

The weather all day with moonlight. Mr. Porter is taking his observations and I recorded for him from 12-3 at noon and from 1-3 midnight. The temperature today was the lowest  $-35^{\circ}$  and the highest  $-18^{\circ}$  and hardly any wind.

Dec 7th-03

Another nice day clear and moonlight. The chief, Hudgins, and I and Hovlick went over to the ship and started to take down everything that we can make use of in order to have electric lights in the house. The intention is to build a small water tube boiler and take the dynamo and engine ashore. The ship is marooned. Everything inside bears witness of destruction. All the staterooms are torn down. All available lumber taken ashore. In the engine room the ice is 8 inches thick and about 6 ft. from the floor so that we have to crawl on hands and feet under the grating. We managed today to fish up the anvil which was down in the fireroom under 8 ft. of water and ice. Truden with some men has been working to take the upper cabin ashore which is to provide us with an excellent shop. Tonight I recorded some stars for Porter and turned up a screw for the lathe which had gone astray in the shipwreck. The temperature is  $-26^{\circ}$ . The lowest  $-35^{\circ}$  today. Calm.

Dec 8th-03

We continued our work onboard and succeeded in fishing up the grindstone from down the fireroom. It started to blow from south quite a good breeze about 11 o'clock and as we thought it not safe we left the ship and went ashore 12 o'clock. The wind was south



and the old lead is open again so it is hard to tell what might happen, and we don't like to drift away in a sinking ship. In the afternoon we started to dig out a place for the shop which we are going to build. Dr. Shorkly is now taking another series of examinations. Everybody is in good health and most have gained in weight and a great increase in chest expansion is gained by everybody. The record held by Mr. Porter is  $7\frac{3}{4}$ " - my own is 7".

Dec. 9th-03

A strong gale with snow drift has made all outside work impossible. The wind is south east. The temperature is  $-17^{\circ}$  and feels everything but nice in the strong wind. I have been working on the magnetometer for Mr. Peters.

Dec 10th-03

Was onboard the ship this morning. In the afternoon the wind came up again so that we had to stay in the house. The temperature is  $-14^{\circ}$ . The moon was out in the morning and threw its light on the open water which glittered like silver for the light breeze. It seems as if that place is bound to keep open and will probably cause us some trouble when we start out on the sledge journey. I started to sew my fur clothes tonight.

Dec 11th-03

Work outside impossible today. Storm continues with heavy drift 40-50 m. an hour. I have been working on my fur clothes and on the chronograph. The shop for the sledges is ready and they started to work last night and are going to work night-time as they will be bothered too much day-time. The man in the magnetic observatory has to be dug out every time he is relieved.

Dec 12th-03

The storm continues. Its velocity is generally about 70 m. an hour but for a long while this forenoon it blew at the rate of 84 and one time it was up to 90 miles an hour. I have not been outside until now tonight when it cleared up overhead. The stars are out and the ship is visible. It is a wonder it keeps afloat. Been working on my fur clothes.

Dec 13th-03

The storm continued all night but in the morning slackened up so that we could go outside. All around the house the snow is packed down hard and solid in some places 8 ft. deep. The top wavey and furrowed resembling the waves on sea and offers a very difficult walking. It is all through beaten so hard that it is hardly possible to dig with a shovel. After dinner we went over to the ship and sledged some lumber over to the house. The snow bank on the port side has increased to a height almost level with the ship's ceiling (deck?) still leaving the ice nearest the ship \_\_\_\_\_. The cabins and engine room are full of snow otherwise she is in the same position as before. It is Mr. Porter's birthday and a jolly feast was held after service. A punchbowl and cake being served and a few songs were sung. The hit song sung by Porter himself being, "The man with the elephant on his hand".

Dec 14th-03

Monday- The storm started again last night and has continued all day with about 40-50 miles velocity. It seems as though it would never stop. Everybody is working on furs.  $-16^{\circ}$



Dec. 15th-03

Blowing all night. During the day the wind blew at times 72 m. an hour and kept very steady 60 m. an h. Temp  $-22^{\circ}$ . Working on furs all day.

Dec 16th-03

Temperature  $-21^{\circ}$  and blowing steady all day 50-70 m. an hour. The direction of wind has been mainly east. At 7 o'clock and now the direction is west at 11:30 at the rate of 40 m. an hour. We are all busy on furs.

Dec. 17th-03

The storm continues. The temperature is  $-14^{\circ}$ . It is my 23rd birthday and to honor the day a punchbowl with cake was served after supper and 23 candles were burning on the table. A toast for my health proposed by Mr. Fiala was drunk and when Hovlivk, my fireman, had had enough of the punch he sang us a few songs in Norwegian. Working on my furs and made a pair of creepers for Mr. Peters.

Dec. 18th-03

The storm abated this forenoon and after dinner we managed to go over to the ship. Second Mate and his men filled and hoisted up 25 bags of coal and the engine room shaft. Worked in the engine room and after a lot of hideous work we succeeded in getting the vise off, although it was frozen in the ice which is about 2ft. thick. Recorded the astronomical obs. for Mr. P. this evening. Temp.  $-14^{\circ}$ .

Dec. 19th-03

We were onboard again today. The sailors are bagging coal and about 80 additional bags are ready to be taken ashore. The water rose about 8" yesterday and it is not frozen solid yet so we could not do any work below. Some of the stuff was taken ashore. It blew quite strong at intervals. The temperature is  $-22^{\circ}$ .

Dec. 20th-03 Sund.

The temperature today is  $-24^{\circ}$  and the wind has been quite strong all day. A weak aurora is visible. The roaring of the open water can be heard distinctly from the house. After service, Mr. Fiala gave a little chalk talk. I have been working on my furs most of the day.

Dec. 21st-03

We were onboard the ship today and with some difficulty got the engine, two dynamos, pump, and anvil on deck and brought on shore. It is a month today since the ship got crushed and she has remained untouched during the great storms following and she will probably remain there until the summer.

Dec. 23rd.-03

Been working on the new electric plant turning up flanges and made a safety valve for the boiler. Strong wind all day from the east, always east.

Dec. 24th-03

Christmas eve! I was over with horse and sledge to the ship and brought a load of stuff for the electric plant. Hardly any wind until tonight when the same storm is raging \_\_\_\_\_ east. It has been blowing now for a month with only a day or half a day's stop once in a while. A punch was served after supper. This is not



like being at home. I took a bath and changed clothes and after I changed I sat down and washed what I took off.

Dec. 25th-03

The Eagle press has been very hard at work these last days and nights, and have been working all day today on getting the paper and menu out for the banquet that came off tonight. The paper came out in six pages illustrated and with an illustrated wrapper. The menu was very handsomely gotten up with Mr. Ziegler's picture on the front page. The banquet itself was a great success and seldom has in the Arctic been seen a happier assemblage than at our prettily decorated table full of the most delicious eatables and all kinds of wine. Several essays by different members on different subjects relating to arctic research amongst Mr. Tafel and Mr. Porter attracted much amusement and interest. Poems and songs were delivered by Mr. Shorkley and Rilliet and some verses composed sung by John caused much laugh. Toasts for Mr. Ziegler Champ, Mr. Fiala, the Geographical Society etc were drank. Our commander gave a speech thanking us for the help and for the work we so far accomplished and although we lost the ship \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ had to deal with many difficulties, he still had hopes for the outcome and success of the expedition. It was 2 o'clock when we finally departed, everyone in the best of humor and I can safely say that a more successful Christmas banquet never was seen the Arctic. The temperature was  $-20^{\circ}$ . The day after Pierre Leroyer was poisoned.

(Apparently Anton tried his hand at poetry or he copied down something that was read the previous evening as the following, hardly decipherable, is written;

"Last night as I lay asleeping  
in my bunk so sweet  
when me quite abruptly  
pleasant \_\_\_\_\_.  
I dream I wandered over  
the Arctic areas wide  
and just in pride and glow  
at my old house arrived.)

Dec 26th-03

The effects of last night's banquet are apparent. Everybody slept until noon when a light lunch was served and after that we dozed off again until supper when the gloom that before had lingered in the house changed into hearty laughs and talk over last night's lusty events. Tafel who had talked so vigorously against kleptomania was found smoking one of the mate's cigars. Pierre came out with his \_\_\_\_\_ and tried with all his might to hang it up on the \_\_\_\_\_ wall, but after a succession of futile attempts he had to carry it back into his bunk again. All had more or less been bothered by a horrible headache.

Dec 27th-03

Sunday-another day of rest. The drift has been very heavy all day and the wind velocity about 50 m. an hour. East wind prevailing. The temperature has been in the forenoon  $-12^{\circ}$  and later in the afternoon  $-17^{\circ}$ . Wind and drift continues.



Dec. 28th-03 Monday

The storm has been raging with heavy drift all day at the rate of 70-80 m. an hour. The temp. has been  $-18^{\circ}$ . The pipes for the water barrel turned (or burned) to pieces and caused the water to run out over the floor and to get rid of it we had to drill holes in many places and let drain through.

Dec. 29th-03-Tuesday

The wind calmed down about 7 o'clock this morning and the moon came out bright and clear. The ship is visible in same place. The crew started to dig for the machine shop and Truden will start to build it tomorrow, probably. The new magnetic observatory was put up on the same place where Abruzzi had his.

Dec. 30th-03. Temp  $-17^{\circ}$

A beautiful day after all the storms we have had of late. The moon has been out all day and very little wind, if any. The ice was pressing and making an awful noise out in the old lead this fore and afternoon, but at 12 o'clock tonight it has opened up and drifting out moved by a light east wind. The sails have been cut down from the ship and taken ashore where they will be to cover an alleyway now under construction intended for loading of sledges. The Chief, Hovlick and I have been working down on the gas generator and taken down one of the big tanks belonging to it which now is going to serve as a boiler. The horses are having their daily weathering; that is when the weather allows and they can be seen fooling around and jumping and fighting and stretching as far as they can in their tied up position.

Dec 31st-03

Last day of 1903. It is storming and quite heavy drift. All work outside delayed. The temperature is  $-9^{\circ}$ . I connected up a telephone on the observatory line and called up Long who was terrified and thinking somebody was shut up there dashed out, but he came back. He said there must be a ghost. He was called up now and again and in the course of the evening he was scurrying around in all parts of the house looking for the ghost and finally found the telephone which was concealed in the commissary store-room. At 12 o'clock midnight we all rushed out and made a howling noise and shooting off revolvers and guns and 12 bombs.

(End of book #7)

Jan. 1st-04. 1904

Another holiday. A little feast was held. Porter and I was out with our furs this afternoon and gave them a trial and it fell out very satisfactory. We walked over to Cape Saulen and back and were quite \_\_\_\_\_ and sweat and in order to see how the furs would act we climbed the hill above the house and lay down for half an hour without being the least bothered by the cold.

Jan 2nd-04

Everything was late in the house this morning. Everybody sleeping after the feast last night. I turned out 10 o'clock and recorded some obs. for Mr. Porter. After dinner all hands turned to. The crew working on the place for the sledges and I with the three firemen and the Skipper enlarging the hole dug for the machine shop. The frame structure is ready to be dropped in any time. It has been a fine day, clear and bright. The temperature was---



Jan. 3rd-04 Sunday

The moon came out bright this morning and as the works got to be hurried, we were turned to digging out the place for the packed sledges and building the machine shop. The work was progressing rapidly but soon before dinner the wind started and the loose snow was whirling about so that the work had to be stopped. The temp. is \_\_\_\_\_

Jan. 4th-04 Mon.

Recorded the astronomical observations this morning from 11-2.

Slept all forenoon. Went onboard the ship in the afternoon and tore down lumber for the machine shop which now is under construction. The ice was in motion, pressing forwards the ship, but it is only the young ice forming a belt of about a mile wide and it can do no harm until the old ice comes in contact with the shore ice. The shelter for the packed sledges is ready. The temperature is \_\_\_\_\_ and very little wind.

Jan 10th-04

I slept to 12 this noon. The temp. today was the lowest  $-31^{\circ}$  and mean  $-26^{\circ}$ . Hardly any wind. Been working on my furs and helped the sailors cutting out and fitting theirs. Mr. Porter and I took a walk toward Cape Saulen 12 o'clock last night with all our fur garments on. They are very comfortable, light and warm. The ice is still open. Seal skin boots, overalls, seal skin mittens, and felt boots issued to us.

Jan 11th-03 (04)

It has been pretty cold today. The lowest was  $-51^{\circ}$  and the mean was  $-48$ . Loading of sledges is proceeding. Rilliet is building a kayak in three sections with room for four men. In the shop, we are busy working on the boiler. Quite a stiff breeze was blowing and was felt the more in the severe cold.

Jan 12th-04

Mr. Porter and I took a walk tonight in our furs. I had it the 12th but it is really the 13th, the time being 2 in the morning. The temperature has been about  $-50^{\circ}$  all day and now is read at  $-53^{\circ}$ . The mercury is frozen and it is quite hard. So we tried it in a bottle and we could hardly stick in a point of a pencil into it. My furs work to perfection. I had an Indian moccasin and by putting a  $3/4$ " thick felt sole in the bottom it is very comfortable with only two pairs of stockings. I managed my dogs this afternoon and let them loose. Been working on the lathe all day.

Jan 13th-04 Wed.

The cold spell continues.  $-50^{\circ}$  is the mean for today. and it has been as low as  $-53^{\circ}$   $-54^{\circ}$ . The work is going on weighing out rations and packing. We are working on the boiler in our shop, and Rilliet is hard at the canoe.

Jan 14th-04

Still cold. At times below  $-50^{\circ}$ . The mean is  $-45^{\circ}$ . Jimmy refuses work in the gallery. Weighing out rations and loading sledges. Work on boiler progressing rapidly.

Jan 15th-03 (04)

The temperature rose to  $-27^{\circ}$  this morning and the wind turned south. General orders were issued. Been working on an adjustable sextant handle for Mr. Peters. A very weak light in the skies in south is now visible at mid day.



ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION  
CAMP "ABRUZZI"

G. O. No. 32.

Thursday, Jan. 14, 1904.

1. The consolidation of the entire Expedition party ashore since the twenty-first of November 1903, consequent upon the loss of ship, resulted in considerable extra labor for the members of the Expedition, in the necessary hauling, sledging, excavating and constructing to provide larger quarters.
2. Since the "America" experienced the crush in the ice, a brief summary of work accomplished is as follows:—
3. Cache of ship's provisions moved from line of ice pressure to place of safety.
4. Ship dismantled for lumber, and storehouse at camp converted into sleeping quarters for crew, kitchen built, galley stove brought from ship and set up, and house enlarged.
5. New storehouse for Quartermaster stores excavated and constructed.
6. New storehouse for Commissary stores excavated and constructed.
7. Sledges brought ashore and completed in work shop improvised from part of storehouse.
8. 222 bags of coal filled aboard ship and sledged to camp, and ship's boats sledged ashore.
9. Magnetometer completed.
10. New magnetic hut erected.
11. Silk tents completed for sledge trip.
12. Machine shop constructed, and dynamo engine and generators with machine stores brought ashore. Lathe set up and machine work started.
13. Seal boots completed for sledge party.
14. Pony blankets completed for sledge party.
15. Forge for ponies weighed out and packed ready for trail.
16. Storehouse for sledges 65x15 excavated and constructed from sails and spars.
17. Dogs arranged in teams and teams assigned.
18. First section of sectional boat framed.
19. Over 600 lbs. of pork and bean biscuit baked for sledge trip.
20. Fur clothing nearing completion.
21. Weighing and packing of dog rations now in progress.
22. We have not forgotten to celebrate the festivals of Christmas and New Year with enjoyable banquets and perpetuated the memory of the time by the publication of a six page newspaper.
23. The Commanding Officer takes this opportunity to compliment officers and men of all departments, on the splendid results achieved thus far, under the difficult conditions of darkness and cold, in an Arctic night of unprecedented record for high and continued wind storms.
24. The contemplated training of dogs and ponies during the past period of moonlight has been unavoidably delayed. Those who have their dogs can be prepared for the next opportunity by daily practice with their teams, two men taking a team at a time. This is very important. The dogs require considerable training and members must become acquainted with them.
25. Members of expedition who are to remain at camp should render assistance at every opportunity to their comrades intending to go north, remembering that the success of the expedition depends upon the triumph of the sledge trip.
26. The storehouse is now in use as a place to pack sledge rations. Loose dogs must be kept out. Doors are to be kept closed.
27. Clothing bags issued for trail use should be filled with the following articles of clothing:— combination suit, Jaeger suit, sweater, guernsey, knitted drawers, 3 pair Jaeger socks, 2 pair long stockings, 3 pair woolen mittens, 1 pair seal mittens, 1 pair overalls, 1 pair seal boots, 1 pair mocassins, 1 pair fur boots (to be issued later), Jaeger camel's hair cap covered with silk. Icelandic can replace sweater if desired.
28. Instructions in detail for sledge party will be issued later.
29. Camp routine until further orders:—

Reveille	7.30 A.M.	Luncheon	1 P.M.
First call for breakfast	7.50	First call for dinner	5.50
Breakfast	8	Dinner	6
First call for luncheon	12.50 P.M.	Call to quarters	10
	Taps 10.30 P.M.		

Coffee served at 11 A.M. and at 3 P.M. Chocolate at 10 P.M. Coffee for night force at 6 A.M.
30. Members of the Expedition not on night duty are expected to be in their quarters after taps.
31. As work is proceeding day and night, a consideration for those who are obliged to sleep while others are awake, will tend to prevent unnecessary noise.
32. The sun is on its way towards us and soon darkness will give place to light. Let us salute the return of the sun with a spirit of enthusiastic activity, ready for the task that is before us, rejoicing in the opportunity to attempt the discovery of that which has been sought for centuries.

ANTHONY FIALA.  
Commanding Expedition.



Jan 16th-03 (04)

Temperature  $-16^{\circ}$ . The frost under the ceiling is thawing out and is dropping down through the covering of paper and makes it miserable. Work of putting up rations still going on. Working full speed in the machine shop.

Jan. 17th-04 (many dates in Jan. mislabeled for 03 but have corrected)

Last night the temperature rose to  $+12$ , the mean for the day being  $+6^{\circ}$ . The floor is flooded and the water is streaming down all over the inside of the house. The paper covering has been all right but it can't stand a long thaw. The water which in time leaks through and some great patching is done in every room. At the table it is a grand sight to see some of us sitting with our feet on the seat. The floor and seat being so wet that they will soak through our clothes. Mr. Porter and I were out for a walk taking a circle along the glacier over to the ship and back to the house. Some light soft snow is falling.

Jan 18th-04

The warm weather continues. A soft warm southerly breeze blowing. Temperature being----

Jan 19th-04

Still wet and sloppy in the house. We have done some great blacksmithing in the shop today and came pretty near burning up the whole shop in that the flames from the forge struck the roof and it started to burn and the ventilator was shooting out a flame about 6 feet high. By throwing snow and damping it by bags we put it out in a few minutes. I had a slight headache this evening. Temperature today the highest  $+14^{\circ}$ .

Jan 22cnd-04

A strong gale has been blowing all day, white snow and drift. The temperature is  $+8^{\circ}$ . In the shop we have had the engine running and all works to satisfaction. There must be considerable open water outside. The sound of the waves is heard distinctly tonight.

Jan 23rd-04 Sat.

We were all surprised this morning not to be able to see the ship although it was not darker than usual. We were soon made aware of that something had happened during last night and yesterday's storm. Searching the ice we found it all broken up in pieces all over the bay. There must have been an awful disturbance during the night. Big blocks of ice are pressed up on shore and the glacier. has broken and tremendous bergs are now floating around where a there before was none to be seen. But most of all, the ship with our coal and the cache of provisions containing more than half of our provisions has disappeared. It is a hard blow. The cache was left there to serve us in training our dogs and horses. Our loss is great and God only knows what will become of us if we are obliged to stay another winter. All our work in the shop is done for nothing as now we will have to save coal in order to take us through the winter. I had the little dynamo set up this afternoon and the light burning so we have anyway accomplished the task of getting the plant in order for use.

Jan 24th-04

I slept 'til 12 o'clock noon. Been working on a silk parka tonight. A strong wind blowing.



Jan. 25th-04

Monday- Pretty fine weather all day but it started to drift and blow quite hard after 10 o'clock tonight. Mr. Porter and I took a walk after 12 in our furs.

Jan. 26th-04

The temperature is falling. The moon is out and from 11 to about 2 o'clock the sky showed signs as of daylight. Been working in the shop turning bolts and washers for the new canoe. Tonight I have been making a silk parka for John and worked on my harnesses

Jan. 27th-04

This has been a fair day. Moonshine and quite a little daylight at noon. The temperature is  $-24^{\circ}$ . Tonight I had a little walk after supper. Been working on the lathe all day turning out washers for the canoe.

Jan. 28th-04

Fine weather today. At noon the combined moon and daylight made it possible to distinguish Carl Alexander Land in the south for the first time since the sun disappeared. The temperature was  $-27^{\circ}$  this morning, and tonight 8 o'clock  $-26^{\circ}$ . No wind to speak of. The horses have been exercised out on the lines. I have been working on the lathe all day and tonight I finished up John's silk parka and made a pair of skin mittens.

Jan. 29th-04

It has been clear overhead all day but a quite strong breeze with drift has been blowing. Been working in the shop. We had steam on the boiler to try the new \_\_\_\_\_ on the engine, but it did not work satisfactory. Truden is still weighing out rations for the trail and work in all departments are reaching completion. The temperature is  $-29^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 30th-04

Temp. today  $-24^{\circ}$  and a little gust of wind now and then. We had the engine running in the shop, but not satisfactory.

31st Jan.-04

Temp.  $-26^{\circ}$ . I was out with my dog team tonight. Seven dogs were hitched up and they worked fairly well. Mr Fiala was over on the ice to see if he could not find any traces of the ship or cache, but in walking on the ice for a quarter of a mile inside the place where they were is disappeared and big stretches of the glacier had calved and there is not a known piece of ice to be found. After service the chocolate was issued as usual, also dates. Chocolate has been issued every Sunday. A package for each and it has taken place of money in our games, mostly poker.

(End of book #8)

Feb. 1st-04

Had the eng. running today. I have been working on the lathe most of the time. After supper I went out with five of my dogs and had quite a good exercise both for dogs and myself. It is beautiful weather, the moon shines bright and the temp. is about  $-28^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 2nd-04

It has been partly clouded over today. After 9 p.m. it started to blow and the snow was drifting like smoke. I chained all my dogs up and watered and fed them before I turned in. Been working on the lathe all day. Temp.--

Feb. 3rd-04

The wind that started last night has been blowing violently all day with bad drift. Daylight is coming little by little. After supper I had a bath out in the shop and washed most of my dirty clothes.



Feb. 7th-04

Porter and I were out training our dogs before and after lunch. It is a beautiful day. We were over to Cape Saulen and back twice.

Feb. 8th-04

This is the day set for us to be ready, but yet there is quite a few things to do before we can leave. I made a pattern for a propeller for the launch today.

Feb. 9th-04

Excellent weather today. I was over to Cape Saulen with five dogs in the team. Dr. Shorkley with horse and Charley with his dog team went too. The ice as far as could be seen is broken up in big flakes with much \_\_\_\_\_ young ice. A streak of open water stretched past the Cape about a mile north west. An ascent would be possible but under difficulty. After dinner Porter and I went with our teams out over the ice as far as the young ice which now is about 8 in. thick. Not the slightest trace of ship or cache to be seen. This dog driving in good weather certainly sets new life into me. I know nothing more pleasant. The sledges show up fine in the very rough ice. The length of them especially will enable them to cross cracks to a width up to four feet without difficulty. A real aurora this afternoon. The temperature is  $-10^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 10-04

Been working on my felt boots which were too narrow over the instep and I had to widen them out. After dinner I was out with all my dogs. After an hour's dragging around camp I finally got them to haul a load of 4 biscuit boxes up the glacier half ways over to Cape Saulen. I got orders from the Commander to be ready Friday morning to go with Mr. Peters over to Cape Auk and put up a signal on the crest of the Cape. Dr. Seitz goes along and we are to stay there over night. The temp. is  $-12^{\circ}$  and the wind is west. The ice is seen to be tracking in towards land. It has been clouded over all day.

Feb. 11th-04

I was down with Mr. Peters and measured one of the whaleboats this morning. It is going to altered to a steam launch. In the afternoon I was making ready for tomorrow's journey to Cape Auk. I sewed a pair of deer skin stockings tonight. It is getting colder and a brilliant aurora displayed its beautiful colors about 8 o'clock tonight. It was the most beautiful I ever seen. The temperature is  $-38^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 12th-04

After breakfast I nailed together the boxes which are to serve as signal on Cape Auk. They make a pillar of 18 feet and are painted black in order to show up better against the snow. It is nice weather. At 11 o'clock we were ready; dogs harnessed up and sledges loaded with all necessary articles and camp outfit, and provisions for three days. Mr. Fiala followed us part of the way up the glacier which we decided to be the easiest way as we did not know if it would be possible to go across the bay. At 12 o'clock we reached the top of the glacier and the barometer showed 1000 feet. We followed the lighter sledge in half while all the way to the Cape Mr. Peters leading the way. Dr. Seitz' team keeping ahead of me as mine were a little heavier loaded. At 4 we





ANTON and HIS DOG TEAM

Camp Abruzzi, Teplitz Bay Rudolf Island. Pony tent in back.



reached the Cape and put the tent up about 30 feet below the highest point where it was partly sheltered by the wind. We were hungry and while Dr. Seitz got the cooker ready, Mr. Peters and I went down the slope to find the spot where the signal was to be put up. As it was agreed, at 4:15 the light over at the camp showed up, one pretty near in line with the other so we were not so far from the right place. The agreed white signal was shot off and answered by them with a red which meant to move east. After some signalling the rocket was seen indicating that we were in the right spot. We left the alpen-stock so as to find the place in the morning. When we got back to the tent the cooker was out of order, the pump broken. After a couple of hours work and freezing fingers I managed to make a new plunger out of a piece of horsehide cut out of Dr. Seitz' pants. The soup and coffee tasted nice when once ready, and it was 10 o'clock before we finally were in the bags. The temp. was  $-43^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 14th-04

During the night I had to go up several times, the dogs making so much noise that there must be some bear in the neighborhood. I let Naljik loose and got the gun in readiness, but no bear was seen. Bad weather all day so thick and snowdrift we could not do anything to the signal. We stayed in the bags all day. We cooked "erbwurst" and pemmican and had some good chocolate.

Feb. 23rd-04

We have had several days of bad weather lately with prevailing strong east winds and drift. The ice in the bay has again been turned over now forming a deformed mass of bergs and small pieces. Yesterday was Washington's birthday. Mr. Fiala gave a little talk on our future journey and set the day for leaving the camp to Monday or Tuesday next. Dr. Vaughn, Sargeant Moulton and the Steward went with two dog teams and provisions for six days and a cache to be left at Cape Fligely this noon, but returned after a couple of hours finding they had started without tent. They are to go ahead tomorrow. I was out with my team a few hours this afternoon. A cold north breeze has been blowing all day.

Feb. 25th-04

Dr. Vaughn, Sargeant Moulton and the Steward left this morning for Cape Fligely. It has been a beautiful day about  $-15^{\circ}$  with a light breeze from N.W. I was over to Cape Saulen. All my dogs are getting in good trim now.

Feb. 26th-04

Bad weather today. Wind and snowdrift and the temp. is above zero. In the house it is raining. The floor is flooded and we have to walk around in our sea boots. Some of the teams were out training in the afternoon. A light warm southerly breeze blowing. I gave a finishing touch to the sleeping bag tonight and packed my bag for the trail.

Feb 27th-04

Two young bears came walking into camp this morning. One of them was just to enter the entrance to the alleyway when Stewart caught sight of him and ran for a rifle and shot him a few yards from the house. The other ran out on the ice but was after a short



chase, killed. After dinner I went over to Cape Saulen and back with my team. They pulled a load of 720 lbs. up the hill and I was riding on the level. They are coming around very nicely. The party from Cape Fligely came back after supper. The temperature is  $-15^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 28th.-04

Another bear was shot today by the two sailors, Mac and Burns. It is the biggest bear I have seen yet. We had bearsteak for breakfast and supper and it tastes delicious although a little tough and fishy. Some of our canned meats are not in the best of condition and both John and I got ill from eating some of them. John was very ill some days ago with severe pain in the stomach and he vomited several times before he got relieved of its contents. We were out driving our teams this afternoon over to Cape Saulen and back. My team pulled 870 lbs. on the level

Feb. 29th-04 Temp  $+30^{\circ}$

Today is another of those warm days that seem to be quite frequent up here. The temperature is  $+30^{\circ}$  and the house is dripping all over the inside. Some snow fell in the morning and quite a good west wind blowing causing the ice to press up on shore and form new ridges and obstacles in the bay. I turned some toggles for Mr. Fiala and helped the Chief with his shafting for launch. If it had been clear we should have been able to see the sun over the mountains today.

(End of book no. 9)

Mar 1st -04

The temperature was up to  $+23^{\circ}$  this morning. Quite a little snow fell during the day and a fair west wind shifting over to N.W. and with the change of wind the temperature fell in the evening. So everything is ready to start on the journey north and today was set for the departure, but the last day's today's bad weather have prevented every move. The longer we stay the more new changes we find to make in the outfit so I am really longing to get off-the sooner the better. I had a short pleasure run with three of my dogs this afternoon and some of the teams were out too. Several of dogs are getting the "mange" and we had orders to chain them up outside while the temperature is so high. The horses were picketed outside too and it is a real pleasure to see how they enjoy daylight and fresh air. The Commander says he would like to take all the men out on a trial for a couple of days, but he his afraid the tents will become wet and there be no time to dry them. Our allowance for changes of clothes on trail is limited to a weight of 25 lbs. to be carried on sledge besides sleeping pack and blanket to go in sleeping bag.

List of articles to go with me on the trail:

Undershirt	1 lb. 11 oz. 4 dr.
Do	1 lb. 11 oz.
Drawers (ribbed)	1 lb. 5 oz.
Do	1 " 3 "
Icelanders	2 " 2 " 2 "
Gray shirt	1 " 5 "



Long Stockings		9	oz.	4	dr.
Do		7	"	4	"
Socks 3 pair (weighing a pair)		3	"	4	"
Silk covered cap		5	"	2	"
Scarf		5	"	7	"
Deerskin stockings		10	"	2	"
Do mittens		7	"	0	"
Do with woolen lining		11	"	0	"
Woolen mittens		6	"	2	"
Do		6	"	0	"
Black Do		5	"	2	"
Samoyed boots	2 lbs	3	"	0	"
Moccasins	2 "	12	"	2	"
Canvas pants	2 "	2	"	3	"
Tobacco		8	"		
Small bag containing sewing outfit and diverse articles such as watches snowglasses pipe etc.		1 lb.	4	oz.	
Total weight with bag		24 lbs		4 oz.	

#### March 2cnd

The temperature is still falling. It was  $-30^{\circ}$  at eight o'clock tonight. Porter and I were out driving our dogs after lunch. We went over to Cape Saulen with the intention of going around the Cape and the cairn but we found the ice in such a horrible condition that we preferred to follow the glacier along the ice back to camp. As far as we could see in all directions the ice seems to be in the same horrible state. We saw the sun for the first time from the Cape about 2 o'clock p.m. Dr Shorkley and Seitz saw a little Auk at the Cape this morning. There must be plenty open water in the neighborhood to draw the birds up here so early. Mr. Peters and Spencer went over to Cape Fligely this morning. I wore my furs while out driving and find them very comfortable and warm. The hardest point to get over is to prevent them getting wet through perspiration. I wore fur shirt next to my body, fur in and a silk parka to cover it and prevent snow from sticking to the skin. Two pair of woolen stockings in the Samoyed boots make very comfortable and warm footgear. My pants are made of medium weight deer skin and reach below the knee meeting the boot tops. The whole does not weigh but very little and is very warm. When standing still for any length of time I have another coat which completes the outfit. I have given it many trials and done many alterations and think it safe to wear it without any woolen garments under.

#### March 3rd-04

Another bear came walking right into camp this morning. He was within 10 yards of the house when first shot at and it took quite a few bullets to end his life. Only a few of the dogs went for him and the nearly blind "Shipka" came nearly seeing his finish. He had his whole head in the bear's mouth and the only thing that saved him was the fact that the whole upper jaw was shot to fragments. He fell down at the magnetic hut where we went close up to him watching his death struggle which lasted so long that Dr. Shorkley found it necessary to put half a dozen more bullets into



Mr. Peters and Spencer came back just before lunch. They report that the ice has closed up at the Cape again. In the afternoon we were training our dogs but a sudden wind with heavy drift compelled us to go in at 3 o'clock. It came up very sudden from east and blew at the rate of 50-60 m. an h. All the dogs were picketed in the tent and fed with bear meat which they certainly know how to take care of.

March 4th-04

The storm continued all day and the snow was drifting badly. Everything is getting ready to leave the camp if possible Sunday morning. We are all in good cheer and expect to see something done, although it is getting late. I worked on three pumps for kayaks all day.

March 5th-04

We hauled all sledges out this morning and each man got him assigned a sledge, numbered and tagged. All was gotten ready to leave in the morning. Tents and sleeping bags were packed and weighed. Every man got 6 lbs. of hay or sennegrass to put under sleeping bag in the tent and a bag with 7 day's bread butter and sugar rations. The weather was brilliant all forenoon, temperature being  $-35^{\circ}$  and no wind. But right after lunch it commenced to blow and drift from south-east so that work was impossible. The cook tents were put up and tried in the morning. They are constructed so that they will always stay on the sledge and the cooking gear always in place inside. Mr. Rilliet and the carpenter go in my tent. Our tent, sleeping bags, ration bags, and hay weigh altogether 136 lbs.

March 6th-04

All sledges were snowed under this morning and had to be dug out so there was no start to be made and it was not any extra good weather. The top loads consisting of tents, sleeping bags, kayaks, the sectional house and sundry small things and instruments were all lashed on and all is now ready for an early start in the morning. We are to have breakfast at 7 o'clock. I went over to the Cape and back with my team hauling the loaded sledge quite easy. 4 bears were seen at different times during the day and was shot by Fiala. The temp. was 0 at noon.

Skin shirt

Skin pant

Two pair of stockings

Small parka

Drawers

---9 1/4 lbs.

March 7th-04

Monday- We left the camp 10 o'clock this morning after early breakfast. 27 men 11 dog teams and 17 horses. It was thick and pretty bad all forenoon, but nevertheless we started. It was quite a bustle before we got off, but everything straightened out when we got started and had taken a last farewell from the ones that remain at camp. The ice is open along the south end of the island. At 12 \_\_ we reached the top of the glacier right above Cape Germania and camped. It makes a nice sight to see the 11 tents spread out on the snow, dogs and horses chained up. Dr. Vaughn went back to camp also Rilliet to return in the morning. The temp. is  $-11^{\circ}$  and the wind north.



March 8th Tuesday

We turned out at 7 this morning and had our breakfast, beans and tea. Rilliet, Vaughn, and Montrose arrived in camp at 9 o'clock. Montrose returned and we started at 9:45 following the highest point of the glacier, the dog teams in the lead. At 12:45 we stopped at the cache put down by Vaughn in their previous trip. The sun was shining over the glacier and we could see Rainer Isl. in the south. When the horses caught up with us we received the bad news that Rilliet had ruptured himself and would have to go back with the \_\_\_\_\_. From there we had downhill all the way down to the Cape and the odometer was run over and one of the axles broke and Butland ran into and broke the runner of Chip's sledge. It commenced to drift and blow quite bad but we got down without no further accident. We put up the tents right on the Cape and have just had our pemmican stew and tea. The temp. is  $-25^{\circ}$  and the wind south. The Commander has said that we are to return to the house in the morning. He is entirely disgusted with the day.

March 9th Wednesday

We had breakfast 9 o'clock this morning. The wind continuing and the temp. must be pretty low. It feels awfully cold out in the wind. The cookers are out of order, only one working and we have to wait an awfully long time for our tea and pemmican. Rilliet feels miserable lying in the bag all day unable to go out. Mr. Fiala has altered his plan. He is going back to camp as soon as the weather permits and then start out with a small party inside a week or two. Blowing all day and bad drift. West wind. Temp. about  $-30^{\circ}$ .

March 10th-04 Thursday

Another miserable day. The temp. is  $-30^{\circ}$  and the wind still blowing about 30-35 miles an hour. One of Tessem's dogs was found dead this morning. I have hard times to keep warm. The only way is to run around and dig out a shelter for my poor dogs.

March 11th-04 Friday

We are back at camp again after a swift trip with loaded sledges. The weather has been fair, but a little hazy. We started from Cape Fligely about 9:30 and arrived at 3:30 afternoon in camp. Several of the sledges got smashed up on the way.

March 12th-04 Saturday

Temp. today has been as low as  $-39^{\circ}$ . We took all tents and sleeping bags in off the sledges and they are now hanging on their old places in the ceiling of the house and makes it look like a furriers shop. Rilliet was sick with fever this morning. He is a little better tonight. Myers, one of the sailors, is took down with diarrhea. Everybody feels the effects of the trip more or less. Frozen noses and fingertips are general. I was just told by the Commander that he wants me to go with him in his next attempt. He intends to start inside a week or week and a half with 10 men, 5 dog teams and 5 horses. He told me to get my equipment in order. The temp. at 8 tonight is  $-45^{\circ}$ . No wind.

March 13th-04 Sunday

Porter and I were over to Cape Saulen this morning. We found some newly formed cracks in the glacier and at several places it calved. The temperature is  $-44^{\circ}$ , the mean. No wind. Mr Fiala



gave us part of his new plan and called for volunteers. I recorded for Porter while he took some latitude obs.

March 14th-04 Monday

It has been a fine day with sunshine and calm. The temp. was  $-35^{\circ}$  this morning and  $-40^{\circ}$  at noon. I have been working on some alterations of my clothes for next trip. Amongst other I made a vest of dogskin to be put on outside the skirt in the sleeping bag. It is made with straps and buckles so that it can be drawn tight and prevent cold air from entering the skirt which I found was very disageable while out last. The names of those to go on next trip was read out tonight. The party will consist of fourteen men, 9 dog teams, and 5 ponies. Mr. Porter and I will go in the tent together.

March 15th-04 Tuesday

The Temperature was  $-51^{\circ}$  this morning. It has been a fine day Work is going on for next trial.

March 16th-04 Wednesday

I was working on my sleeping bag all night last and been up all day so I am quite tired. After lunch some of us took a run over to Cape Saulen with our teams. Temp.  $-45^{\circ}$ .

March 17th-04 Thursday

Temp.  $-44^{\circ}$ . The rations are made over the sledges, one under repair. Kayaks are fixed up and everything is rushing. We are losing valuable time. I am getting four pair of skis in shape to go on the trail. Two bears were seen out on the ice this morning.

March 18th-04 Friday

Temp.  $-46^{\circ}$  in the morning and  $-28^{\circ}$  at 8 ock. tonight. I finished up the skis this forenoon. A bear came up to the camp after lunch and several of the boys ran out with guns. I went out also, bare headed and no mittens to have a look at the chase. As soon as the dogs caught sight of him the bear turned around full speed, skimming over the hummocks in wonderful manner. He stopped a little ways out on the top of a big hummock and somebody fired but missed. I ran down to watch closer. Joe "Beef" handed his gun over to me and I chased after and caught up with him and sent a bullet in the back of his shoulder. He fell, but was not dead. I went closer and shot him right behind the right ear and he dropped dead. Stewart and I skinned it and brought the meat to camp. It was but a small young bear and a female. Porter and I went out skiing in the evening. It is starting to blow a little from south after 9 ock.

March 19th-04 Saturday

There is plenty of open water around the Cape and flocks of birds are to be seen over there, probably Auks. The temp. this morning was  $-3^{\circ}$  and tonight  $-9^{\circ}$ . The wind is south. My fingers are bothering me today. They are very sore from the freezing they had yesterday. We are again puting down the finishing touches on our own equipment and will be ready start Monday or Tuesday.

March 20th-04 Sunday

The temp. this morning had again fallen to  $-35^{\circ}$  from  $-30$  last night. The sun was out early and they looked very promising but before noon it commenced to drift and within a hour it was up to



60 miles. Tonight it blows at the rate 72 m.an h. We had a very good roast of bear meat for supper. I finished up a pair of silk overalls to go on the trail. We started to load the sledges this afternoon.

March 21st-04 Monday

Temp.  $+10^{\circ}$ . An awful drift all day, 50 m.an h. Temp. this morning was  $-4^{\circ}$  and tonight it is  $+10^{\circ}$ . The wind has stopped somewhat at 9 tonight. The wind is south-east. I was just outside and there is open water as far as we can see outside the bay and dark clouds hanging over it. The outlooks are quite bad for our getting away. The sledges are nearly all loaded.

March 21(2)st-04 Tuesday

Been occupied all day in digging a snowhut or "igloo" for my dogs as I prefer to have them chained up outside as long as the mangle are raging amongst them. It has been drifting all day. The wind being north. The temp. is \_\_\_\_\_. Order was given to get the tents and sleeping bags loaded tomorrow.

March 23rd-04 Wed.

N.E. wind blowing all day and drifting. Temp. is  $-24$  tonight. Been loading the top loads today and everything in order for departure.

March 14-04 Thursday.

A good breeze has been blowing most of the day, but the drift has been less than yesterday and the sky clear. The temp. is  $-38^{\circ}$  tonight. The sledges are hauled out of the storehouse and ready to leave in the morning. General Orders were read tonight and Mr. Fiala told of the plans. 14 men, 9 dog teams, 7 horses are to compose the party. The final is to be 3 men with 4 dog teams and a sectional boat. The rest of the party to return at different periods in parties of 3 and four men. The party left in camp will be in command of Mr. Truden until the 1st of May when Capt. Coffin takes charge of the party going south and Mr. Rilliet with a small party stays at camp awaiting the return of the last party and to continue the scientific work.

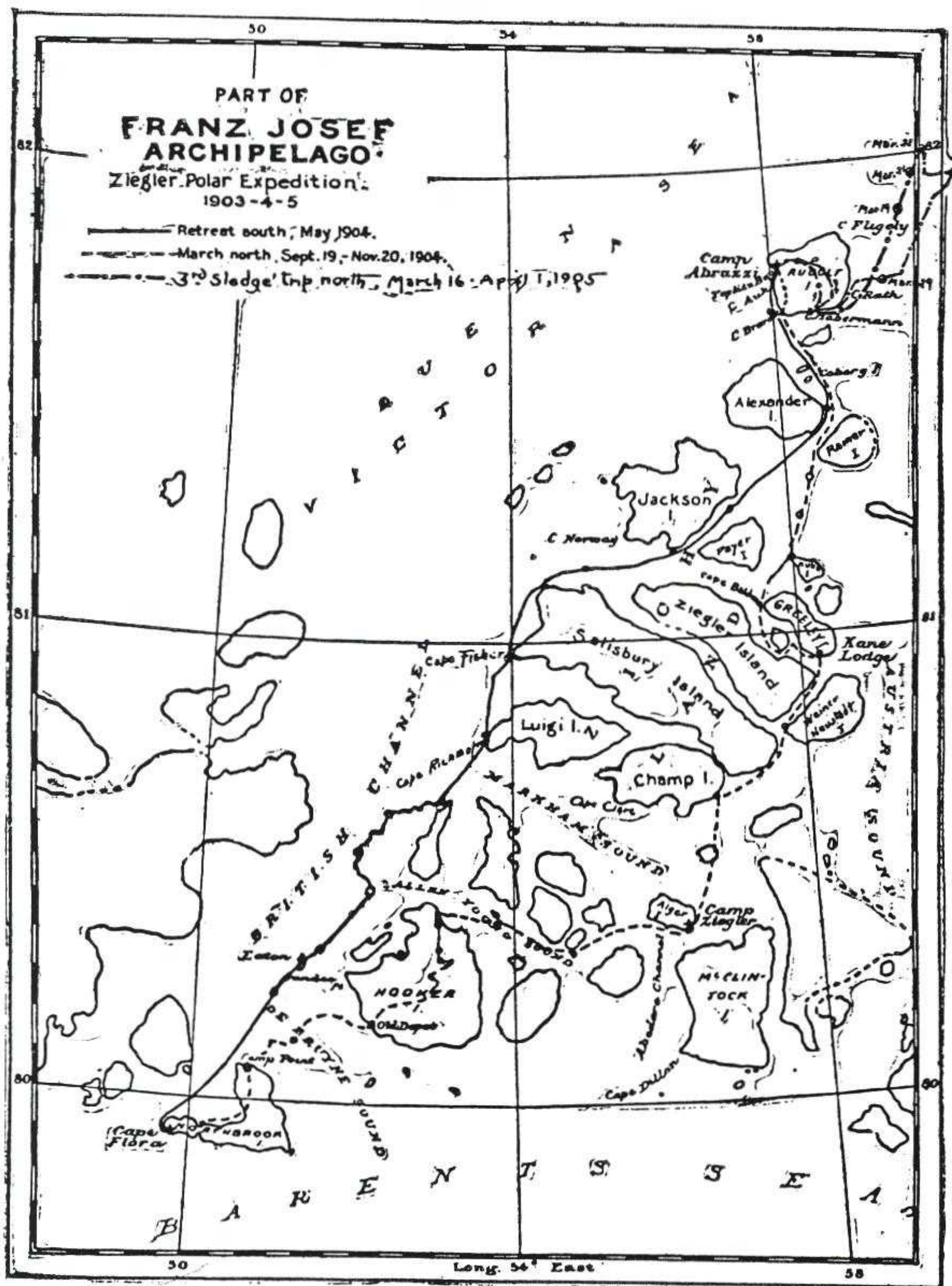
March 25-04 Friday

At 11 ock. this morning we left camp in fine weather taking the same way across the glacier as last time. The horses, 7 in number, had the lead going up to above Cape Germania, but there the dog teams, 9 in number, went ahead. Mr. Fiala stayed with the horses while Mr. Peters lead the dogs. We crossed many small crevasses and the sledges ran in several times but not more than we could lift them out again. A little wind with drift bothered us for a while, but it soon became quiet again. It was 4:20 when we reached Cape Fligely all in good shape and with no accidents either to sledges or men. The horses arrived about half an hour later. Pemmican and tea was ready soon, The cookers being in good order. Nansen's Island could be seen in the distance. The ice looks very rough from the Cape. The temp. was  $-35^{\circ}$  this morning.

March 26th-04 Saturday

Sun was beaming from a clear sky when we left camp at Cape Fligely this morning at 8:30. We entered the ice little west of the Cape. The ice was the worst. We had to do a lot of cutting







and building passage ways and when we stopped at 2 o'clock we were not more than about 3/4 of a mile from the Island and most of the sledges were broken down. Here we were without no hope of the ice improving and Mr. Fiala after short consultation with Mr. P., Dr. V., and Mr. Porter came to the conclusion that he had to return. We camped close to a weak spot of ice and had supper. Mr. Porter spoke to the Commander about letting Mr. Porter and me stay on the ice and continue north and see how the ice was and then after a few days work towards Nansen's Islands (according to Fiala, White Land) and from there down to Kane Lodge, Coburg Isl. and then back to Camp Abruzzi. He thought it a good plan and arranged for sledges, eight dogs to each and thirty days provisions to stay with us while the party returned. They left at about 5 o'clock. after a farewell to us. We packed our sledges, cooked some pemmican stew and are now ready to turn in. The temp. is -29°.

March 27th-04 Sunday

When I woke up this morning, it was 8 o'clock. The weather is fair and the temp. -25°. The minimum during the night being -29°. I could hear the dogs barking in the direction of the Cape and came to the conclusion that the party must be on the march. Mr. Porter was still snoring in his bag and the dogs rested peacefully in the hay we had strewn out for them. The ice has not moved any. We soon had breakfast on the way. Started to pack the sledges after having scraped and cleaned the tent from all snow that had gathered. It was 11 o'clock. when we finally got ready and after having picked our course from a high pressure mound, we harnessed up the dogs and went out on the young ice following the line crossing and recrossing it from time to time. In some places the ice gave away and we had to take to heavier places. Advancing but slow we finally after hour and a half came to some ice so badly pressed up that we saw no way out of it. Mr. Fiala undoubtedly done right to return. No sledges could make their way here. As far as we could see the same horrible case with not even as big a space as to give room for a decent camping ground. We decided to turn back to the Island then much more as the weather seemed to be preparing for something new. Mr. Porter took a few pictures and then we turned the sledges around in the old track and the dogs seemed to be aware of where they were going, it being nearly impossible to hold them back. Our loads did not weigh more than 325 lbs. As we turned we could see the snow drifting on the glacier. We had to stop a few times while I had to repair my sledge, lignum vitae being cracked. It was done in a few minutes and as we went following the old track and by 8:20 we were on the icefoot again. Leaving the dogs there, we climbed up and went over to the place where we used to camp, but found it deserted. A broken down sledge and quite a big pile of provisions together with the cook tent was left behind. Collecting a few pieces of bale wire returned to our dogs and pushed on with the intention of crossing the glacier to the south side of the Island where we undoubtedly will find better ice. A little ways up the glacier it commenced to blow from the south-west and drift got thicker and the wind stronger as we advanced. The dogs pulled excellent with the drift in their faces now and then stopping only to rub their eyes to clear them



from the fine snow which clogged up everything. At six o'clock we stopped and made camp under difficulty. We think we are on top of the glacier. The tent up and the cooker going we hurried into our bags ready to let go the tent pole any time, the sides of the tent bulging in reducing the space to half. The temp. is now  $-10^{\circ}$  and inside the tent  $-6^{\circ}$ . Both of us had our wrists frozen.

March 28th-04 Monday

Wind still blowing. Has blown all day and does not seem let up. The temp. was  $+4^{\circ}$  this morning and  $+10^{\circ}$  during the latter part of the day. Inside the tent it was up to  $+37^{\circ}$  while we were cooking, and we have had it very comfortable, only being outside to get ice for the cooker. The dogs are all snowed under so it is no use to disturb them. They will not eat in this sort of weather although they might be hungry not having had any food for two days. We have had pemmican stew three times and coffee twice and chocolate for supper. Plenty of tobacco. The tent stands it pretty well and I am convinced no better day was spent in a snowbound camp than we have had today. It is 8 o'clock when we turn in tonight. I have my boots off for the first time since we left the house.

March 29th-04 Tuesday

Storm continued all day with drift. We stayed in tent all day and made it as comfortable as possible under circumstances. Temp. was as high as  $+16^{\circ}$ . The wind shifted around to west.

March 30th-04 Wednesday

When we woke up this morning the sun was shining in through the tent walls. It was still blowing a little, but by noon it was quiet. We at once set in digging out the sledges and after clearing out the tent and repaired the runner on my sledge, we were ready by 2 o'clock. Passing the cache an hour later we set course south-west across the glacier looking for a place to enter the ice. After some hacking we managed to get down off Cape ? but only by heavily gblocking the runners. While I went down to pick the way, Start had chewed off two of my traces which had to be repaired before we could go any farther. The sea ice was excellent and setting course for Hohenlohe Isl. we arrived there at 9:30, both hungry and tired. At 8:30 the sun set in beautiful colors and right opposite in the heavens was the full moon smiling. We camped on the ice foot right under some big rocks on the north side of the island. The temp. is  $-20^{\circ}$  tonight. This morning it was  $-13^{\circ}$ . In the morning we go down to Coburg Isl. to find out about the cache left by Baldwin and from there down to Rainer Isl.

March 31st-04 Thursday

We left Hohenlohe Island at 1 o'clock this afternoon. The sun was shining out on the ice, our camp being in the shadow of the Island. When we got out at 11 o'clock the temp. was  $-4^{\circ}$ , the going was fine, but after crossing the western point of the Island it then became overcast and it commenced to blow and drift soon after. The ice was perfect and none of the rough strewn ice of two years ago was to be seen. Cape Auk soon came in view up north and Torup Isl., so called, turned out to be formed of five small islands about a mile apart. Flocks of little Auks were resting on the rocks of Coburg Island as we passed it. Its beautiful rock formation gave a great impression on the background of heavy skies behind. At 4 o'clock we reached the cache on the Island and after having pitched the tent and chained up the dogs we started to dig out the cache, but the wind increased in strength and the drift became so bad that we had to stop and after feeding our dogs we went in and closed the tent and enjoyed a supper of pemmican,



coffee and tomatoes, which we found in the cache. The temp. is seeming to rise. After a long discussion on how to estimate the rate of our watches, out of which I turned out to be wrong, we turned in our warm bags.

April 1st-04 Friday

Blowing and drifting all day. We could not travel so we concluded to stay here and dig out the cache and find out what the party can rely on going down in the Spring. The temp. is +24° and the hard work with the poor tools we have made us sweat so that I was ringing wet when we finally had all dug out by seven o'clock tonight. It was a tough job as it all was frozen together in a solid lump of ice and the drift made it very bad. We dug out:

140 tins dog pemmican and 16 tins of man pemmican

30 " of kerosene

1 " matches

3 cases of cut loaf sugar

2 cases of granulated sugar

1 case of tomatoes

A sledge loaded with partly dog and partly man pemmican we found also but as it was frozen solid in the ice we satisfied ourselves taking the load off. For supper we had pemmican stew, coffee and hot milk punch made with hot water, sugar, milk, and some alcohol. After a few minutes Porter said it must be about +70° and must be awfully hot up where his head was, he declared. Well, we are having a very good and comfortable time of it, and I don't see why we should not as hard as we really have worked today.

April 2nd-04 Saturday

10:45 this morning we left Coburg I. following Alexanderland down to Rainer Isl. which we made at 1 o'clock. after a speedy trip over fine ice. The dogs were in very good spirit and traveled fast, although it was drifting a little. On the rocks on the western point of Rainer Isl. we left 125 lbs. of dog pemmican to serve a party going south and at the same time to lighten our loads as we made up our minds to make Stoliczka Isl. before night, if possible. The condition of the ice got worse south of the Isl. The snow now being very thick and soft and about three miles south it became wet underneath so that we found it necessary to put our skis on and which now came in very handy as we would have been unable to travel without them as the ice grew worse and more slush and thin. Several walruses were seen and we had hard times to keep the dogs from going after them. About three miles from Stoliczka Isl. we had to abandon my sledge as the dogs commenced to get tired and the ice very unsafe, and we could by no means stop and camp as there was no fresh ice in sight and the ice being only three in. thick with lots of holes and very wet on top. It would not be safe, the least wind being liable to break it up. We moved the most necessary things over to Porter's sledge and hitched up my dogs on to his sledge. We left the sledge with a little flag swaying and hurried on. I went ahead sounding the ice every step. It was then 8 o'clock. Two and a half hours later after many stops and zigzagging, avoiding weak places, we finally stopped on the north end of Stolitcha Isl. utterly exhausted and weary. Two years ago we found the ice up here soft but not to



such an extent and nearly two months later. We had traveled over about 8 miles of it and it seemed to reach down to the south end of the Isl. I can't account for it in no other way than there must be a heavy current sweeping through here and that and the unusually high temp. of the last days combined hinder the ice from getting thickness even in winter time. In many places my ski staff went right through with one jab. The temp. was  $+25^{\circ}$ . When we went to feed the dogs we found that we left all dog food behind so we had to feed them half rations man pemmican. The poor animals were so played out that they did not care much for food. In a few minutes they were snoring sound asleep, and it will not be long before I am there myself.

April 3rd-04 Sunday

The temp. is still high, about  $+26^{\circ}$ . A little wind this morning but by noon we had fine weather and decided to run out after the sledge. After taking a latitude obs., Mr. Porter located it way out on the ice. We could see the little flag waving through the telescope. I made a short run out to the walrus hole where a big bull was peeking his ugly head through the snow sludge. The ice was softer and more water seemed to have gathered since yesterday. Hardly a white place, all water soaked dark snow now, the skis sinking deep down into it. By 1 ock. we had the 16 dogs harnessed and started off. It was impossible to get the animals to enter the wet surface again. They all lay down and hammer them as much as we liked they would not stir. We took that as an ill omen and went back to the tent and agreed on leaving the sledge out there until our return from the lodge and instead continue south as soon as possible. 3 ock. we had the sledge packed and following the shoreline we got onto better ice south-west of the Island. Passing Stoliczka within 2 mi., turned south towards the west point of Kuhn Isl. From there to Greeley the going was quite good, although we struck a few spots of slushy snow, especially on the west side of Kuhn Isl. Taking turns leading on skis, we reached the west cape of Greeley Island at 7 ock., avoiding possible soft snow by hugging the shore closely. As we felt in shape to continue, we kept on rounding the Cape and striking for the little island south of Greeley we made up our mind to reach the house if possible as we were short of dog food. The going was good. We were soon at the water hole, but here our troubles began. It was open and quite a little larger than two years ago and fresh bear tracks took the dog's attention which bothered us a great deal. After careful maneuvering we managed to get up on the ice foot which here is limited to about a yard and a half and very steep starting out that as the cliffs go right down in the water without being space enough to walk much less for sixteen dogs which all were excited smelling the tracks after several bears which recently had been sliding down the slope. In the water lots of little Auks were swimming around. After exciting and strenuous work we crept along foot by foot ready to see the sledge roll down into the water any minute. When almost over, I caught sight of two bears ahead of us standing on their hind legs watching us and the dogs commenced to smell. There was nothing to do, but



to stake them down and get the gun ready. Firing a couple of shots after them we scared them away and started again, one man leading and the other guiding the sledge. At last we were past the most dangerous place and got down on the ice again utterly played out and weary stepping down knee deep in the water, and stumbling over scattered blocks dragging the dogs and lifting the sledge we at last got out on smooth going again. But now another anxiety crept in on us. We knew that the house was resting on ice and it had been the question whether it was safe and would ever be found again, and for about half an hour we were all gloom when at last the little smokestack appeared through the snow and parts of the roof came in view. We actually came to life again and shook hands, well knowing that our troubles had come to an end for some time to come. Dogs chained up, tent up, we dug out the entrance and after a few minutes we had the door open and looked in. Everthing was in good order, no ice or snow, and it seemed a comparatively easy work to clear it out.

April 4th-04 Monday

The temp. is still high,  $+25^{\circ}$ . We cleared the house out today and are going to sleep in it tonight. It was surprising how well everything had kept. Clothes and provisions were in just as good state as when we left them two years ago. Very little ice had gathered on the floor and the ceiling and walls were covered with ice crystals which were very easy scraped off. Tonight our supper consisted of turkey, sugar, corn, tomatoes, "Borden's" condensed coffee, and "Palmer's" biscuits. Quite a good change from pemmican stew four times a day. About 1500 lbs. of coal was stacked up inside. The house and the stove was in perfect condition. By tomorrow we will have everthing in perfect order ready to stay for about a week.

April 5th-04 Tuesday

This morning we both felt pretty drowsy and had had toothache last night and lost all sleep. The temp. was  $+18^{\circ}$  and I think it is this warm weather that makes us so heavy. In the afternoon it became a little colder and by 9 ock. it was down to  $-4^{\circ}$  which made us feel considerably better. We went out and started to do some work around the dogs and the piles of stuff we had thrown out and very soon felt like new men.

April 6th-04 Wednesday

It was three ock. before we turned in this morning and were out again at ten. We started in with clearing away the snow so as to make comfortable passage. Then all the clothes bags were overhauled and stuff that was wet was hung up to dry in the house. Here is quite a considerable lot of clothing. All new and in good condition, except a lot of dog skin mittens which stunk so bad we had to throw them away. We found 22 pair of deer skin pants, 48 pair of Finn shoe, 20 pair of komager, 9 heavy underdrawers, and 5 shirts, 5 silk tents, 2 canvas tents, 3 sledge sails, a lot of icelanders, goat hair stockings, heavy woolen stockings, lots of mittens and 20 big felt hats. The temp. kept about  $-7^{\circ}$  all day.

April 7th-04 Thursday

The temp. this morning was  $+5^{\circ}$ . Tonight it is down to  $-18^{\circ}$ . It has been a beautiful clear day. The sun shining so that we had



to put on our sun glasses and big hats. We had oatmeal for breakfast, coffee and Palmer's biscuits which we help ourselves to at any time. After taking the inventory of the provisions and packed all the remaining cloth garments away, we started to dig around the house hoping to find some kayaks and sledges which we also found. Three kayaks and two sledges, one much damaged. Also the kayaks seemed to have been crushed somewhat but not beyond repair. A big rock was resting against the house and seemed to have rolled the kayaks. One of the sledges was in pretty good condition and we dug it out and took in in the house and have been working on it tonight. It will replace my sledge that we left on the ice as it is much easier to handle two sledges with light loads and fewer dogs than to have all sixteen dogs hitched up to one sledge. At six o'clock. Porter took a time set from which to ascertain the altered rate of the watches.

April 8th-04 Friday

We were awakened by the dogs barking and making an awful racket. Porter jumped out and had a look. He came in instantly and grabbed the gun and saying out, "He is right here". Quick as lightning, I got out of the bag and stuck my bare feet into my komagars and ran out. Porter had already fired and when I came out the bear was running away down on the ice. He shot again and I ran to turn the dogs loose. When he reached the ice foot he slackened pace and as Start jumped on him he fell never to rise again. It was a very big fellow, weighing about 8-900 lbs. He had come right up on the back side of the house and was not over 20 feet off when Porter shot him. The sun was beaming strong so it was very hard to get a good sight, coming right off the dark sleeping bag. Porter fired 5 shots, only two hit him. After we got into our clothes harnessed the dogs up and hauled him up to the house. After breakfast, we went to work and had him skinned and cut up by 4:30. We fed the dogs all they wanted to eat.

Louise and the wolf were absent this morning and did not turn up until late tonight when we caught sight of them coming from Cape Washington. They were very much tired and full of frost. Yesterday and night before they went away together and stayed away for several hours. They refused food. It was very curious to see how bashful they were coming back like a little boy and girl waiting some schooling for having stayed away too long. They have probably found some walrus hole where they have their fun. We finished my sledge up tonight and intend to make a trip down to Wiener Neustadt Island tomorrow. The maximum temp. was +1°. The minimum was -21° tonight. Fine weather all day.

April 9th-04 Saturday

It was 12 o'clock before we turned out this morning and 3 before we finally were ready for our trip to Neustadt Isl. we went very light so that we could make a fast trip. Tent and cooker and provisions for a week, no sleeping bags. The going was excellent, just a little rough ice outside Cape Washington, but from there and down it was as good as could be wished. We rode all way and arrived down there at the place where we used to camp two years



ago at 6 ock., making the distance of 10 miles in exactly 3 hours. On the way we saw many tracks of bears and at the place where the boat was, some foot tracks. The boat was found in very good condition resting on the sledge as it was left. Four boxes of emergency rations were untouched, but a box of Bakers chocolate was emptied. We left the place after having left 4 tins of dog pemmican and a signal flag on the rocks. We spent twenty minutes there. After two hours and 40 minutes we were back in camp again and were surprised to see an ivory gull sail around the house, the first we seen yet this year. The temp. is  $-13^{\circ}$ . The minimum being  $-16^{\circ}$ . The max  $+2^{\circ}$ . It has been clear and no wind. After feeding our dogs all the bear meat they could eat and ourselves turkey and sugar corn we are now to turn in very satisfied with our day.

April 10th-04 Sunday

The minimum temp. last night was  $-18^{\circ}$ . Today it has been  $-6^{\circ}$ . The weather has been hazy and light snow all day, the wind being west. We were occupied this morning with taking apart and cleaning the cookers left here. One of them we could do nothing to on account of having no tools. The other we got together in good order. After lunch we dug out one of the kayaks. The two others were so badly damaged and frozen down in the ice that we thought it of no use to spend time on them. Instead we sounded the barrel and found it to our surprise contain two thirds of coal oil. We left it in place after plugging up the hole again. The kayak we dug out is a one man kayak and has several ribs broken, but can be put in shape. For supper I fried the bear's heart and made a very good meal of it. Porter preferred his pemmican stew. He is bothered by toothache again and has turned in while I am greasing my komagers with bear blubber. It is now a week since we arrived here and we are now thinking of the return trip having accomplished all our work down here.

April 11th-04 Monday

We got everything in readiness to leave this afternoon, but the weather kept getting worse so by the time we had everthing stowed in the house it was blowing and drifting quite bad. The temp. at the same time falling to  $-28^{\circ}$  and made it very unpleasant. We intended to travel down to the little isl. west of here and waited an hour but the weather did not change, although at times it looked as if it would clear up. Well there was nothing to do but to stay, so we carried out all the furs and clothing and built a fire in the stove and made a place on top of the boxes where we could sleep. Fed the dogs and enjoyed another turkey supper in a warm comfortable house. Before turning in we repaired our silk tent and it will be three ock. in the morning of the 12th before we get in our bags. We got all our provisions and dog food packed on the sledges and will be ready to leave in half hour.

April 12th-04 Tuesday

We were already to leave the house 3:20 this afternoon. It was fine weather, just a light drift along the ice, not rising over a foot from the surface. After nailing up the windows and the door, we left setting course for the south end of the little island. To avoid the water hole on the north side we went around



that side and find very good going, although there was open water there too. It did not bother, the shore being wide enough to travel on all the way. We met with several fox tracks and lots of bear tracks, but no animal was to be seen. Rounding the west end we noticed how it became thick and commenced to drift ahead of us towards Greely Isl. and being in no hurry we picked out a good camping place out of the wind that commenced to blow. After we had had our pemmican stew Porter went up in the rocks and found traces of coal. He shouted to me to come up and as I came up there I found him standing high on the rocks acting like a wild man, declaring that he had found it. Following up the traces of coal he had really found the seam and there seemed to be lots of it. It was located in a gully between a high mountain glacier and a mountain top. It is more or less intermixed with gray clay. In one place it was vertical and another horizontal. The seam where we measured being about 10 feet wide. There were sights of it all around. we dug some pieces out and took them down to the tent where we started a fire. After much blowing we got it to burn but it required a lot of draft and it is hard to tell whether it is good or not. All the samples we took down burn, but they are all frozen and watersoaked. It will be of great value for the Expedition or coming expeditions if it turns out well. The temp. during last night was  $-33^{\circ}$  and this morning  $-21^{\circ}$ . Tonight it is down to  $-18^{\circ}$ .

Coal mine camp April 13th-04 Wed.

We have had bad weather all day so we could not leave. Instead we climbed up to the coal mine and dug out quite a little coal, picking out some good pieces for samples to take up to the house for trial. We made it up in a bundle and started down, but the wind blew strong and threatened to blow us off our feet so we had to give it up, leaving it up there until better weather. The temp.  $-12^{\circ}$  and the wind N.W. One of my dogs that I left loose last night has disappeared. Looking high and low I could not find him. I guess he has gone back to Kane Lodge.

Stoliczka Isl. April 14th Thursday

We left the coal mine camp at 4 o'clock. this afternoon after bringing down the coal we left up in the mine yesterday. It was misty and thick, hardly being able to see the west cape of Greely Isl. The going was excellent. All the wet snow was frozen hard and offered fine going. The dogs were in good spirits and travelled fast. Keeping out from land after leaving Greely Isl. we set off straight for Stoliczka and arrived there in good shape at 9 o'clock. It has cleared up and the temp. has fallen to  $-23^{\circ}$  from  $-12^{\circ}$  when we started. We are now camping on the same spot as when we were here before. In the morning we go out after the sledge. The ice out there looks firm and smooth.

April 15-04 Friday

We were up early this morning and after having had our breakfast we harnessed up and started out after the sledge. The slush was now frozen and we had fair going out there. We found the sledge in its place with a big drift over it and frozen down, so we had to chop it out. I measured the ice and found it to be 6-7 in. thick with a layer of frozen slush 3-4 in. thickness. While we were



working there a bear came walking up behind us following our tracks. We immediately turned the dogs loose and now began a wild scramble which resulted in the "Wolf" being tossed in the air and the bear started off with all the dogs following. Tried to keep up for a while, but useless. They soon got out of sight and we had to wait over an hour before we finally had dogs enough back to start.

"Start" and "Brutus", my two best dogs, still absent and began to get anxious about them, but at last even they turned up quite played out. The "Wolf" had a big hole in the brisket and his head and body commenced to swell up so he looks like a well stuffed sausage from being the skinniest dog in the pack. We passed two walrus on our way. We set course for "Jackson Island". The same thin ice all way until we entered the channel between Jackson Is. and an unknown isl. east of it. Rounding the point we traveled in south-westerly direction. At five o'clock we made camp after a march of 12 miles. It commenced to drift and it was quite cold in the wind. The temp. being down to  $-21^{\circ}$ . We found a good sheltered place under an old iceberg near the shore a little north of Cape Roosevelt. We left four tins of dog pemmican at Stoliczka Is.

April 16th-04 Saturday

Lay stormbound all day. Drifting and thick. Poor "Wiley", one of Porter's dogs, died last night. He had been out of sorts for a few days. The temp. was down to  $-29^{\circ}$  last night. This morning it was  $-5^{\circ}$ .

April 17th-04 Sunday

Are camping next to Nansen's hut tonight. We left camp at noon in fine weather and good going. At three o'clock we stopped under a rock on the south end of Jackson Isl. and had a lunch of hot coffee and biscuits. Porter took a round of angles while I cooked the coffee. The temp. was above zero when we left camp and it became quite warm so we shifted our fur pants for woollen and took our shirts off, but after lunch it felt a little colder so I put my furs on again. It was 8 o'clock when we arrived at the hut at Cape Norway where the explorers (Nansen and Johansen) had spent a winter in a miserable hut built partly of stone and partly dug down in the ground. It was covered with walrus hides spread over a big drift log for ridgepole. It was now full of snow, some of the hides being torn off by bears. Very little snow covered the ground leaving in view the numerous skeletons of bears and walrus which had served them as food for 8 months. As I was strolling around there, a bear came walking up along the shore. The dogs soon got scent of him and they made an awful racket. He kept on walking towards our tent and being within 100 feet, I fired and hit him. He turned around and started out on the ice. Turning "Start" loose, I ran after and sent him some more bullets and he soon lay down to die. I went back and Porter and I harnessed the dogs up and hauled him up to the tent where we cut the quarters off for dog food, being a welcome for the dogs. The temp. was about 0. We had a good turkey supper and a hot toddy to the two greatest of polar explorers' memory, and were comparing our commodious life to what they had had to suffer. It has been a glorious day all through.





Nansen's Hut on Cape Norway, Jackson Island

In 1893 Fridtjof Nansen set out in the specially built "Fram" to drift across the North Pole. After two years of drift in ice Nansen concluded he would not reach the Pole this way, so he took leave of the "Fram" with Hjalmar Johansen and with sledge and kayak started to walk to the Pole, knowing he would never be able to find his ship again. After reaching a record northing of  $86^{\circ}13.6'$ , he turned south towards Franz Josef Land 450 miles away. In August of 1895 he set up winter camp on Cape Norway and lived in this "hut" and off bear and walrus and survived in good health 'til spring. He started south again on the 19th of May, 1906. June 17 he met up with Jackson of the Jackson Harmsworth Expedition which had wintered on Cape Flora, Northbrook Island. Returning to Norway with Jackson, he was there to greet "Fram" which arrived two weeks later. One of the great stories of exploration!

As I a child I had seen a bear skull among Dad's polar mementos. Now I know where it came from.



April 18th-04 Monday

I was wet and felt miserable in the bag last night and night before. It was 3 o'clock before we got off after having taken pictures of the place and placing a little signal flag on the house. I took a bear skull and some ribs as relics. Crossing the bay to Cape Hugh Mills we had some drift and wind in our faces and as we passed Steinen, we noticed that all the ice from the Cape north and west was very badly screwed up. We had a hard job cutting our way along the shore and when we finally got through and out on tolerably smooth ice on the other side the Cape it was 9 o'clock., having spent 6 hours in that short stretch in hard work. On the other side the bay we went up on land and crossed over a strip of 2 1/2 miles into a big bay where the ice seems good way up to the north coast as far as we can see. We camp now under some rocks on the south side of the bay. It was 10:30 when we got here. The temp. has gone down to -15°. The "Wolf" got worse at Hugh Mills. He swelled up like a balloon and we had to shoot him.

April 19th-04 Tuesday

It was 2 p.m. when we woke up, the sun shining high. The minimum temp. showed -23° and the max. +12° in the sun. At 4 we left after having taken a round of angles and a time sight from the top of the cliff above the camp. We could see Rudolph Isl. from the top, although it was getting a little misty. The going in Long Harbor (de Long Bay) was good but we had to keep inside the pressure ice which formed a distinct line from Helland's foreland stretching down to the little island where we lay anchored with the AMERICA last fall. At Helland's foreland we went we went up on the glacier to pick out a way. As far as we could see the ice badly screwed up in all directions way over to Alex. Land. We had traveled a good distance so we decided to go around the Cape and find a place for camp. After some hard work, we got around and by 8:20 we stopped under the north side of the Cape. The temp. is now +3° and it is blowing and drifting.

April 20th-04 Wednesday

Snowbound at Cape Helland's foreland all day. It has drifted all day and the wind has come in strong gusts sweeping down the glacier threatening to tear the tent to pieces. In fact, it tore up along the seam of the bottom on one side. The temp. is keeping about zero tonight. It is -1/2°. We did not get up until 1 p.m. It has stopped blowing in under the Cape, but we can see it drifting out on the ice so we will wait a while yet. In the meantime, we picked out a way through the hummocks out on smoother ice and have it all clear for an early start in the morning. We have decided to go in through the channel and keep inside of Alex. Land. The ice looks very rough along the outside coast.

April 21st-04 Thursday

Have been in the bay all day and feel like I was broken in pieces. We were deceived on the weather. It started to blow again at 5 a.m. and has kept on with bad drift throughout the day. The temp. is -2°.



April 22nd-04 Friday

It is four weeks today since we left the house. It cleared up a little at 1 o'clock this morning and we got things ready for a start, but just as we were to take the tent down it commenced to blow again so we will wait a while yet. At 5 we started, the weather clearing up. We were soon out on the ice through the roadway we cut yesterday. There are some awful pressure ridges along the shore and it is pretty well jammed up outside too but that is by far the better way. An hour later we crossed over a point of the land, extending out in the channel and from there we set out for an island a few miles further down. The ice is badly thrown around but we managed to work through from flow to flow and after 5 hours hard work we reached the little isl., very anxious to see how the going is on the other side and we are very glad to find it smooth, well knowing that our troubles are at their end now. We camp and have a meal on our last can of turkey. Porter is bothered by toothache again, and had to let the toddy go. From the top of this little island we can see down through the channel to Rainer Isl. There are a couple of rocks sticking up a little ways from here and beyond is Deak Isl. Start chewed his traces again and I gave him an awful licking and muzzled him, but I don't think it will do him any good. It softens my heart to see him muzzled and still see him do his work as hard as ever. The temp. is now, at 12 noon when we turn in,  $-4.5^{\circ}$ . The weather has cleared off nicely and it is very comfortable in the tent.

The 2??? Camp- April 23th-04 Saturday

Arrived here at 1 p.m. Left camp on "Benken" Isl. 3 this morning. The weather and going has been excellent. At 6:20 we stopped at Deak Isl. and cooked coffee in the shelter of a rock. Struck fresh bear tracks and were soon mixed up in the chase of two bears. For about a mile the dogs pulled us full speed after them, chasing them in behind a big berg, where Porter shot and wounded one of them at very long range. The other disappeared out of sight. The wounded bear walked ahead of us on the glacier for many miles, but finally we lost him out of sight, and a good thing. The dogs were very uneasy as long as they saw him. The temp. was  $-10^{\circ}$  this morning at 3 and  $-6^{\circ}$  at noon. We had to wear snow glasses all day and my face feels as though it was sunburned. The bears have been disturbing the cache here. Evidently they did not like the looks of the flag which is torn down and torn in pieces. One of the pemmican tins is broke open and some of its contents eaten. Several of the tins are strewn around.

April 24th-04 Sunday

We left Coburg Isl. 4:30 this morning heading for Cape Brorak. The sky was clouded over, but it was calm and the temp.  $-4^{\circ}$ . Good weather to travel in. Passing one of the small islets out in the channel, I noticed a light object and studying it for a long while, I came to the conclusion that it must be one of our tents, and telling Porter about it we put the telescope on it and quite right it was a camp. 2 tents, a sledge, and a dog team. We kept guessing who it could be, and started over there, and were right on them before the dogs gave any sound. Going to the tent flap we opened and were welcomed by our Commander and the Steward in [the Steward is is Bernard E. Spencer, Steward.]



their bag, woke up by the dogs thinking there was a bear. They were out on a trip to Coburg Isl. to see if they could find any traces of us and had camped here last night. At the house they had been very anxious about us, and several parties had been out looking for us, but all came back with discouraging news. They were very glad to see us back safe and sound having expected the worst. All kinds of rumors were afloat in the house about how we had perished on the ice being drifted away and were unable to reach land. Yesterday, Rilliet, John, and Duffy had gone over to Cape Fligely with one of the big canoes in search for us. Dr. Vaughn had been over with a party to Cape Auk but came back to the house stating that it was impossible to leave the Isl. They had not had more than 5 hrs. rest, and the Commander was not feeling well, so we decided to camp there with them and then start back together. We had just gotten into our bags when a bear came walking up and we rushed out, and after a long chase in sleeping socks, I killed him. I turned several of my dogs loose and "Brutus" got two rips in his stomach; one 3" and one 8" long. Luckily not deep enough to bother very much. We hauled the bear in, and I tied "Brutus" down and sewed up his wounds while the Commander and Porter took an L.obs. After lunch we had service in our tent, and then packed up and started. It was then 11 ock. At ten ock. tonight we reached Cape Auk, but found it impractical to travel over the glacier so we went back and camped between Brorok and Auk with the intention of climbing the glacier in the morning. Before we turned in we all had a hot toddy of our make and the Commander thought it very good and it made steward see twice. It is now 1:30, the 25th., and I am tired having been on the go since 4 yesterday morning. ;

April 25th-04 Monday

We stayed in camp all day on account of wind and drift. Nevertheless, we had a good time in the Commander's tent with hot toddy and smoking cigarettes. The temp. was about -4°.

April 26th-04 Tuesday

We left at 12:30 this morning and after 2 hours hard work we climbed the glacier. The incline was very steep so we had to double team all the way up. Mr. Fiala fell in to his waist in one of the numerous crevasses. After reaching the top we had smooth going all the way and down hill so we could ride. steward is affected by snow blindness and can hardly see. It was 6 ock. when we finally arrived in camp, most of the people sleeping, except night watchman.

April 30th-04 Saturday

All the time since we came back has been a hustle and bustle. The Commander left with the party for Cape Flora at 8 ock. tonight. 9 dog teams and 16 horses composed the outfit. Mr. Fiala intends to come back here as soon as possible after arranging things down there. Mr. Porter and I go out again a week with the object of surveying Zichy Land and the intention of staying out as long as possible in order to catch the relief ship. We are 14 men in the camp now. Mr. Rilliet is an addition to our party, so we will be three. Mr. Peters, Tafel, Spencer\* and John go down in July by kayak, and Mr. Hartt probably goes with them. The rest are

\*Bernard Spencer



Camp Abruzzi, Crown Prince Rudolf Island,

Frans Joseph Land.

April 27th, 1904.

Anthony Piala, Commander of the Ziegler Polar Expedition.

Dear Sir:-

I take pleasure in submitting a report upon a sledge trip undertaken by Anton M. Vedoe and myself agreeable to verbal orders issued by you to me upon the ice north of Cape Fligely Saturday, March 26th.

Our outfit consisted of two sleds and sixteen dogs with provisions for twenty days. On the morning of the twenty-seventh we started East through the screwed-up ice in the direction of Hvidtland. The going became worse as we advanced until after traveling about one mile we reached such a chaos of broken up blocks that any further advance to the east or the north seemed practically impossible. This experience more firmly convinced me that your decision to abandon the sled trip north was a very wise one, and photographs which I took at this place are ample evidence, I am sure, to convince anyone of the futility of traveling by sleds over such going. Accordingly we ~~returned over our old trail and camped that night part way up the ice dome~~ of the island, where a storm held us for the greater part of three days.

Our route from here took us down the east side of the island, which we left at a point on the south side about four miles east of Cape Brorok. We could see the margin of the pack ice extending in a broad curve from Cape Rath southeast, then east, then northeast in a direction toward Hvidtland. We camped that night on the west end of Hohenlohe Island. The next day we reached the cache on one of the Loburg Islands, and were two days there digging it out during another storm of wind and drift. The supplies were restowed higher up among the rocks and marked by an Expedition flag. Bears had visited this cache and destroyed the contents of several dog-biscuit boxes.

April second we traveled and camped on Big Stoliczka Island. The going to the south end of Rainer Island was excellent, where 126 pounds of bagged pemmican was cached. From Rainer Island south to Stoliczka and East as far as we could see there was thin ice, in places only three inches thick covered with snow and slush. In the middle of this one of the sleds was abandoned and both dog teams harnessed to the other as the only means by which we could get out of this quaking bog, for it was quite impossible to



camp here, or find fresh snow for cooking or for the dogs. The next day we started out to recover the abandoned sled, but the ice being much worse the dogs refused to travel on it. We therefor continued south for Kane Lodge through the channel between Kuhn Island and the one west of it. More slush was encountered here, but not so bad as to prevent our traveling over it with our skis. When the "water-hole" west of Kane lodge was reached, we were obliged to work along the snow slopes of the small island west of it and midway along this open water we were surprised by the appearance of two bears which placed our outfit in a most dangerous position. For, the sleds almost ready to slide into the water, required only the slightest force misdirected to send them into it. We were very lucky in preventing the dogs from seeing the bears, and by firing a few long range shots were finally relieved of this danger. After more bad ice we arrived at the Lodge.

Kane Lodge was found almost completely buried under snow, with only the peak of the roof and chimney protruding above it. We pitched the tent alongside of the house and on April fourth commenced taking an inventory of the supplies. Everything was taken outside, a fire built ~~inside~~ ~~the stove and the house~~ thoroughly dried out. ~~The~~ Everything here was found in good condition with the exception of several horseblankets and bags of cast off and worn out clothes. These were in such a decayed and rotting condition as to make them absolutely worthless. All of the clothing was thoroughly dried, rebagged and tied. *Tapped*

There was such an accumulation of snow around the house it was quite impossible to ascertain just what lay underneath it, but three kyacks were uncovered, two of them badly broken by a large rock falling from the cliff above. Two sleds were also uncovered, one of which Mr. Vedoe repaired for temporary use in place of the sled abandoned on the ice. A seal envelope found nailed to the wall of the house inside has already been given to you. The coal was taken out of the bags and stowed in a coal box built of empty boxes against the west side. Under the east window a table was built of six empty pemmican boxes, and in these were stowed the broken cases of food. In restowing the supplies in the house and leaving the empty boxes piled up outside, sufficient space remained so that a part can now at any time occupy it immediately upon arrival.

On Saturday the ninth we went to the south end of Wiener Neustadt Island and found the boat and sled there in very good condition, apparently just as left two years before. Fifty-two pounds of dog pemmican was de-



posited here to augment the cache of four cases of emergency rations already left here by the Expedition two years ago. We returned to the Lodge the same day.

We left the Lodge on our return to Camp Abruzzi 2 P.M. Wednesday the thirteenth, and were stopped by drift and compelled to go into camp on the northwest end of the small island west of the Lodge. Bad weather held us here two days, in which time the discovery of coal was made back of the camp at an elevation of some six hundred feet above the sea level. About seventy pounds were secured as a sample for testing, and photographs taken.

From here we traveled to our former camp at Big Stolickka Island, where fifty-six pounds of tinned dog pemmican were cached and the next day, the weather having been much colder and allowing the ice to become stonger, we went out and recovered the abandoned sled. While restowing the loads a bear was seen coming up on us and some of the dogs were turned loose. One of my dogs received such a "side-winder" from the animal that he died from the effects of it four days later. We camped that night in Backs Inlet about two miles from the cape called Roosevelt by Mr. Baldwin. Here another one of my dogs died and was found frozen stiff next morning. As Mr. Vedo had already lost one dog, with our loads on the sleds still quite heavy, the prospects ahead, if we struck much bad ice, were not encouraging.

We camped the next day at Cape Norway alongside of Nansen's hut.

On the eighteenth we crossed smooth ice to Cape Hugh Mill, and here met the screwed-up ice of the Polar Pack. By keeping along the ice-foot we found fair traveling until we reached the face of a glacier. Here considerable work was necessary with the pick, and after working several hours through very bad ice reached good going again on a bay south of the low land making out to the extreme western end of Jackson Island. This low land we were obliged to cross, and we camped inside the island (Gefilmuyden?) where the ship stopped on its way north last fall.

On the nineteenth we crossed the deep bay before us to Helland's Foreland and camped between two glaciers on its northern side. The same heavy screwed-up ice was met with here and it was three days of hard work and bad weather before we got out of it and camped on a small rocky islet (not on the map) in De Long Fjord. Here the fast smooth winter's ice was reached and early on the morning of the twenty-second we started over it,



lunching at Deak Island and camping at ~~at~~ the cache on Coburg Island soon after noon. After another scrimmage with bears along the glacier face of Alexander Island. We found the cache here somewhat disturbed by bears. The flag was torn down, but outside of their eating up part of a pemmican tin, no other serious damage was done. At 4.30 on the morning of the twenty-fifth we left this camp intending to take advantage of the fine weather and reach Cape Auk; but after traveling scarcely a mile or so Mr. Vedoe discovered a tent on one of the islets between Coburg and Hohenlohe Islands. It proved to be occupied by Mr. Fiala and the Steward, who had only arrived there a few hours before and were sound asleep.

The rest of the trip to Camp Abruzzi you are of course familiar with.

Speaking in general terms, it is Mr. Vedoe's and my opinion that the condition of travel inside the islands is excellent, and that so long as cold weather prevails, the thin ice south of Rainer Island is not to be feared; that while outside the islands along the shores of Queen Victoria Sea, the going is good over the bays and fair along the ice-foots bordering the talus slopes, the traveling over the pack ice abreast the glacier faces is very bad and comparable with that north of Cape Fligely in the latter part of March; that <sup>which</sup> possible fair going might be met with several miles out from land there would be always the danger with a offshore wind of being blown out to sea.

The caches now established between Camp Abruzzi and the south end of Wiener Neustadt Island, 5 in number, are evenly distributed at distances of about twelve miles. The only cache in doubt is the ~~the~~ unfanned pemmican on Rainer Island, which may or may not be done away with by bears.

Seven bears were seen during the trip, three were killed, and the dogs lived almost entirely on fresh meat after reaching Kane Lodge. A quantity of fresh meat is stored there under the snow by the west window of the house. Several walrus were seen on the thin ice south of Rainer Island and one at the "water-hole" near Kane Lodge.

The weather during the trip was on the whole very poor. Up to the time we met you, in five out of nine camps we were held stormbound for two and sometimes three days. There were but two days when we were not traveling



-33°

in drift. The extremes of temperature were ~~-30°~~ and plus 26° Fahrenheit.

I wish to call attention to the valuable service which the skis rendered us in the thin ice covered with slush. Had we not had them, ~~AX-~~ ~~though~~ I suppose we would have gotten through somehow, yet at the time referred to they seemed our only salvation. I desire also to call your attention to the admirable way in which the Expedition sledges stood the rough ice traveling in Queen Victoria Sea, which can be compared to that north of Rudolf Island and through which they have come out in as good condition as they went in.

A complete list of the stores at Kane Lodge and the caches between here and Wiener Neustadt Island is appended to this report. Everything mentioned in this inventory is in good condition so far as could be ascertained without opening sealed tins. Such sealed tins as were opened however were always found in good condition.

Before closing this report it is a pleasure for me to bear witness to the efficient service and good comradeship of Mr. Vedoe. His company has helped to make the trip a <sup>o</sup>most enjoyable one.

Very respectfully yours

Signed by Russell Porter, signature illegible]

Artist and Asst. Scientist to the Expedition.

Note: The silk tent considering the bad weather we had stood the trip remarkably well, and we both remarked upon the comfortable interior it afforded through heavy protracted storms. It suffered one tear about three inches long in the silk where it joins the floor, and we suggest a strip of canvas about 4" wide sewn all around the tent, lapping half of it under the floor and the other half over the sides so that the strain can be distributed over several seams. We also concur in thinking that another strip, of silk, would be of service sewn around the sides of the tent at the point where the four corner guys are fastened. The wooden ring also at this point helped to stiffen the tent considerably in high winds and kept the sides from flapping.

We have little to suggest about the fur clothing. We traveled mostly in our fur shirts, silk parkie and fur pants. We wore the fur boots and reindeer stockings, also the finsko, komager and moccasins, using each according to the going under foot.



The small aluminum cooker worked very well and gave us our meal in about twenty minutes. The outer rim of aluminum, however, is too soft, and should be made of the same alloy as the pots. This outer shell coming down an inch below the bottom of the pot allowed us to set the pot down full of hot food without hurting anything underneath it. Regarding stove, Mr. Vedoe inclines to the Primus burner, while I prefer the "Hotal."



Mr. Stewart and the sailors, Mack, Perry, Myers, Myhre the fireman and Tessem the carpenter. We have had excellent weather since we came home, and the ice in the bay was strong enough so the party went straight across rounding Cape Auk. 40 dogs are left in camp. All horses went south. Another case of glanders made it necessary to kill another horse today. The temp is about  $-20^{\circ}$ .

(End of book 10)

May 5th-04

We have had very nice weather ever since the party left south. The ice in the bay is intact, although way out it has been opening up a little. Last Sund. Mr. Porter, Tessem and I went over to Cape Saulen in order to shoot birds, but there were none to be seen. Tessem and Myhre have been sick. Most likely a bad touch of cold. They have been in bed most of the time and feel quite feeble. I have had a slight cold but not to interfere with my work. I have fixed up two norwegian sledges with silver runners, repaired my harnesses and am getting things in shape for our trip. Mr. Porter is making a two foot wall tent which is nearing completion.

May 6th-04 Friday

Mack and Perry shot a she-bear and caught a small cub this morning out on the ice. The cub is very small, probably not over a week old. We keep him in the storehouse. He will suck our fingers dipped in milk and does not hurt the puppies when they play with him. They will lick him on the nose and jump on him and he does not mind it at all. The steward (Bernard Spencer) and Mack (Mackiernan) has decided to go down to Cape Flora as soon as possible and will probably go with us. Our date for leaving being fixed for Monday, We have had a bad drift and wind in gusts today. The temp.---

May 7th-04 Saturday.

Been loading our sledges all day. We have all our provisions inside the kayaks which are lashed right side up on the sledges. Mr. Rilliet took moving pictures of the little bear outside in the snow. He is very weak yet but seems to gain strength every hour. We feed him on milk malted and condensed, even oatmeal.

May 8th-04 Sunday

We have finished our loading and have everything ready to leave after breakfast tomorrow. Our tent is ready and suits us to a "T". The bear has been uneasy and wakes us all up with his noise last night. As he grows stronger he gets wilder and snaps and bites at everything in reach. Rilliet took some more moving pictures of him chasing the dogs on the outside. The temp. was  $+12$  at noon.

May 9th-04 Monday

Left the house at Teplitz Bay 10 ock. this morning, probably not to see it again. There is only 8 men left there now and most of them seem to be inclined to leave and go home as soon as they can. The sky was overcast and the temp.  $+12^{\circ}$ . After taking a last farewell of my brother and the other comrades we started off following the trail across to Cape Auk which we reached at 11:30. Now there we had a last look at the house and the surroundings, and rounding the Cape it soon got out of view. We got through the ice without trouble and at 2 ock. we made camp at Cape Brorok. The temp. is now  $+25^{\circ}$ .



Bar Room Camp May 10th-04 Tuesday ("Bar room camp" is what it looks like. The same for April 24. There is no explanation for this title, except the frequent references to "toddy".)

I discovered last night I lost my canvas pants in yesterday's scramble. So while the breakfast was getting cooked, Mac and I went back and found them a couple of miles back. During the night we were disturbed by three bears, but after a few shots they made off, not to return. We left camp at 2 ock. and arrived here at 8:20. It was quite a hard pull for the dogs, the snow being pretty soft and collecting in their paws causing them to lie down every now and then to lick it out. The temp. is +20°.

May 11th-04 Wed.

We camp at the south end of Rainer Isl. tonight. Had excellent going all way and fine weather. Our cache of dog food has been disturbed by bears. The bar. is very steady and the temp. is about +20°.

May 12th-04 Thursday

Before turning in last night we went up on top of the glacier of Rainer Isl. where Mr. P. took a round of angles. The weather was brilliant and we could see the headlands of the surrounding islands very plainly. We left a signal on top. We turned in at 4 ock., were roused out by a bear. He was just in the act of acquiring the dogs just a couple of feet from the tent. Mr. Porter jumped out and brought him down with one shot. None of the dogs were hurt. After a few hours sleep we started for Stoliczka Isl. and reached it at 10 ock. tonight. We did not find any of the bad ice we met with a month ago. Some walrus is lying on the ice outside here. The temp. is +12° and the weather brilliant.

May 13th-04 Friday

At 4:30 this afternoon we left for the coal mine and reached there 10:30. It was little foggy when we started, but it cleared up nicely after a couple hours and the going was perfect. Mr. P. and the rest went up to the mine and fetched down 100 lbs. of coal while I cooked some coffee. The temp. is +12°. At noon it was +36°.

April 14th-04 Saturday.

Foggy this morning and so this afternoon when we started for Kane Lodge. We left at 4:30 and arrived here at 6 ock. We passed a bear and cub on the way, but as they were lying down out on some sludgy ice we left them alone. They will probably follow our tracks sooner or later. The condition of the ice along the route has been a great deal better than it was a month ago very much against our expectations. The temp. was +21 at noon.

May 15th-04 Sunday.

We have had a complete rest all day except the steward who has been cooking and done his part to perfection. For breakfast we had oatmeal with pancakes with maple sugar and coffee. For dinner we croquettes made out of a composition of emerg. rations and chipped beef, corn fritters and gravy, tomatoes and coffee with H. and O. biscuits. It has been drifting more or less all day and a heavy fog. The temp. is +15°. The min. last night was +9°, max +18Ho.

May 16th-04 Monday

Temp. 15°. Snowing and blowing. We dug out the kerosene barrel



on the backside of the house and got our komagers in shape for wet traveling, greasing them with tried out bear blubber. Pancakes and hash for breakfast, corn fritters and hash for supper. Coffee and the 19 \_\_\_\_\_ at all hours.

May 17th-04 Tuesday

We have repacked our sledges and kayaks and gotten everything in readiness to leave the house tomorrow, providing the weather permits. Mr. P. has been occupied with surveying all day with Rilliet as asst. Before we turned in this evening Rilliet, Mac and I went out for a walk and climbed the Island. We found traces of coal, but could not discover any seam of it anywhere. The weather has been brilliant. The temp. is +15°.

May 18th-04 Wednesday.

After having put everything in the house again we left at 9 ock. last night and arrived at "Rookery Camp" 1:30 this morning. It has been snowing all night and the going was pretty heavy. We struck sludge several times. A bear has visited the cache here just a few hours before arrived. No harm done. Mr. Porter took several sights on the way. Temp. +20°.

May 19th-04 Thursday

We turned in at 4 ock. this morning, but we did not get much sleep. The sun came out fine and it was impossible to get any rest. 5:30 in the afternoon, Mac and I took a dog team and sledge and drove over to the channel right across from here to find out whether it was possible or not to pass through into Zichy Land. On the way we shot a big walrus. We climbed Cape McKinley and the cape opposite and found it impracticable to get through unless we wanted to use boats. Open water extended clear across from glacier to glacier and an awful swift current kept the icebergs plowing through and breaking up the ice. The channel went in about 3 m. and then turned off to north in which direction we saw some low land about 10 miles off. On the cape opposite McKinley I found some more coal. At 9 ock. we were in camp again. After tea we went out and cut up the walrus and brought some meat to camp. The steward had in the meantime shot a lot of auks and fried them which made a very agreeable supper.

May 20th-04 Friday

Turned out at 10 this morning. We had fried walrus liver with ham for breakfast. It tasted very good. No sign of fishy taste to it. While Mr. P., Rilliet, and Mac went over where Mac and I were yesterday, the steward and I hauled two of the sledges up the hill by the water hole which now extends across from Wiener Neustadt Isl. to Zichy Land. The hill was steep so that we had to double up the teams. Well on top we sat down and let the dogs drag us down again after leaving the sledges, and maybe we did not go down flying. The steward sat down on a piece of canvas tied to the traces and I on a shovel. The dogs ran down hill full speed and we were all wrapped in a cloud of snow, and we had many a hard bump before we got back. We rode in the same manner the 1 mile over to the camp. Half an hour after, the other party arrived and we all had coffee, packed up the last sledge and left in a heavy fall of snow. Hitching the three teams on to the one sledge it was soon at the top and from there each man took his



respective sledge and we continued down on the other side and by 10 ock. we made camp on the ice south of the island. The temp. is  $+40^{\circ}$  in the sun today.

May 21st-04 Saturday

Turned out at 5 ock. this afternoon after 17 hours of sleep. It has been blowing a little during the night and I was woke up several times from the dogs scrapping. At 6:20 we broke camp in fairly good weather and started for Cape "Trieste". We met with a little sludge and deep snow, but it did not interfere with our forthcoming. At 12 noon we made camp in the mouth of a supposed channel about two miles north of the cape. We had to cross several bad cracks in the ice where some of the dogs had a quite unexpected bath. We can't see far into the channel on account of two glacier faces being very close together. A bad mishap was discovered in Mr. P.'s kayak in that one of our coal oil tins had sprung a leak and the screw top of another had become loose and caused the loss of over a gallon of oil which had run out in the kayak and saturated part of our sugar, pemmican, and tobacco. A good lesson. NEVER KEEP COAL OIL WHERE IT CAN SPOIL ANY Eatables AND ALWAYS SEE THAT THE CANS ARE CLOSED UP WELL. Mr. P. has taken several observations and done some plain table work on the way. I am feeling a great deal better of late than I have for the last month. I strained my back twice and are not quite recovered yet. The temp. is  $+15^{\circ}$ . The wind is----

May 22nd-04 Sunday

It was 5 ock. this morning before we got into our bags and at 4 this afternoon I turned out and cooked breakfast. We were alarmed once during the night by the dogs making an awful racket! Thinking there was a bear we rushed out with the guns, but it was only my team that had pulled loose the stake chain and were fighting for some meat on my sledge. It has been blowing and drifting all night and it is very thick weather.

Storm bound all day. Very bad drift and hard wind. We are just waiting for a chance to get out of this hole as soon as possible. We found out that we cannot go through the channel on account of open water from glacier face to glacier face and at times we can hear the rumble of ice as it is falling down from the glacier on both sides of us. The temp. is  $+20^{\circ}$ . The wind N.E.

May 23rd-04 Monday

At 12 Noon we broke camp and moved down to Cape Trieste where we were safely established in camp by 2 p.m. The wind with drift continued the rest of the afternoon and evening although it was clear and sunshine overhead. From the cape we can see open water on both sides of North Isl. The temp is  $+22^{\circ}$ .

May 24th-04 Tuesday

Early this morning Mr. Port., Rilliet and I climbed up on the highest part of Zichy Land, 1550 ft. Mr. P. took some angles. When we came back to camp we had coffee and then we packed up and went for North Island. Reaching the island we struck patches of soft snow and ice and my sledge came nearly going through in that a snow bridge over a wide crack broke, but Rilliet and myself managed to pull it out only wetting the steward. At 6 p.m. we had coffee at the island. The water comes within a 100 yds.



of the shore on the west side. At 7 we started and by 9 p.m. we arrived at our old winter quarters, Camp Ziegler. The houses and stables were buried beneath the snow and through holes in the roof we could see that the whole inside of the stable was filled up by snow and would require lots of digging to get into the house.

May 25th-04 Wednesday

Rilliet and I stayed up all night making an entrance to the house and after 4 hours work we got through by cutting through the back side of the stable. The east house was almost empty while the west house was piled full of provisions. Everything smelled musty and after scraping and cleaning out we made a fire and washed up dishes and got things in order for the steward to cook breakfast.

May 26th-04 Thursday

Slept all day. Turned out at midnight and arranged inside the for our coming stay.

May 27th-04 Friday

Rilliet and I stayed up all night and day to get in step with the other men. We moved our sleeping bags in the house and are going to sleep in there tonight. I worked on Mr. P.'s sledge in the afternoon. Its german silver runner being broken.

May 28th Saturday

At this noon Mac and I started for the west camp with a team of dogs in order to get some coal. At 2 we arrived there and on the way we discovered some birds which we think are grouse and we shot 4 of them. One pair we shot at the "Spires" and another pair at the west camp after a good chase in the hummocks. As we did not have any shot gun with us we killed them with our rifles, which, of course, tore them to pieces and we were able only to preserve the heads and legs. As far as known to us these birds have never before been seen in Franz J. Land. They made a very good meal when fried. We forgot to bring our pot along but we made use of a flat tin can found there and there was plenty butter and pepper and salt we found. For supper we had boned turkey of which we found a box. After digging out part of the cache we turned in. It was then 3 o'clock. the 29th in the morning. For the first time we slept without bag. I had a blanket over me and Mac had nothing. It is not very cold in this temp. +43°.

May 29th-04 Sunday

We turned out at 10 this morning, cooked some turkey, loaded our sledge and at 1 we were off for the camp again. We traveled on the ice past the Spires and came up on the south side of the "Haystack". It was very heavy going and our load was very heavy too, probably over 1000 lbs. At 3 p.m. we reached the houses with 4 sacks of coal, 1 sack of charcoal, half a barrel of flour, a box of turkey, a tin of ships bread and a few other articles.

May 29th-04 Sunday

Rilliet, Mac and I made a trip over to the mountains today looking for some more of those birds but we did not see any. It was very warm and hard walking so we had to take some of our



clothes off and leave them on the way, picking them up going back. Rilliet found a fossil of a starfish. Temp. is  $+41^{\circ}$ . It has been snowing part of the day.

May 30th-04 Monday

Been working on Mr. P. sledge. Rilliet is working on an oven to bake bread in. It has been good weather. The temp. is  $+17^{\circ}$  tonight.

May 31st-04 Tuesday

This is Decoration Day in the States. The steward is baking bread in the oven Rilliet made yesterday. We turned out at about 9 this morning. In the afternoon Mac and I went out kayaking, shooting birds. I shot 5 guillemots and two auks. After supper I went out on skis for an hour. The weather is good and temp. about  $+25^{\circ}$ . Johnny- cake and bacon for supper.

June 1904

June 1st-04 Wednesday

Mac and I were out in the kayaks again today. We shot 3 loons and one guillemot. The weather was brilliant and we paddled across to McClintock Isl. The open water is getting larger every day. From being only a small place in the middle of the channel when we arrived here, it now stretches clear across from the shore here over to the glacier on McClintock Isl. and the whole length of Alger Isl. This afternoon we cleared out part of the other house and found some more stuff to eat. For dinner we had the birds we shot yesterday and they were delicious. Rilliet and Mr. Porter measured off a baseline this afternoon. The temp. is  $+20^{\circ}$  and it is blowing hard tonight. N.E. wind driving up a quite dangerous looking sea in the sound. The sky is overcast and dark. We feed the dogs cornmeal mush to save the pemmican of which there is not much to find here.

June 2nd-04 Thursday

Had breakfast at 1 p.m. Target practice outside the house. After dinner, composed of sugar corn and stewed loons, Mac and I went out for a drive with my dogs. We rode up to the mountains over to the spires. On the way we had to fire a couple of bird shots at long range on "Topsy". Just enough to make him jump high in the air, because he was loose and took our dogs off the trail. He did not want any more so he returned to camp leaving my dogs undisturbed at their work. Start is getting to be a very good leader, improving every day. We did not see any birds and returned after a short climb in the rocks. It has been fairly good weather. The temp. is  $+29^{\circ}$  tonight.

June 3rd-04 Friday

Mr. Porter, Rilliet, and the steward went over to the west camp after breakfast this noon. Mac and I stay at the house in order to take the inventory of the camp. As soon as they left we started on and got through about 6 o'clock this evening. After we were through we were so dirty that we were compelled to take a bath and change clothes. The weather is fine. The temp. about  $+25^{\circ}$ .

June 4th-04 Saturday

We had breakfast at 3 this afternoon. I did some washing and then I tried my luck baking doughnuts. After some experimenting but finally they came out fairly well. We had fish balls for dinner. The weather is raw and windy. The temp. is about  $+25^{\circ}$ .



June 5th-04 Sunday

Mr. P. and party came back this morning at 3 ock. They have been up on the highest point of the isl. He told me that he wanted Mac. and me to take a load of provisions down to an unnamed isl. about 20 miles from here. To start tomorrow. The temp. is +31. Mac. and I were out sailing in the kayaks this afternoon and had a splendid time.

May (June) 6th-04 Monday

After repairing the two man kayak and loading our sledge we left the house with 11 dogs and quite a heavy load, mostly pemmican and kerosene, at 8 this evening. The weather was fine and no wind. We passed the haystack and set course for the north end of Brady Isl. The going was fair. Now and then we broke through into the water under the snow. We stopped a couple of times to shoot at some seals, could not get any. At 12:15 we made camp on Brady Isl. Fresh bear and fox tracks. It has clouded over and the temp. is about +26°.

June 7th-04 Tuesday

Had breakfast at 7 this evening. The sky is overcast, but nevertheless we start. The ice around this cape is showing wet spots.

June 8th-04 Wednesday

We did not start last night. As soon as we were ready to the fog got so dense that we could not see land in any direction. It was 2 ock. this morning before we finally got off. In the meantime we had a visit of a bear, but he kept so far off that we could not get him. It cleared up enough so that we could see "Bliss" Isl. The going was about the same as yesterday and we used our skis all the way. At five ock. we reached the south end of "Bliss" Isl. Here the water extends all around the cape on the south side and thousands of birds were swimming around and we could hear thousands of others through the mist that hung around the cape. We stopped here and cooked coffee on the sledge. Crossing the sound over to the isl. where the cache is to be put down, we passed a low isl. which is not down on the map. We followed along the icefoot looking for the cache put down by Baldwin, but we could not find it and rounding the cape we found to our great surprise that the island ended here and turned off to north. By this time it had cleared up so that we could see across Allen Young Sound. There is open water around this cape and across the sound to Cape Taylor? There is some mistake on the map here. This isl. is made much larger on the map than it really is. There is lots of birds both in the rookery and in the water, and big flocks flying overhead, making an awful racket. It is calm and very warm. It was 9 ock. when we made camp here. There is plenty of seals along the sound on the ice, but they are very shy. Before we turned in we climbed the hill above here and had a good (look) over the surroundings. I shot two partridges and we heard some more at a distance. It was 1 ock. this afternoon when we lay down on our blankets for a sleep. At 7 p.m. we were awake again and had breakfast and cached the stuff. Our clothes bags we carried way up in good sheltered place out of sight for bears and where it can not be spoiled by rain. The pemmican and kerosene we piled up on the rocks on the low beach. The clothes bags are about 100 feet high. I shot a couple of sandpipers. We are getting ready to start.



June 9th-04 Thursday

At 1 ock. this morning we left camp. The weather was thick but not worse than we could travel. At 3 we left "Bliss" Isl. after having shot another pair of partridges. Mac killed a walrus but he sank. As we left the island behind it commenced to blow and drift and at times it became so thick that we could not see anything in any direction. The atmosphere was very raw and piercing. It was 4:45 when we arrived at "Brady" Isl. On the way we saw another bear. It was impossible to see Matilda Isl. or Alger Isl, but we kept on the drift getting worse. All of a sudden two bears appeared in front of us about 100 yards off. We stopped right off and waited. The dogs commenced to get uneasy and Start soon caught sight of them and let out a bark. That settled it. They swung right around and disappeared. Without any further trouble we reached the camp in a horrible storm at 7:30 this morning. The other men were sound asleep and the dogs did not stir. It was the most weather we have had for a long while. We made the 23 miles in 7 h. and 30 m. counting stops. Porter soon woke up and (the) steward was in a few minutes busy cooking some fish balls.

June 10th-04 Friday

The entrance to the house stuffed full of snow so hard we had to dig ourselves out this morning. It pretty fair weather today, still overcast. I fixed up my kayak a couple of ribs being broken. We got up had breakfast at 2 a.m. and turned in again, woke at 11 a.m.

June 11th-04 Saturday

We packed our kayaks today and expect to get away from here in a couple of days. Mac and I were out shooting birds a couple of hours.

June 12th-04 Sunday

Been packing sledges and kayaks today and are ready to leave tomorrow, weather permitting. Three bears visited the camp this morning and got away before we could get a good shot at them. Two seals showed up in the water close to the house. The game seems to be coming around when we are ready to get off. The temp. is +31. It has been snowing a little.

June 13th-04 Monday

Left Camp Ziegler at 9 this evening in a horrible fog. Before we ever got off the isl. we had to use the compass. We got off the trail and before long we found ourselves up at the mountains instead of the haystack where we intended to get off. After some trouble we found the trail and lost it again down on the ice. I put my skis on and finding the trail I managed to keep until "Brady" Isl. where we went into camp on the same place as before. It was then 12:45 the morning of June 14th-04 Tuesday. We had not been in camp many hours before it cleared up so that we could see all the surrounding islands. Two bears showed up during the night or rather day because we travel at night and sleep daytime as a rule. The going is fairly good but I don't think the ice will stay in here much longer. At 10:30 this evening we left "Brady" Isl. It was fair weather, a good fair wind blowing. As yesterday I took the lead on the skis. Before long we were surrounded by

(Fiala refers to the so-called partridges as ptarmigan)



heavy fog and the wind increased so that when we reached the isl. a regular blizzard was blowing. We had it on our back and it helped us considerably. Two bears passed us in the storm and were soon out of sight. At 12:15 the morning of June 15th-04 Wednesday we reached Bliss Isl. The ice in the channel west of "Bliss" Isl. is on the verge of breaking up. We crossed it and camped on this unknown island where Mac. and I laid down the cache at 1:45. The sea is going high outside here and we are afraid that the tent will not stand the wind. It is drifting and snowing hard too. The storm continued all day and our tent tore in several places so we had to patch it the best we could in the wind. The snow collected on it and melted and ran through down on us. In all we had a miserable time of it.

June 16th-04 Thursday

Better weather today. Rilliet fixed the tent. Mac and I dug out Baldwin's cache. Found 5 cases of emergency ration and a tin of " " coffee. The steward ( it is difficult to differentiate between Spencer Stewart and Bernard Spencer, the steward, as the reference on this trip is to "the steward") and I went out shot a few birds among them a "partridge". We had them for supper. Several light showers of rain in the evening.

June 17th-04 Friday

Just as we turned in yesterday afternoon it commenced to blow and has kept up with drift all night. At times it is raining and we have had it quite wet in the tent. My sleeping bag is soaked right through. It just occurs to me that when we get to Norway John and I will make a nice trip going down to see our relatives which have not seen before.

5 p.m. Have been in the bag all day. Miserable weather. Snowing and heavy wind from the N.W. The channel outside here is drifted full of ice. We are now trying to sleep.

June 18th-04 Saturday

Been out hunting birds in kayak and climbed for them in the mountains all day. We have had birds to eat for several days. Mac and I shot a big duck. The weather has been very good. We saw a partridge in the rocks. It is decided to leave here tomorrow, weather permitting. The temp was +26° this morning. The camp looks like a gypsy camp. All our clothes are hung out to dry in the sun.

June 19th-04 Sunday.

We had breakfast 9 this morning. The channel is clear of ice and we take the opportunity to get our equipment across. Of the three kayaks we made a catamaran lashing the sledges across them. Loaded with pemmican and lots of stuff four of us went over, leaving Rilliet in camp. It took us three hours and very hard paddling. After we had some coffee we started off again with 11 dogs 1 tent and sleeping bags and some more. It commenced to blow and brought up quite a sea which was washing all over us. We had to turn back and taking the catamaran apart we started out. Mac in one kayak, Stewart in another, and I in the third. We made the trip in 1:50. We made two more trips before we got it all over, taking dogs on the two small kayaks lashed together and towed by the big kayak. While Rilliet, Stewart, and Mac were taking over



the last load, Porter and I made a trip about a mile in on the ice with 11 dogs taking all the pemmican. We struck a lead and had to unload the sledge and lay it across and that way bring the pemmican over. It kept opening up while we were there. By this time it commenced to rain and the other men were a long time getting across. When they finally got over we loaded up and went up to the lead which we found passable a little ways from the place we put the pemmican. We went over and made camp on the other side. It was 4:30 (the 20th of June) when we finally turned in after nearly 20 hours hard work.

June 20th-04 Monday

At 3 p.m. we were ready to go again. The weather is quite good. We had a little rain during our sleep. The snow is soft but it is not so very deep. About a mile on the way we had to unload and take the stuff over a bridge made by the big kayak over a lead. It took us 1 hour. We met with several more of them but we managed to find places where we could get over without much trouble. It is awful hard skiing on this snow, but it is better than to march in the sludge. At 8 p.m. we crossed a lead close to the Island Hooker by dragging down a big flake of ice which enabled us to cross comparatively easy. At 9 we were safe in camp on the glacier. The sun is out nice now and it is very warm.

June 22nd-04 Wednesday

I have been in a miserable state ever since the day before yesterday not being able to do anything on account of snow blindness. It came on very sudden. The sun was not out, but I think the severe strain brought upon the eyes while I lead the caravan across the ice in the haze of the 20th must be the cause of it. / As I was not able to move around we were compelled to stay on the glacier. The 21st Porter Mac and the steward took a load up to the top of the island where Porter stopped, Mac and Stewart returning to camp from where we proceeded this morning with the rest. Porter joined us up on the top of the glacier from where we continued down the other side to "Rubini" Rock where we now are camping. The camp is pitched on the bare ground. There is thousands of birds here and amongst them several wild geese which we have been chasing all day. I shot a partridge and four auks. Mac saw a fox and found a walrus skull. In all it is a very interesting place. We have had very nice weather. The sun is out bright, not a cloud in the sky. My eyes are rapidly getting into shape again. The temp. is +39°.

June 23rd-04 Thursday

My eyes are in pretty good shape again and I am very glad of it. I don't want any more snow blindness, If I can help it. Also, this has been a perfect summer day, no wind and a clear sky. Mac and I went over to Cape Markham looking for game. There is none to see, except birds and them we can shoot anywhere now. We brought home about 15 guillemots and 7 auks. Porter brought home 25 auks so we have fresh meat for quite a while now. Rilliet has been hunting the geese again, but they are very shy. All we want is bear, walrus, or seal for our dogs and we will be well fixed to stay in this place for a couple of weeks. There seems to be fast ice over to Northbrook Island. The open water extends from Rubini Rock over to and around Scott Keltie Isl. The temp. is +40° tonight.



June 24th-04 Friday

It has been a little hazy today. The temp. about +40°. I was over to "Rubini" Rock this afternoon. I shot a walrus but he sunk as I had no harpoon with me. He was quite inquisitive, not more than two feet from me when I fired. Out on the ice a little ways from the shore I found a huge drift log of cedar wood. It looked very round and fresh. Later in the evening I climbed the mountain above the camp. Mac shot one of the geese using (a) slug which tore it all to pieces. Another fox was seen and some more partridge shot. That is number 11. Rilliet shot a lot of auks, and Mr. P. is working at his planetable as usual.

June 25th-04 Saturday

Mac and myself paddled over to Scott Keltie Isl. this afternoon after breakfast. We climbed the Isl. on the east side and walked across to the west. Nothing of interest over there. Several tracks of foxes and we were watching eagerly for the animal, but in vain. On the way over and back we shot a lot loons, auks, and guillemots and one glaucous gull. Rilliet was up on Rubini Rock and found part of a reindeer antler. The Rock is 587 ft. high. The sun has been out all day but it is blowing quite hard. Quite a few geese has been seen around here today. The temp. is about +40° and the wind east. It is 7 ock. the morning of June 26th when we turn in.

June 26th-04 Sunday

After breakfast Porter and Rilliet started over to Cape Albert Markham in order to do some planetable work. On the way across the bay Porter shot a walrus which brought us all to work, cutting up and sledging into camp. It was a big bull walrus and will supply us with dog food for our stay here. We had pancakes for breakfast and they certainly do taste delicious. To start----

June 27th-04 Monday

I went out hunting geese but as usual without luck. They are getting very shy. We had some walrus liver for supper. The weather is brilliant. It is 4 ock. the afternoon when we turn in.

June 28th-04 Tuesday

We have been trying out walrus blubber to grease our boots with. Porter baked some "bannocks" which tasted very good. They are made of flour, water, baking powder, and sugar. I went out geese hunting but got nothing but a few auks.

June 29th-04 Wednesday

Climbed Rubini Rock in company with Mac. The whole top of the rock is flat covered with big boulders and a lot of dry moss. On the west side there is a valley about 100 feet deep with running fresh water. Here we built a fire of moss, shot a few auks, and roasted them on the cleaning rod of Mac's gun. They went fine although we had neither salt or pepper. The temp. is +40°.

June 30th-04 Thursday

Turned out at six this morning, had a wash in the little stream, and then enjoyed myself building a fireplace for trying out the blubber. By nine the others were awake and we had breakfast consisting of pancakes and coffee. I baked some over the blubber fire using blubber instead of butter. Of course, they did not taste like the ones mother used to make, but at a pinch they can



be fixed that way. At 10 Porter and I went over to the cape on the other side of the bay. In crossing the glacier we had to cross hundreds of very bad crevasses, many as wide as 6-7 ft. in places. Without the skis it would have been impossible to travel here. On top of the glacier there was a good size pond several feet deep. At the foot of the inland cape or "nunatak" as the Esquimaux call them we were stopped by a dense fog. Waiting for it to lift, we waded round in the mud and were lucky enough to find a few fossils. After about an hours wait the fog cleared away a little and we started up the glacier, but were soon involved in thick fog which unabled us to see anything. Finally we reached the cape and to our astonishment it cleared up just enough to enable Porter to do his planetable work. At six we were back in camp hungry and tired. By 10 p.m. we had a good wind blowing and a shower of rain now and then. Turned in at 11 ock.

June 30th-04 Thursday

It has been blowing all last night and all day. We have been compelled to stay in our bags most of the time. In the afternoon I got out and started a good blubber fire and Porter cooked some bannocks over it.

We have been a little out of the reckoning, being a day ahead from the time we left Camp Ziegler.

Diary for July 1904 Anton M. Vedoe

July 1st Friday

The temp. went down to 0 last night. It is still blowing but the sun is out once in a while. We have decided to leave here and go south as soon as we get decent weather. To that end we hitched up 17 dogs and pulled a load of pemmican and the heaviest stuff up the glacier behind the camp and left it on top. It was only an hour's work. When back Rilliet had dinner consisting of fried walrus liver ready. The rest of the day we spent in the bag. The temp. is +39°. The wind is north.

July 2nd-04 Saturday

Left our camping ground at Rubini Rock 10 ock. this morning. After a lot of stops we reached the top of the top of the dome taking on the pemmican we hauled up yesterday, and by 1 ock. we were on the extreme top of "Hooker Island". From there we had a good view all around being reasonably clear, although it was overcast. We could see the "Haystack", "Spires", and McClintock Isl. in the north east and Cape "Flora", Camp Point in the south west. The going on the glacier was over expectations, few cracks and by using the skis we avoided sinking down in the deep snow. At 5:30 p.m. we reached what we think is "Old Depot" and camped on the bare ground. We spent a couple of hours after supper looking around for Jackson's boat and cache, but we did not find any. The ice along the shore looks very rotten and in several places it is gone altogether and down south of May and Etheridge IIs. the Barents Sea is open as far as the eye can see.

July 3rd-04 Sunday

Had breakfast at 10 this morning. It is raining and has been raining during the night. We probably will have to stay here today. It stopped raining in the afternoon and it was decided to pack up and go. At 3 ock. we left camp and entered the ice



below, wading up to our knees in snow and sludge. The first four hours our progress was slow on account of heavy fog which forced us to use the compass frequently and also the crossing of leads and avoiding water holes which were plentiful near the land. We took turns leading on skis. Our course was south west to west making considerable windings around hummocks and bad places of deep snow or water. Nearing Camp Point on crossing a lead we were fortunate enough to find a flake of ice waiting like a ferryboat for us on which we successfully landed the whole outfit on the other side, taking one sledge at the time. We all were soaking wet up to our knees all day. That is a usual thing in summer traveling over the ice. It is impossible to keep dry. It was 1 ock. the morning of the fourth of July when we finally after 10 hours hard and laborious travel landed on Camp Point. The dogs were utterly tired out and could scarcely have gone any farther. At four ock. we turned in. It was then blowing pretty hard.

July 4th-04 Monday

Had breakfast at 3 this afternoon. Took a walk over to the other side the point and had a look down the channel. Gunter Bay is not broken open and the ice seems to offer good going, although it is flooded. For supper we had pancakes and strawberries which later were taken along and saved for the occasion. It has been quite a nice day although foggy at times.

July 5th-04 Tuesday

We went to bed 3 ock. this morning and had breakfast 3 in the afternoon. The steward and Mack decided to leave for Cape Flora and left 4 ock. in a fog and a light south wind. Porter and I went over to the point and built a cairn and placed a note, inside it. There is a great fresh water lake on the plateau. It broke through the ice down this evening and sent a torrent of water sweeping down the side of the glacier and flooding the ice below. We went over and took some pictures of it. It is by far the biggest stream of water I have seen up here. The temp. went down to +31° this evening. The sun has been out and we had our bags and blankets out weathering them and cleaned the tent out.

July 6th-04 Wednesday

It has been foggy all day. The atmosphere being raw, wet, and disagreeable. We stayed in the tent all day. I shaved and had a good wash in the little brook floating by here. We are waiting for the sun to come out in order to get some work sights on Hooker Isl. and then we continue down to Cape Flora. Temp. +34°.

July 7th-04 Thursday

It cleared up about 4 ock. this morning which enabled Porter to finish up his planetable work and there is nothing that keeps us here any longer, except bad weather. We turned in at 8 a.m. and out 4 p.m. During the night it rained some, dripping through the silk down on our sleeping bags. Today it has been raining more or less all day. We have thrown our balloon cloth over the tent to prevent the rain leaking through. The temp is +34°.

July 8th-04 Friday

Very nice weather today. We left Camp Point at 7 this morning and reached the north side of Cape Flora at midnight. We rode on the sledges all the way, the dogs following the track made by the



steward and Mack. After supper we scurried around on the beach and followed up through the valley between Cape Gertrude and Flora way over to the other side the Isl. From there we could see "Elmwood". On the beach here we found parts of a skeleton whale, some driftwood, and a long fishing line weighted down with stones. The sun is out bright and clear, no wind and the temp. is +33°. It feels like life is worth living again after this spell of bad weather to see the sun out clear and warm. Porter got a midnight latitude which placed us at 79°59' N.L. It is 7 a.m. the 9th when we turn in.

July 9th-04 Saturday

Just as I lay down to sleep this morning Porter sighted a bear which brought us out again. We got our guns and waited for him to come within good range. The dogs caught sight of him and started to bark which made him turn and walk away. We fired and let "Start", Pal and "Jack" loose and ran after him and brought him down with a few shots. In the death struggle he caught Jack and pulled him down in a waterhole, but without injuring him. We hauled him up to camp, cut him up and fixed some steaks. It was a young one and very good meat. Turned in again at 11 a.m. Was roused out by the dogs again at 7 p.m. This time two dogs appeared in camp. Susie was one of. She is probably out on one of her usual tours like she did at Kane Lodge with "The Wolf". We chained them up and had breakfast. At 10:30 we left for "Elmwood" and arrived there by midnight. Everything is well here in one sense of the word. All well, plenty food, living in the houses and do plenty growling. We put up our tent, had some coffee and intend to stay up all night to make a day of it.

July 10th-04 Sunday

Stayed awake all day taking in the sights of the village. Visited Leigh Smith's house and prowled around in the rocks for a while. Mr. Fiala and the crew live in the log house occupied by Jackson in his stay here. The field party of eight men stay in the sectional house left here by the Duke of Abruzzi. The provisions are divided between the two parties and they do not seem to be on the best of terms with each other. Mr. Fiala intended to go up to Camp Abruzzi as soon as he came down here with a part of the dogs and then return but he was compelled to stay on account of the trouble seemed unavoidable if he left. The Captain and the First Mate are hated by everybody and the crew and field department are on the outs. Everything is rationed out.

July 12th-04 Tuesday

Last night just after we had fallen asleep we were roused out by the rocks falling down from the Cape and rolling down within a few feet of the tent. In getting out we tore the tent and had to fix it up today. It has been raining and foggy all day. Rilliet climbed the top of the Cape and planted a flag up there last night.

July 13th-04

Rilliet and I have decided to move in into the old galley. With help of the crew we moved it up out of the swamp below the house where it was placed to a dry place above the house. We worked



all the afternoon putting up bunks and table and got it so far advanced that we will be able to move in tomorrow.

July 14th-04

We moved in our house today and have occupied ourselves making chairs and fixing the inside up for our comfort.

July 15th-04 Friday

The sun has been out part of the day but the latter part of the afternoon the wind has blown in gusts very strong. The boys enjoyed themselves playing baseball. A bear was chased for a while by Dr. Vaughn and Butland, but got away. We have packed around our home turf and moss to keep the wind out as much as possible. Late in the evening the wind is stronger in squalls, and the ice is seen to move out about half a mile from shore.

July 16th-04 Saturday

Rain and bad weather all day. The ice is moving out and there is a very dark water sky in south. Helped Mr. Long with his tide gauge this morning. Been experimenting with alcohol for heating up our house. Porter had to evacuate the tent last night on account of the wind tearing it very badly.

July 17th-04 Sunday

Storming and raining all night. Butter was issued this morning. Also chocolate. Been occupied part of the day making an alcohol burner for heating purposes. In the afternoon I went up along the talus looking for fossils and found a few. Windy and raining all day.

July 18th-04 Monday

We made and put up a stove in our little house, the alcohol burner having proved a failure. In the evening I took a walk along the beach looking for fossils and collecting driftwood for our stove. The weather was fairly good all day, a little windy.

July 19th-04 Tuesday

Have had glorious weather today. The temp. went up to +54° at two o'clock. this afternoon in the shade. Rilliet and I climbed the mountain way to the top. A very hard and dangerous climb. We had to cut our way in the nearly perpendicular ice wall for long distance. From the top we had a good view in all directions. "Miers" Channel is clear of ice up to "Camp Point" and Gunter Bay is cleared out. The ice is closed in as far as we could see in all directions south, except outside "Bell Isl." We got back to camp at 12 m.n.

July 20th-04 Wednesday

Sugar and milk issued. Porter, Mac, and Butland shot two walrus today. The whaleboat was launched and the meat was taken to camp. Sergeant shot a bear making a good addition to our now scarce dogfood. The weather has been fine. The Commander asked us if we would not help Mr. Long with the tide obs. because Sergeant was short of foot gear so that he could not keep it up. We decided to help him out and will probably start in tomorrow night.

July 24th-04 Thursday

I took a bath and put on clean clothes today. The forenoon was nice and warm, but after noon it became thick and damp. Mr. Porter, Mac, and Butland went over to the point west of here with camping outfit on a business and pleasure trip as Mr. Porter termed it. Tonight we go on watch at the tide gauge, Rilliet and I taking half the night each.



July 22nd-04 Friday

I went on watch at 8 pm last night and off at 2 ock. this morning. Turned in and slept until 8 this morning when we had breakfast. Went to bed again and slept 'til 6 pm when we had supper. Mr. Fiala came up and gave us a talk complaining on the actings of his men. Mr. Porter and party shot two more walrus this evening. After supper Rilliet and myself took our stove down and made such alterations on it which enable us to cook our night lunch. Went on watch at 10 pm.

July 23rd-04 Saturday

Mr. Fiala issued an order concerning the hunting and saving of provisions in case we should have to stay here another year. He sent it over to the field dep. to read. They sent it back with Mr. Truden saying that they would not accept it. "A lot of indulgent children". Whoever heard of men saying they would not accept an order by their commander! The party at the point shot two walrus today. Went on watch at 10 pm. Washed some clothes. It commenced to blow from NE at 10:30 quite a storm with snow. The ice is moving out. The belt of ice is still hanging on to the shore. It reaches from beyond Cape Gertrude to Miers Channel and is about  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile wide.

July 24th-04 Sunday

On tide gauge observations.

July 25th-04 Monday

Washed some clothes. Tide gauge obs.

July 26th-04 Tuesday

Mr. Porter's party shot another walrus this evening. Tide gauge. The temp. at m.n. was  $+27^{\circ}$ .

July 27th-04 Wednesday

The ice has been in slight motion, but any large leads don't open up.

July 28th-04 Thursday

It has been raining most of day. The temp. is  $+36^{\circ}$  at midnight. We are anxiously watching for the relief ship, although what bothers me more than anything else is about John. On tide gauge obs.

July 28th-04 Thursday

Temp. at midnight  $+34^{\circ}$ . Dr. Vaughn shot two bears today. One walrus was killed at the point by the party stationed there. Rain all last night. On tide obs. during night.

July 29th-04 Friday

Temp. at midnight  $+35^{\circ}$ . On tide obs. during the night. The sun is coming out in the early morning. The wind has shifted to the NW. The ice is in slight motion. Rilliet and I visited the party at the point this morning. One dog was killed by the pack.

July 30th-04 Saturday

Temp. at midnight  $+32^{\circ}$ . A big seal was shot last night. I went over to the windy gully after my watch at the tide gauge was at an end this morning. I found a few fossils in a clay bank over there. While I was digging there the dogs chased up a fox family in some rocks on the opposite side. I took the gun and ran over and after a couple of hours hard labor I managed to capture two of the young ones. I strangled one so bad that he died, but the other I carried home tied up in my shirt. I gave him



the breast of a robber gull to eat and he ate it readily. He is about the size of a small cat and blue. The dogs caught a third one and tore him to pieces. Sun out all day.

July 31st Sunday

Temp. +31° at midnight. Tided gauge obs. Fixed up a box for the fox during the night and put a collar on him with a long light chain and put him up on the roof of our little house where he will be out of the way for the dogs. He is quite shy yet, but he eats and that is the main thing. I took a walk over to the gully before breakfast but did not see any game of any sort. The weather was fine. Sun out and I enjoyed it sitting down on a rock smoking a cigarette while my dogs were playing around me. No ship in sight yet.

August 1904

August 1st-04 Monday

It has been drizzling and damp all night. The temp. was +29° at midnight.

Aug. 2nd-04 Tuesday

Temp. at midnight 30.5°, blowing and snowing. It is really miserable weather. My spare time I devote to my fox who is getting along nicely. He is less scared every day. He sits outside of his cage and looks at the dogs below him. I climbed the talus this morning and stole a few young kittiwakes out of the nests. I have tried to give him seal and bear meat. He drags it into the box but does not eat anything but birds, even cooked.

August 3rd-04 Wednesday

Temp. at midnight +34°. Raining and storming all night. Montrose, Hudgins, and Beddow have moved down to the point with tent and cooking outfit in order to assist Mr. Porter handling the boat while hunting. They caught a seal last night. Montrose was just up here to borrow one of our oilskins to keep the rain which leaks through the tent from soaking through the sleeping bags. Hudgins is cook and has a good chance to show his reputation of being the best "stokehold cook" on the coast of America. The fox looks like a drowned rat. There he is sitting on the roof in the rain. The wind is S.E. and although pretty strong it does not seem to affect the ice any. The fast ice is fast melting away and I expect it to move out any day now.

Aug. 4th-04 Thursday

A snow storm has been raging all night and continues. The wind is north. Everything is covered white and looks as if the winter was here. The temp. at midnight was +32°. Taking the tide observations every night. It is a nasty job at times. We take the readings every hour and every ten minutes for an hour or two at high and low tide. Turn in at 12:30 pm. When we turn out again at 9 the storm is over. A light north wind makes it feel a little colder than usual. It is clear and a few open spaces are visible out on the horizon, but the ice does not seem to be able to move a great distance. There must be a considerable pack outside this year. The men are talking about staying another year. The temp. is +29° at 8 pm.

Aug. 5th-04 Friday

Had to climb the talus after some more chicken for the fox. He seems to have very good appetite. From the top of the talus I scanned the horizon for a ship but none in sight. There is quite a little open water in all directions. It commenced snowing



again at 3 this morning and the wind shifted over to the east. Temp. was  $+28^{\circ}$  at midnight. The party at the point chased some walrus but did not kill any this morning. Mac. says that he saw the smoke of a steamer early this morning from up on the talus.

Aug. 6th-04 Saturday

It is raining and blowing and general miserable weather and it never seems to stop. The wind is east, thick and foggy so that we can not see the ice edge. The temp. at midnight was  $+34^{\circ}$ . The fox is getting a little tamer every day. I took him in my lap without him growling. His appetite is good and he seems to get along first rate. It stopped raining at 3 a.m. The sun came out and it cleared up nicely. Taking advantage of the weather I made a trip over to the "Windy Gully", climbed the mountain opposite "Cape Flora" and had a very pleasant time. I climbed the highest peak and sat down there watching the flocks of little auks flying around and the dogs chasing around looking for foxes. I did not see any this time but I caught a few young auks in the nest, or rather rocks because they do not make any nest, they simply lay their eggs in small cracks in the rocks. The "Loons" lay their eggs on the edge of the rock with no sign or nest or any kind of protection. The guillemots lay theirs in cracks same as the auks. The "Kittiwakes" build a very nice nest on the lower part of the rocks, just about from ten to twenty feet from the top of the talus.

The snow bunting makes a neat little nest in the sand on the talus. The "Robber Gull" simply drops its eggs in the sand on the low beach. The "Sandpiper"---

Aug. 7th-04 Sunday

The temp. was  $+34^{\circ}$  at midnight. Had good weather all day. They caught a young walrus and killed a big one at the point. The young one was brought to camp but they had to kill him as it is no way of keeping such an animal alive. It requires motherly care and milk. The wind is south east. The ice seems to be packing in solid as far as we can see. Mr. Long went up on the talus tonight and he said that as far as he could see with the glasses there was nothing but ice in all directions.

(End of book 11)

August 8th-04 Monday

Temp. at midnight was  $+37.5^{\circ}$ . Has been blowing quite hard during the night, but the wind is dry and refreshing. We had shrimps for night lunch but they did not seem to agree with our taste, so we gave them to the dogs. The fox ate 4 birds tonight and he is livelier than usual. At 9 o'clock this morning the wind shifted from the east over to the south west and it commenced to snow. It became so strong that I had to go up and nail the fox's cage down on the roof for fear it would blow down. The Commander is getting ready for a trip over to Cape Barent where he intends to put up a signal for the relief ship in case it would not be able to make Cape Flora as it is now completely blocked by ice.



Aug. 9th-04 Tuesday

Snow and rain. The temp. was  $+35^{\circ}$  at midnight. No change in the condition of the ice. The first young loons are out practicing with their mothers in the art of swimming. I took my fox out to the brook and gave him a good bath although he did not like it evidently. There was a bear out on the ice this afternoon but it was impossible to get at him on account of the ice being pretty well melted away and not enough water for a kayak.

Aug. 10th-04 Wednesday

The night is calm and clear. The temp. is  $+28.5^{\circ}$  at midnight. Mr. Fiala and Duffy with canoe, sledge, and four dogs left for Cape Barents last night. The boys were out shooting loons in the water and got quite a few. The young ones are coming about rapidly. The ice is packed in close. The whole colony was affected by stomach trouble last night. The steward says it was caused by some new potatoes which we were not used to. At 2 a.m. I went over to windy gully. Found a few fossils. Got back by 9 a.m. Mr. Porter has adopted a new method of catching loons. He uses a long bamboo pole with a hook shaped somewhat like a fish hook attached to it by which pulls the birds off the rocks. He caught about a dozen in that manner this evening.

Aug. 11th-04 Thursday

Temp. at midnight  $+35^{\circ}$ . Clear and calm. The ice is moving out a little. At 8 this morning the temp. was  $+46^{\circ}$ . They shot a walrus at the point this evening.

Aug. 12th-04 Friday

It has been raining and blowing during the day. The latter part of the night we have had nice weather. At midnight the temp. was  $+38^{\circ}$ . The wind is east. I have been up in the rookery all morning. Caught half a dozen "Kittiwakes" and one loon's egg for the fox.

Aug 13th-04 Saturday

Temp. at midnight  $+36^{\circ}$ . Rain and blowing quite hard. East wind. Gave "Mangly" a bath this afternoon. The belt of (ice) which has so stubbornly clung to the shore, broke through today. Dr. Vaughn and Leroyer has taken camping outfit and moved over to Cape Gertrude for the purpose of hunting seal.

Aug 14th-04 Sunday

Mr. Fiala and Duffy came back yesterday. They have not seen the ship and have had a very hard trip. Shot one bear. I went up on top of the cape this morning. The weather was brilliant and I had a good view over the ice which is packed in tight all around to the horizon. About 700 feet up on the talus I came across a small seam of coal and took a sample down to try it. It burned very good although it is mixed with some clay. The sun has been out all day and the temp. about  $+45^{\circ}$ .

Aug. 15th-04 Monday

Another fine day. Temp.  $+35^{\circ}$  at midninght. Went up after a bag of coal this morning and has been burning it most of the day and tonight.

Aug. 16th-04 Tuesday

Temp. at midnight was  $+34.5^{\circ}$ . Sun is out and very clear. After breakfast we went over to see the party at the point. They



From the "National Geographic Magazine"- October 1904

THE ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION

The auxiliary steamer FRITHJOF, of the Ziegler Polar Expedition, in command of W.S. Champ, has returned to Norway after two unsuccessful attempts to reach Franz Josef Land, owing to the almost unprecedented heaviness of the ice Mr. Champ saw no traces of Captain Fiala's party. The latter are amply supplied with provisions, etc.; so that no anxiety is felt on their being compelled to spend a second winter in the north. The FRITHJOF reached latitude 79 degrees 11 seconds which is within 40 miles of Cape Flora. Mr. Champ says in a letter to the National Geographic Society, which it will be remembered has a special representative with expedition in the person of W.J. Peters, of the U.S. Geological Survey, who is second in command and director of the scientific work of the party:

"In accordance of with the plan of the expedition, Mr. Fiala was to put down signals for us at this cape (Flora) on his northward voyage last year and again this past spring. It was also included in the plan to send down a light sled party with full information as to where the AMERICA wintered and what had been accomplished during the winter and the first part of the spring. Unfortunately, as above stated, we were unable to connect with this party or reach land. A most careful watch was kept aboard the FRITHJOF both night and day for any trace or sign of the expedition, but nothing whatever was found during the entire period which we spent in the ice.

"I have every reason to believe that the AMERICA reached Franz Josef Land last year, that winter quarters was established and that the sledge journey was made in this spring. Of course, I have not absolute knowledge that such was the case, but am strongly convinced that the original plans have been carried out.

"We have no anxiety as to the welfare of the men other than the natural chances that all explorers take in such a perilous undertaking. The expedition has been thoroughly equipped and has an abundance of food. In addition to what they carried last year, they have additional large stores to fall back on in case of necessity in several camps or depots in Franz Josef Archipelago. In addition to the food, they are throughly equipped to kill game, which abound in that country during certain periods of the year.

"All the mail sent to the members of the expedition, and which was carried by the writer, has been place in hermetically sealed tins and deposited on the Tromsoe Private Bank.

"It is Mr. Ziegler's intention to send out a strong vessel next year for the purpose of continuing the work and reaching the members now in the field."



are getting along very nicely. They have things rigged up like an Eskimo's village. They have shot 6 seals and one bear at the other camp at Cape Gertrude. Mr. Spencer shot about 100 loons these last few days.

Aug. 17-04 Wednesday

Calm and partly overcast. The temp. at midnight was  $+34.5^{\circ}$ . Brought another bag of coal down from the mine this morning. It is turning out better deeper in. Mr. Spencer shot a big seal. It sank in low water and he was harpooned on the bottom and taken out.

Aug. 18th-04 Thursday

Temp. at midnight was  $+39^{\circ}$ . It has been raining during the day. The men have cut out about a ton of coal up at the mine. I went up there early this morning. No sign of any greater movement in the ice and no ship. I begin to fear that we are here for another year and preparations will have to be done for the coming dark winter. It is about time for Mr. Peters party to turn up here now. Mr. Fiala says that he told him to go to Camp Ziegler if he, Mr. P., found it impractical to reach Cape Flora before the 15th of Aug. and he would come up with the ship and fetch him down. Mr. Fiala also says that he did not intend to keep the ship here any longer than to the 15th of Aug. It is absolutely impossible for me to understand how he can make such statements not knowing what time the ship would reach here. As it is the time is already expired. Nor can I understand why he does not look for the ship at other points, seeing impossible for a ship to get up here. It might possibly have gotten through to the eastward at Cape Dillon or that neighborhood and might possibly have reached Camp Ziegler.

Aug. 19th-04 Friday

Tide gauge obs.

Aug. 20th-04 Saturday

Rain and windy. Temp. at midnight  $+31^{\circ}$ . Tide gauge obs. The men are working the coalmine.

Aug. 21st-04 Sunday

The night has been rather chilly. A strong E. wind blowing. The temp. sank down to  $+28.5^{\circ}$  at 8 ock. in the morning. At 6 this evening the wind shifted over to the north west and drove the ice out to sea a couple of miles.

Aug. 22cnd-04 Sunday

The temp. at midnight was  $+30.5^{\circ}$ . Wind N.E. at the rate of 30 m. an h.

Aug 23rd-04 Tuesday

N.W. wind at the rate of 30-40 miles and hour. The temp. at midnight was  $+35^{\circ}$ . About 7 ock. this morning it calmed down. The sun came out and it is very pleasant weather. Climbed the top of the cape in the morning. No water to be seen in any direction. Miers Channel is partly free from ice. After lunch I went up to the coalmine and carried down a bag of coal.

Aug. 24th-04 Wednesday

Clear and calm all night. Temp. at midnight  $+25.6^{\circ}$ . The sun is down quite low at nights now and it is getting chilly. Mr. Porter's party moved in last night. They killed a big bull walrus. Brilliant weather all day. Temp. at noon  $+44^{\circ}$ .



Aug. 25th-04 Thursday

Another day of fine weather. Temp. at midnight  $+25^{\circ}$ . A bear was killed by Burns. Mr. Fiala is getting ready to leave for Camp Abruzzi by the 10th of Sept. He asked if I like to go up there. I answered that I found it my duty to find out what has become of John and if he does not appear here, I will have to go north again.

Aug. 26th-04 Friday

The night has been cool with some west wind. The temp. at midnight was  $+26^{\circ}$ . It is partly clouded over. Temp. at noon  $+29^{\circ}$ . East wind latter part of day and evening.

Aug. 27-04 Saturday

Temp. is steady at  $+27^{\circ}$  all night. East wind 30 miles an hour. The sun is trying now and then to look out through the scattered clouds.

Aug 28th-04 Sunday

Temp. at midnight  $+31^{\circ}$ . A light east wind is blowing. Clearing up in east promising a good day.

Aug. 29th-04 Monday

Temp. at midnight  $+24.5^{\circ}$ . Light east wind. The moon was out during the night. Later in the day it commenced to breeze up and some snow is falling. The men are bringing the coal to camp. They are using dog teams hauling the sledges over the rocks. They have got about 6 tons down from the mine and intend to cut out that much more.

Aug. 30th-04

The temp. at midnight  $+20^{\circ}$ . No time during the day did it rise above  $+25^{\circ}$ . It began snowing at 6 this morning and kept up all day. All the running water is froze and we have to melt ice again. During last week most of the loons have disappeared, probably gone south. The kittiewakes are having the field to themselves now.

Aug. 31st-04

The temp. was  $+31^{\circ}$  at midnight. fog and windy. Mr. Peters, Tafel, and John arrived hereat 12:40 this morning. They looked like chimney sweeps, black from coal oil smoke. They left Camp Point at noon yesterday, just packing on their backs blankets and a few small articles. Their stock of provisions consisted of 5 biscuits and a handful of chipped beef. The rest of the outfit they had left at Camp Point. The 8th of July they left Camp Ab. in the Indian canoe, no dogs or sledge travelling down the British Channel to Eaton Island at which place they stayed for 3 weeks waiting for the ice to open. Finally they had to leave across the pack which took them six days of hard work. They brought us the sad news of the Norwegian fireman Sigurd Myhre's death which occurred the 16th of May. He was buried the 20th on the hill above the observatory. The remaining party are all in good health.

September 1904

Cape Flora, Northbrook Island

Sept. 1st-04 Thursday

Temp. at midnight  $+28^{\circ}$ . It is blowing on hard S.E. wind and heavy snow. I took the last tide observations at 12 midnight.



Went up to the coal mine after a bag of coal. It is a very dangerous job now. The whole talus is iced over and I took long slides, dropping the bag which rolled down and was torn to rags when I picked it up.

Sept. 2nd-04 Wednesday

Mr. Fiala decided that Mr. Rilliet and I are to stay down here and we intend to fix this shack up for winter quarters.

Sept 3rd-04 Thursday

Snow and rain. Made two trips over to the point with one of the horses and brought back lumber for fixing up the house of ours. Also brought up about 30 bags of reindeer moss to pack around the house and put up a frame about 15 in. outside the walls all around it.

Sept 4th-04 Sunday

Temp. last night was  $+26^{\circ}$ . During the day it has been down to  $+22^{\circ}$ . Blowing and drifting quite hard. 5 seals were killed. No work.

Sept. 5th-04 Monday

The N.W. wind continues with snow. Hauling and filling for house.

Sept. 6th-04

Sept. 7th-04 Wednesday

No wind all day. Temp  $+22^{\circ}$  mean. It is quite disagreeable to work in the wind. We have been hauling up a lot of turf for filling. It is quite dark at midnight now.

Sept. 8th-04 Thursday

Calm and clear. Working on the house. Two schools of walrus floated by this morning. Two was killed.

Sept 9th-04 Friday

Working on the house all day.

Sept 10th-04 Saturday

We got our storehouse finished tonight. It was decided that I shall go with Mr. Fiala to Camp Abruzzi today. It has been fair weather.

Sept. 11th-04 Sunday

The temp. went down to  $+15^{\circ}$ . N.W. wind, a little snow. I have been packing and getting ready my outfit for the trip north.

Sept 12th-04 Monday

N.W. wind. The temp. is  $+17^{\circ}$ . I went up on the glacier this morning to see about the ice condition in Miers Channel. There is open water as far as Camp Point and from there on the British Channel is full of ice. John is going to take my place with Rilliet in our little house when I leave. Took down one of Long's tide gauges today which was frozen in down at the beach. The young ice will carry a man now.

Sept. 13th-04 Thursday

Some snow has been falling. The temp. is \_\_\_\_\_. Wind N.W. John and I climbed up to the coal mine and brought down 2 bags of coal.

Sept. 14th-04 Wednesday.

Snow, the temp. is  $+31^{\circ}$ .

Sept. 15th-04 Thursday

North west wind, some snow.

Sept. 16th-04 Friday

It was agreed today that Mr. Peters and I will start for



"Camp Abruzzi" tomorrow with 5 dogs, sled, 20 days provisions and the canoe left at Camp Point by Mr. Peters. Rations were weighed out and a tent put in order this afternoon. If the weather permits, we will leave after breakfast in the morning for "Camp Point" and there wait for a chance to cross "De Bruyne Sound" over to "Eaton Island" where Mr. Peters will take some of his notes along.

Sept. 17th-04 Saturday

North west wind with drift. Are not going to start until Monday.

Sept. 18th-04 Sunday

Fine weather. The sun is out and so are most of the men in camp. John, Rilliet, and I walked around through the gully.

Sept. 19th-04 Monday

The temp. was  $+14^{\circ}$  when we left the camp after noon. Mac. was added to our party with a second sled and dog team. Duffy and John followed us to Camp Point with food for our possibly stay there until the ice gets in shape to travel on. Mr. Fiala followed part of the way. It was 6 p.m. when we made camp in the draw on the other side Cape Gertrude. The night is calm.

Sept. 20th-04 Tuesday

It was quite cold when we got out this morning at 5 o'clock. About 7:30 we started again climbing the steep glacier and continued along the west side of the isl. pretty well up on the side of the glacier, about 500 ft. After 5 hours work we arrived in good order at the point. We had some drift and thick fog on the way. There is quite a little open water along the shore.

Sept. 21st-04 Wednesday

The ice is joined tight in on the point today and the channel is full. The sun is out and a light breeze is blowing from the west. We are not to start out today. Mr. Peters will wait until the ice freezes together.

Sept. 22nd-04 Thursday

John and Duffy left this morning for "Cape Flora" with four dogs. We found we need more dogs for our sledges so we took three dogs out of Duffy's team. The weather is brilliant. Mr. Peters and I followed them up on top of the glacier and saw them disappear over the crest just as the sun came out. Mac and I have been investigating the young ice. It is about 4 in. thick in some places. The ice in the channel is moving about rapidly. We will wait until it gets settled.

Sept. 23rd-04 Friday

A hard north west wind blowing. The channel is clear of ice. The temp. is almost zero. Our bags were drifted over with wetting snow this morning.

Sept. 27th-04 Tuesday

We left Camp Point at 9 this morning. The sound is almost unchanged, just a few small leads have opened up. The first 5 miles we reeled off nicely, but after that the progress was hindered by a lot of small leads opening up which we lost a lot of time in crossing. The ice is mostly young, some only 3" thick. The sledges drag very hard on the salt snow and the dogs are doing hard work considering that it is two days since they were fed. At 5 p.m. we made camp about 7 miles from Eaton Isl. on a big flow. Soon after it breezed up from S.W., quite strong too.



Sept. 28th-04 Wednesday

On the ice flow. A storm with drift blowing all last night. The ice is working all around us. At 3 this morning we had to get out, break camp and haul off to the other end of our flow. Some big bergs were drifting swiftly down on us, as we thought, but when it cleared up for a few minutes we found that we were drifting north rapidly and were just passing Eaton Isl. on the east side. As it was we just cleared the icebergs and continued drifting toward "Scott Keltie Isl." We slept little as now all time keeping sharp lookout for an opportunity to reach land. At 9 ock. we broke camp again and made a regular racetrack of our flow trying to find a place to get off, but impossible. We were surrounded by grinding masses of ice in all directions, so we finally made camp again, cooked some pemmican and then sat huddled up for about five hours in our shaking tent reflecting over our gloomy prospects, smoking tea cigarettes. Once more in the afternoon we broke camp trying to cross over to Scott Keltie Isl. or Dundee Point, but after three hours fruitless work we had to give it up and come back to our flow which now is drifting south slowly as the wind is changing over to N.W. It is drifting horrible and the wind is threatening to tear our tent to pieces. 9 p.m.- The wind has stopped. The moon is out and shines brightly on the water glittering like black diamonds. We are drifting south again much to our discouragement. We drink a cup of tea by the light of a candle which adds to the gloominess of our situation.

Sept 29th-04 Thursday

At four ock. this morning we were on the go after an hasty ; breakfast. The wind has been blowing from west all night and we were rapidly drifting south just passing Dundee Point. We agreed that the only thing we could do was to try for that place as being the nearest about three miles. Leaving our flow we crossed some bad places and only by quick movements managed we to gain foot after foot in the moving ice where leads were opening and closing in rapid succession. When a mile from shore we had to unleash the boat and make three trips across a lead in order to save the outfit from drifting out to sea. The wind was strong and it was hard work. Well over the lead we were on more solid ice and reached the shore after two hours work. We enjoyed ourselves baking pancakes. After supper we gathered up some driftwood and made a dandy log fire over which we dried our clothes and cooked some tea.

Sept. 30th-04 Sunday(Friday)

We left Dundee Point this morning and ascended the glacier in easterly direction. Nearing the top we got into a thick fog bank and were finally compelled to camp about 1000 ft. over sea level.

Oct. 1st-04 Saturday

Very thick all day. We have been wandering around in the fog for 7 hours trying to find a place where to descend, but we had to give it up. It is useless work in this kind of weather. We camp tonight on the backbone of the island in the neighborhood of the northern point.

Oct. 2nd-04 Sunday

Stormy all day. Could not leave the tent. South east wind.



Oct. 3rd-04 Monday

Our tent was torn last night in several places by the violent wind last night. It is still foggy. The wind is dying out. Mac and I took our skis and a long rope and went down the east slope in search for the place where we came up last June. After three hours work we found the place and returned. The fog is intense and we had to work our way slowly by compass. It is the only place along the east coast where we can descend and we were glad to find it in the same state as last summer. As soon as we got back we broke camp and went down there in an hour's time. Our clothes are soaking wet so is tent and sleeping bags. The temp. is very high it seems. The sound is full of ice and a very dark cloud is hanging over it.

Oct 4th-04 Tuesday

Snow and fog. Busied ourselves repairing our tent, boots, and other paraphernalia. The atmosphere is very damp and disagreeable. Hardly any wind.

Oct. 5th-04 Wednesday

Thick fog and high temperature keep us from moving. Repairing tents and done some skiing in the hill above.

Oct. 6th-04 Thursday

The same high temp. The ice in the sound is very thin and soft. Two days of good cold weather will fix it so that we can travel on it. We intended to go over to the R. Society Islands, but we gave it up on account of the deep snow and sludge along the glacier. There is a fast belt right across from Hooker Isl. to the R.S.I. which we intended to cross.

Oct. 7th-04 Friday

The temp. is about freezing. Calm. Mac and I went down on the ice and followed the edge for about two hours. Three dogs followed us. We killed a big seal but as we could not reach him, Mac started out after him on a piece of ice, paddling with a ski. He got out there easy enough with the tide, but when he started for the fast ice with the heavy seal on board it proved too much for him. He drifted farther out, the harder he worked. He let go the seal, but even then he had no power over the current. It commenced to get dark and his situation was very bad. I told him to keep working against the current while I would run back to camp and bring the canoe down. I was just skiing along as fast as I could when I heard him holler that he was getting nearer. And so he was. The current seemed to change course and he was slowly gaining ground and after a good hour's work he got in to the edge completely played out and wet up to his knees. In the meantime two of the dogs, "Nansen" and "Paul", had disappeared. We turned back knowing that (they) would come back after a few hours stroll.

Aug. 8th-04 Saturday

Calm, the temp. about 0. "Nansen" and "Paul" have not returned. Wonder what they are up against now? We found it best to make a move as the weather does not seem to change any. We brought the whole outfit down to the water, put the canoe in with all our stuff in it. Mac and I took the dog teams and sledges along the the edge while Mr. Peters paddled the canoe along. All went well



for a couple of miles when it got thick and indications of wind. We were thus compelled to make the glacier again and were lucky to find a place close by where we could haul up with a little cutting. On the way we noticed some fresh bear tracks and tracks after the two missing dogs, but did not see anything of the dogs.

Oct. 9th-04 Sunday

Snowing and blowing from south. We were waked up by dog's bark last night and I recognized Nansen's bark. This morning they came back about 9 o'clock., both sound. The wind changed to the east in the evening.

Oct 10th-04 Monday

The wind changed around to west during night and brought the temp. down below zero. The channel is full of ice and is freezing together fast.

Oct. 11th-04 Tuesday

We crossed over to R.S.I. today. Just as we got down on the ice it commenced to work and open up leads. We crossed two of them. The first one took 4 hours on account of the freezing sludge which was packed tight to a thickness of a foot. The ice was all young and in places very wet and soft. The sledges broke through several times. We were all down to our waist several times. It took us nine hours to cross the distance only being about 4-5 miles. It was dark when we got to the beach and very hard to pick the way. Turned in at 10 o'clock. The temp. is quite high tonight.

Oct. 12th-04 Wednesday

Drifting with south wind started this morning and turned into a bad storm. Our tent was blown down and torn badly. (Found out afterward that the temp. was +9° in the morning and +31° at night.) We had to build a 5 ft. wall of snow blocks before we could raise it again and we were then wet right through. The snow was wet turning into rain later in the afternoon, wetting through the tent and sleeping bags and made us feel miserable.

Oct. 13th-04 Thursday

Calm and partly clear. We had the most miserable night of whole trip last night in our wet bags. It took us a long while to dig tent and sledges out before we could make move today. We tried to round the N.E. corner but we had to go back and round the south side and made camp building a 4 ft. wall all around the tent. We saw a fox. Allen Young Sound is all clear of ice again. The ice is fast between here and Jackson Isl.

Oct. 14th-04 Friday

It must be below zero now. We had a miserable night of it last night. Our bags froze stiff and all our clothes the same way. It is quite clear and no wind. We crossed over to "Jackson" Isl. without trouble and camped. The sound is full of ice again but it is moving about rapidly. We made chase after a bear but he ran off as soon as he saw us. Mack and I started after him with "Start" and "Nansen" while Mr. Peters was up on the glacier finding out the conditions for travel on the other side toward "Brady" Is. I never seen a bear so starved (scared?) in all my life. He was coming down from "Allen Young" Sound down the channel. I led the dogs sneaking behind the hummocks. He was traveling at good rate and had to run hard, intending to cut him off. I hadn't



well gotten out on the smooth ice before he stopped for a moment, sighted us and started down towards "Hooker Isl." at full speed. I didn't want to risk the dogs so I let him go. It would have been fruitless even if we had caught, it would have been so late that we could not have found our way back. We returned to camp and arrived at the same time as Mr. Peters. He reported the ice on other side out of question for travel all broken up, and said the best we could do would be to go back to "Society Isl." from from where we could have a good view of the sound.

Oct. 15th-04 Saturday

Weather fair, freezing. We decided to make a try crossing the sound. Packed up and started out, but we hadn't got far before we were in the midst of moving ice and changing course we followed the edge of the water and crossed over to----

Oct. 31st-04 Monday

Drifting with east wind. Kept night watch last night in order to give room for the travelers to get a chance to have a good rest in the house.

Nov 1st-04 Tuesday

Storm still keeping on with heavy drift. The temp.  $-11^{\circ}$ . Getting things in shape to leave as soon as it stops.

Oct. (Nov.) 2nd-04 Wednesday

East wind with drift.

Oct. (Nov.) 3rd-04 Thursday

Drift and bad weather. Getting things ready to leave tomorrow. Rilliet and Mac stay here.

Oct. (Nov) 4th-04 Friday

East wind and drift prevent us from leaving. Tonight it is calm and a beautiful aurora lights up the southern heavens.

The temp. is  $-5^{\circ}$ .

Nov. 5th-04 Saturday

Temp.  $-20^{\circ}$ , calm. We left Camp Ziegler at 9 this morning. My dog Paul did not show up and was left behind. He has been away 4 days. There is five dogs left with Rilliet and Mac. The weather was excellent and we made good time over the hard packed snow. Mr. Peters was leading up to the time we passed North Isl. From there he had to ride on account of some illness. Traveled on to Cape Trieste and got there by 10 at night. It was quite dark and hardly possible to detect the cape at a distance of 100 yards.

Nov. 9th-04 Wednesday

The temp. was  $-19^{\circ}$  this morning at 8 ock. when we left "Kane Lodge". The going was excellent and the sky clear. The water holes were open at the coal isl., but we got through with some difficulty. Arrived at Kuhn Isl. 2 p.m. Temp.  $-21.5^{\circ}$  tonight.

Nov. 10th-04 Thursday

Min. temp.  $-21.5^{\circ}$  last night.  $-13^{\circ}$  this morning and tonight. We left Kuhn Isl. 9:15 with fine going up to the time we passed Stoliczka Isl., but from there we had the most miserable kind of screwed up ice over which we made but little progress and had to go into camp 1:15 p.m., it being so dark we could not see 50 steps ahead of us.



Nov 11th-04 Friday

The temp. was  $-10^{\circ}$  this morning. We broke camp at 8:15 and marched until 12:45. The ice was the worst and it was very dark all the time. We could not see land at any time. We think we are situated at the entrance of the channel between Alex. Land and "Rainer Isl." The temp. is tonight  $-4^{\circ}$ , wind N.E.

Nov. 12th-04 Saturday

The temp.  $-7^{\circ}$  this morning,  $-6^{\circ}$  tonight. N.E. wind with drift. Very dark all day. Have been traveling a few hours. Do not know just where we are.

Nov. 13th-04 Sunday

The temp.  $-17^{\circ}$  this morning and  $-22^{\circ}$  tonight. The wind stopped towards morning and it cleared up so that we were able to see a little. Rainer Isl. stood up against the sky in the east and in the N.W. the glacier face of Alex. I. showed up like a white line. We broke camp at 8:00 and had smooth going up to Coburg Isl. which place we reached and camped on at 12 noon. The stars shown bright and we could see the faint outline of Rudolph Isl. against the sky in the north.

Nov. 14th-04 Monday

Temp. this morning  $-19^{\circ}$  and  $-11^{\circ}$  tonight. Left Coburg Isl. this morning and camp on Hohenloe Isl. this evening. Too dark to go any farther.

Nov 15th-04 Tuesday

North west wind blowing, Cloudy and very dark. Temp.  $+9^{\circ}$ .

Nov 16th-04 Wednesday

Still blowing a good breeze from north west. The daylight is about all gone now and we are waiting for the moon to make its appearance and clear matters up a little. It seems quite cold today.

Nov. 17th-04 Thursday

Too dark to travel. It is very hideous today. Still like this for so long a time.

Nov. 18th-04 Friday

The temp. is  $-24^{\circ}$ . Caught a glimpse of the moon tonight. It cleared up a little overhead but it is still very dark.

Nov. 19th-04 Saturday

Temp.  $-26^{\circ}$ . Calm. It cleared up nicely during the day and the moon came out about 4 o'clock. afternoon. Mr. Fiala decided to leave at 8 o'clock. when it would be pretty light if the weather keeps clear.

Nov 20th-04 Sunday

Arrived at Camp Abruzzi 3:15 this morning. Left Hohenloe Isl. at 8 last night in brilliant moonlight which enabled us to travel quite fast through the quite rough ice over to Cape Brorak at which place we ascended the glacier jutting out on the north side of the Cape. The ice along the shore was screwed up in a horrible state and we had to cut our way through. After reaching the top of the glacier back of Cape Auk we descended slowly around the bay and about a mile from the house we were hailed by a light from the house and soon the dogs came running up the slope causing our dog teams to dash off in wild disorder. We had to jump off for fear they might go over the side of the glacier. Nothing happened and we caught them tugging in the traces while the sledges had come to a stop on the rocks below the house. Everybody here



is in good health and comfortably fixed for the winter. They were very much surprised to see anybody up here so late. The light we saw was burning on top of the roof and was kept burning day and night for possible arrivals.

(This ends the journal section of the 12th book. In addition this book contains a journal of July 1 through 14, 1093 written in Swedish. A translation of this will appear elsewhere. Also, dated Nov. 21, 1903 titled, "Day of S.Y. AMERICA Shipwreck". This will be found on page 73. The following, a memo from brother John is also in this book;

To take down south for John

Bugle [1]

Webster's Acad. Dictionary [2]

Hindeman's Navigation [3]

"W Hanff"- See Mr. Peters [4]

Fur pants-See Myers [5]

Father's photograph [6]

Black trousers and barrem [7 and 8]

Also please carry my diary [9], if possible photographs [10] from Eaton Island through.

Perhaps you can't take all of this, but anyway please try to take numbers 2, 6, and 9. Help yourself to clothing in my storage (barrem).)

Jan 1st-05 Sunday

Everything quiet. N.E. wind. A band of aurora streaks across the heavens from E. to west through zenith. The temp. is max. -35.3, min. -39.9°. One of the dogs that were lost on the bear hunt last Sunday appeared at camp today very much stowed. Wyckoff, one of the best dogs was found killed in the passageway..

Jan. 2nd-05 Mond.

Repairing cookers. Had a splendid New Year's dinner tonight. Received two pictures with compliments from Mr. Fiala.

Jan 3rd-05 Tuesday

Temp. -24.1° max., -46° min. Wind east. The Chief's beer turned out to be poisoned by something in the tank. Everyone that tasted it had to vomit up again. By chemical analysis Dr. Seitz found it to be zinc sulfate. The tank was emptied of the beer, cleaned out and he is going to start another brew tomorrow. Making a new ice melter out of aluminum for Mr. Fiala.

Jan. 4th-05 Wed.

The temp. today and last night was the lowest ever recorded in Franz J. Land. This morning the temp. registered -59.5°, at noon -56°. Hardly any wind but, nevertheless, the ice is in a tremendous uproar. It is groaning and squeaking all along the shore up to Cape Saulen. Never ceasing, it keeps on all day so one might think it is going to crush the whole island.

Jan. 5th-05 Thursday

The temp. fell to -60.5° this forenoon. A light E. wind is blowing. Working on cookers.

Jan. 6th-05 Friday

Temp. max. -18°, min. -58.1°. A 45-50 mile E. wind with drift. Working on cookers.



Jan. 24th-05 Tuesday

Made a pricker for Perry. Repaired a hammer for a gun. Put a handle on a frying pan. The storm continues with bad drift. The wind makes the house very cold at night when the fires are out. Temp. max.  $-18.2^{\circ}$ , min.  $-33.2^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 25th-05 Wednesday

Made a pricker for the carpenter. Made some extra rings for the Primus burner. The wind ceased to blow so hard for a while this morning, but started up fresh towards noon and blowing quite hard all afternoon. Temp. max.  $-31^{\circ}$ , min.  $-35.7^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 26th-05 Thursday

The wind and drift have stopped, but it is still cloudy and dark. The ice was in an uproar in the bay this morning. It is all loose and pressing quite close to the shore. Made a drill for drilling rock for Mr. Peters. Fixed an kerosene tin. Made a tin box for Mr. Fiala. Temp. max.  $-34.9^{\circ}$ , Min.  $-41.8^{\circ}$ .

Jan 27th-05 Friday

The noon sank down like a bloodied half-round disc in the direction of Cape Auk this morning. Quite a bit of day light by 10 ock. Alexander Land could be distinguished. Dr. Seitz and I took a run out on the ice over the pressure ridges. Some of them are considerable high. Made a cap. Fixed a gun for "Chips". It has been calm all day and clear. Temp. max.  $-29.9$ , min.  $-45.9$ .

Jan. 28-05 Saturday

Some more repairs on "Chips'" gun. The calm of yesterday did not last long. This morning it was blowing and drifting horribly and continued all day at the rate of up to 70 m. an hour. Had a bath this evening. Chips is getting ready a big log to be set up, as a mast on Cape Auk. The previous ones having fallen down, acted on by the wind and snow. It was drifting so bad at eight tonight that Mr. Stewart could not find his way to the thermometer cage. Temp. max.  $-15^{\circ}$ , min.  $-31.7^{\circ}$ .

Jan 29th-05 Sunday

Been studying "Ch\_\_\_\_sters Encyclopedia most of the day. The storm continues in wild fury. The drift stopped by noon, but the wind is unchanged. Temp. max.  $-4.2^{\circ}$ , min.  $-15.2^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 30th-05 Monday

Working on my furs. Temp. max.  $-2.3$ , min.  $-10^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 31st-05 Tuesday

Working on my furs. Temp. max.  $+4.5^{\circ}$ , min.  $-7^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 1st-05 Wednesday

Working on furs. Temp. max.  $-5.9^{\circ}$ , min.  $-18.6^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 2nd-05 Thursday

Working on my furs. The temp. is very high. The water is dripping down from the ceiling even out in the store room. The temp. is max.  $+9.8^{\circ}$ , min.  $-14^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 3rd-05 Friday

Working on my fur pants. The weather has been quite steady. The temp. high and a light south wind. A big expanse of open water is visible as far out to the N.W. as we can see. Temp. max.  $+9^{\circ}$ , min.  $+1^{\circ}$ .



Jan. 7th-05 Saturday

Temp. max.  $-17^{\circ}$ , min.  $-26^{\circ}$ . The E. wind and drift continue.  
Working on cookers.

Jan. 8th-05 Sunday

Temp. max.  $-20^{\circ}$ , min.  $-36.4^{\circ}$ . The east wind with drift is blowing with the same fury. Working on my furs, making a pair of new deer skin pants.

Jan. 9th-05 Monday

Temp. max.  $-29^{\circ}$ , min.  $-33.9^{\circ}$ .  
Almost calm today. Working on cookers.

Jan. 10th-05 Tuesday

Temp. max.  $29.1^{\circ}$ , min.  $37.3^{\circ}$ . John's birthday. I wonder how they celebrate it down there at Cape Flora, if at all. Working on cookers.

Jan. 11th-05 Wednesday

Temp. max.  $-19.8$ , min.  $-42$ . Working on cookers.

Jan. 14th-05 Saturday

Temp. max.  $38.1$ , min.  $45.9$ . Working on cookers.

Jan. 15th-05 Sunday

Temp. max.  $-20.5$ , min.  $-48.3$ . Working on cookers.

Jan. 16th-05 Monday

Max. temp.  $-17$ , min.  $-27$ . Working on sundial for Mr. Peters.

Jan 17th-05 Tuesday

Max. temp.  $-19.3^{\circ}$ , min.  $-42.9^{\circ}$ . Working on sundial for Mr. Peters.

Jan. 18th-05 Wednesday

East wind with drift and snow. Been working on the sundial and finished it this afternoon. The temp. is quite high. It is dripping from the ceiling. Temp. max.  $+10^{\circ}$ , min.  $-26.2^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 19th-05 Thursday

Been working on a cooker of my own for our trip south. Also repairing Mr. Fiala's stove. It has been blowing and drifting most of the day. Tonight it is quite clear with moonlight. A slight drift is visible on the glacier toward Cape Auk. The wind is east. Temp. max.  $-1$ , min.  $-20.5^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 20th-05 Friday

Working on the stove for Mr. Fiala. Finished and put in place. Worked on my cooker. Quite a little light in the south at noon. The moon is out and it is very clear and light tonight and almost calm. Working on my fur shirt tonight. Temp. max.  $-22.5^{\circ}$ , min.  $-44.7^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 21st-05 Saturday

Working on my cooker and fixing up some cans for alcohol to go on the trail. Had a Manlicher gun issued to me. Temp. max.  $-21.8^{\circ}$ , min.  $-38.8^{\circ}$ .

Jan. 22nd-05 Sunday

Working on my furs. Took a walk out on the ice. The weather is thick and some snow falling. No wind.

Jan. 23rd Monday

Working on alcohol can. Put handle on the four inch tins. Repairing hammers for a Remington gun. Quite a strong wind from N.E. at the rate of---. Max. temp.  $-14^{\circ}$ , min.  $-24.2^{\circ}$ .



Feb. 4th-05 Saturday

Working on my sleeping bag, replacing some bad skin for better. The weather is fairly good, a light east wind blowing. Temp. max.  $3.3^{\circ}$ , min.  $-7.4^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 5th-04 Sund.

Took a walk down on the ice and up on the hill in the afternoon. A light east wind blowing. Temp. Max.  $+0.8^{\circ}$ , min.  $-7.1^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 6th-05 Monday

Working on my sleeping bag. Made some hooks for Mr. Fiala. Finished sleeping bag and started on new silk parkas for Chips and myself. Temp. max.  $-2.1^{\circ}$ , min.  $-7.2^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 7th-05 Tuesday

Sewing parkas. Finished them this afternoon. Had a long walk past Cape Saulen and over towards Cape Germania. The weather is calm but cloudy. Brilliant auroras tonight and quite clear. Temp. max.  $-2^{\circ}$ , min.  $-14^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 8th-05 Wednesday

Put the odometers together to be used on our trip to Cape Auk. Chips, Stewart, and myself went over to Cape Saulen. Lots of fox tracks were visible in the snow all around and on top of the Cape. The weather is calm but overcast. Temp. max.  $-4.6^{\circ}$ , min.  $-16.2^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 9th-05 Thursday

In the morning I took a walk over to the other side the bay and back followed by the dogs. Fox tracks were visible in many places on the bay ice. In the afternoon some of us went over to Cape Saulen and set two traps for the foxes. The day has been the clearest for a long while and it was very light at noon compared to what we have had of late. Things were gotten in readiness for a start for Cape Auk in the morning. Temp. max.  $-0.2^{\circ}$ , min.  $16.5^{\circ}$ .

March 10th-05 Friday

It started to blow and drift last night and continued all day today so our trip to Cape Auk is postponed for next day of fine weather. Done some washing tonight. Turned down the rings of a lot of cartridges for Mr. Fiala. Temp. max.  $0^{\circ}$ , min.  $-10.6^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 11th-05 Saturday

The wind and drift eased up a little this morning and Chips and I made a long walk almost over to Cape Germania. At Cape Saulen we investigated the fox traps, but found them untouched. The ice is all out to sea and the open waters extend way down to Alexander Land and all along the northern side Rudolph Land. Fixed a small soldering iron for Mr. Fiala. Made a tube with cap Mr. Peters' finder. Temp. max.  $-5.5^{\circ}$ , min.  $-12.2^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 12th-05 Sunday

Chips and I went over to the glacier on the other side the bay. A group of seals were playing around in the open lead a little ways out. Temp. max.  $-6.1^{\circ}$ , min.  $-20.7^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 13th-05 Monday

We were already to leave for Cape Auk this morning, but had to postpone the trip on account of a strong east wind with drift. Temp. max.  $-11.1^{\circ}$ , min.  $-25.1^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 14th-05 Tuesday

Made a false start this morning. The weather was fair after



breakfast, but as soon as we were ready to leave it blew up from the N.E. with bad drift and the trip had to be abandoned. The weather is fine tonight. It is very clear and the most brilliant colored auroras are playing in the heavens. Temp. max.  $-11.7^{\circ}$ , min.  $-24.4^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 15th-05 Wed.

Left camp at 9 this morning and went over the glacier to Cape Auk where we arrived at 11:20 a.m. After an hour and a half digging we found the place for the signal. Had some coffee. While Duffy, Chips, and I put the signal up Mr. Fiala and Peters took the necessary observations. At 3:25 we started back and arrived in camp 4:20. The weather was excellent all day, very clear, just a light breeze from E. Temp. max.  $-2.5^{\circ}$ , min.  $-21.3^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 16th-05 Thursday

East wind, 40 m. an h. and bad drift. Cleaned the shop out this morning and worked on a pair of canvas pants. Had some fine bear steak for supper. Temp. max.  $+1.8^{\circ}$ , min.  $-9.5^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 17th-05 Friday

Wind and drift continue. Made some repairs on one of the odometers, the axle of which had been bent during our trip Cape Auk. Made a single steel washer for Mr. Peters. Stewart had a tooth pulled this morning, it having been the cause to much misery on his part for the last weeks. Max. temp.  $+1.1^{\circ}$ , min.  $-11^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 18th-05 Saturday

It has been drifting all day. Wind from N.E. About noon it cleared up enough to allow Chips and myself to go down and haul up three loads of ice. Case hardened the washer for Mr. P. using yellow prussiate of potash. The temp. max.  $+3.1^{\circ}$ , min.  $-4.7^{\circ}$ . The Chief made some beer last night and it is quite good already.

Feb. 19th-05 Sunday

The wind stopped by noon and it has cleared up fine during the afternoon. Worked a little on a gun case for my gun. Attended to my team and have been reading diverse books the rest of the day. It is the Chief's birthday, Mr. Fiala gave a brief outline of the intended journey north. He intends to start within a couple of weeks. Temp. max.  $+5.9^{\circ}$ , min.  $-3.2^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 20th-05 Monday

It is calm but overcast. Had a walk down on the ice out to the open water in the morning. After lunch I went with Mr. Peters measuring up 3 kilometers with tape and running the odometer the same distance. They turned out very satisfactory. Mr. Spencer shot a seal out in the open water. He was brought to camp and skinned. Temp. max.  $+4.8^{\circ}$ , min.  $-6.9^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 21st-05 Tuesday

A light N. wind prevailed throughout the day. Fixed up a pair of skis and went out for a while skiing on the hill. After lunch I took the gun and went out over the ice. Shot a seal and saw the first little auks of this year. I went back to camp after kayak and a dog team, but looking for the seal I could not find it. It had probably been driven under the thin ice on the other side of the lead. The temp. max.  $+2.0^{\circ}$ , min.  $-14.0^{\circ}$ .



Feb. 22nd-05 Wednesday

NE wind with bad drift all day. Had to turn the dogs loose to keep them from being snowed under. Fixed up my skis complete. Made some slight alterations in the discs of the odometer so as to make them easier to read. The provisions for the trail are being put up by Stewart. Temp. max.  $+4^{\circ}$ , min.  $-12.7^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 23rd-05 Thursday

A fine drift has kept up all day. The wind is N.E. I am working on a compass box for Mr. Fiala. It is to be furnished with a mirror and used to measure azimuth. It is quite a delicate job considering circumstances with which we work with no machinery except a small lathe. Mr. Fiala is not going to take the theodolite on the trail but rely only on the sextant and this instrument I am making now. Temp. max.  $-3.5^{\circ}$ , min.  $-16.3^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 24th-05 Friday

Drift and N.E. wind continued most of the day. It is quite calm tonight. Been working on Mr. Fiala's instrument. It has been rather disagreeable out in the shop on account of the wind and it is turning quite cold too. Had hard times keeping the fire going. Temp. max.  $-15.3^{\circ}$ , min.  $-31.5^{\circ}$ .

Feb. 25th-05 Saturday

We have had a beautiful day at last. All the dogs were chained up again. Made a trip over to Cape Saulen with some of my dogs trying to make "Thos" work, but to no avail. I took pity on him after nearly wearing out my whip on him and turned him loose. He does not seem to understand why he is treated so hard. After lunch I had a few runs down the hill on skis and went out to the young ice to hunt seals, but did not see any.

Feb. 26th-05 Sunday

The wind commenced anew last night. The dogs had to be turned loose again. Helped Mr. Peters to adjust the pocket theodolite. My hopes of doing some skiing today were made to naught by the horrible weather. If it keeps up much longer Mr. Porter will not be able to get here in time for the start north.

Feb. 27th-05 Monday

Fixed up my harnesses and stake chain. The wind and drift are unchanged. It blows at the rate of 60 miles an hour. Stewart is busy weighing out and Duffy is helping packing up the provisions for the sledge journey north. We have the lantern burning on top of the roof all night as a beacon for Mr. Porter.

Feb 28th-05 Tuesday

The storm continued all last night and greater part of today making a brief lull after supper. It started off with still more fury by 8 ock. tonight and is now roaring at the rate of 60-70 miles an hour. I made myself a new clothes bag of khaki.

Mar. 1st-05 Wednesday

The wind died out during the night and we have had quite a good day. The sun was visible in a haze at 1 p.m. coming out from behind Cape Auk. Helped Mr. Peters with the observations a while. Chips killed a seal. The dogs were chained up again and some of the teams went over to Cape Saulen and back.

Mar. 2nd-05 Thursday

Had a walk down to the ice edge hunting seals. I saw several of them but I had to turn back. It commenced to drift and blow so



badly that my poor clothes could not keep the wind out. Made a pair of new khaki pants.

March 3rd-05 Friday

Spent most of the day along the ice edge shooting seals. Chips and Stewart killed one each. My luck seemed to have left me for I did not hit a single time. One of the seals was a female and had a young. I saw about a dozen guillemots. Three were shot.

March 4th-05 Saturday

A good breeze with bad drift all day. Done a small job on a cooker. Sewed two pair of silk covers for trail tent.

March 5th-05 Sunday

A light north wind blowing. Had a walk over to Cape Germania this morning. The ice is in close to the glacier and no open water to be seen in any direction.

March 6th-05 Monday

Washed some clothes. Dr. Seitz shot a bear. Done some small jobs for Mr. Fiala. The sun was out a couple of hours this afternoon. It has been clear all day.

March 7th-05 Tuesday

South east wind with drift all day. Had to turn the dogs loose again. I have been working on diverse things getting ready tool kit and several other articles for the trail. Had a bath tonight.

March 8th-05 Wednesday

South east wind at the rate of up to 72 miles an hour and bad drift throughout most of the day.

March 9th-05 Thursday

Laid a new electric line for the anemometer. The old one has caused more or less trouble all winter. South east wind with drift kept up all day.

March 10th-05 Friday

Fine weather. Been training the dogs. Made three trips over to Cape Saulen. There was quite a few guillemots over there today. As yet we have not seen them light on the rocks. Repaired a pair of komager. The sun was out quite a few hours during the afternoon. It did not set until about 5 p.m. Mr. Spencer is not felling well today. Stewart is doing the cooking.

March 11th-05 Saturday

The wind started last night and has kept up all day with bad drift from the east. I made a new extractor and repaired a lug on a shotgun. Fixed the cover for Mr. Fiala's compass.

March 12th-05 Sunday

East wind and light drift. Made a trip over to Cape Saulen with the dogs.

March 13th-05 Monday

East wind in the morning shifting around to N.W. in the evening. Bad drift all day. Putting the final touches on the equipment. We are having remarkably disagreeable weather this spring. The temp. is quite high. Printed some maps of Franz Josef Land. The wind is south east with heavy drift at 8 tonight. Was just out and turned my dogs loose.

March 14th-05 Tuesday

Fairly good weather today. Some little wind at times. Made a run over to Cape Saulen with the team.



March 15th-05 Wed.

Cooked lunch and supper for the party today. The weather has been elegant, fine sunshine and calm. Went over to Cape Saulen with my team after breakfast. The last touches on the sledges and loads were done today and it is agreed to leave tomorrow.

(End of book #13.)

(The first two pages of book #14 contain a listing of elements with symbols and atomic weights for each.)

March 16th-05 Thursday

Left camp 10:45 a.m. Crossed the draw above Cape Rolfs at 3 ock. and arrived at the glacier edge a little east of Cape Haberman at 5:45 where we made camp. The glacier is broken off so there is no place to get off on the ice. The dogs pulled good and the puppies are surprising. A bear and two cubs were seen on the ice. A flock of auks and a couple of seals. The temp. is +4. A light west wind blowing. The Chief is all alone at camp and only two dogs left behind. The odometer registers a little over 11 miles geog.

March 17th-05 Friday

Got up and cooked breakfast at 7 ock. Through at 7:40. It is fine weather, the (sun) is shining. Dr. Seitz and Perry left us to turn back at 8:15 and 15 minutes later we were on our way to Cape Hab. where we found a place enter the ice. At tin of kerosene was left here. 9:30 we started off along the south east side of the island with fair going. Duffy is celebrating St. Patricks flying the N.G.S. flag which has a green field in it. At 3:15 we made camp abreast of the north end of the isl. Fog setting in with the wind from east. Temp. this morning was +14°. Tonight -22°. The dogs are very tired, especially the younger not being accustomed to any work. Through with supper at 4 ock. Turn in at 4:30. Made 10 miles from Cape H. and about two miles on the glacier.

March 18th-05 Saturday

Got up at 6 this morning. Had breakfast and broke camp at 8:15. It was very thick and we had some quite rough ice where we had to cut our way for long stretches. At about 1 p.m. stopped the ice getting very bad and as it was moving and pressing quite bad, Mr. Fiala decided to camp and send Spencer and Meyers back, they being no navigators. We had lunch and at 2:10 we said farewell to them and saw them disappear in the screw ice on their way back. The pressure kept up for about three hours and it is now quiet and seems to be clearing up a little. The wind is N.W. The temp. was -12° at noon and seems to be still lower now.

March 19th-05 Sunday

Was called at 5 this morning. Cooked breakfast and broke camp at 7. The going was horrible up to noon. We had to cut our way foot by foot for 4 hours over the most disgustingly pressed up ice. At 11 ock. we had worked through most and just got out on some old ice with a few small level patches. Here we stopped, Mr. Fiala wanting to take some obs. At the same time we cooked some tea and had some bread with it. At a few minutes after 12 we started afresh over tolerable going only now and then cutting a road through some ridge. We crossed several leads just opening up. At four ock. we came to some bad ice and as we were quite



worked out and on fair ice we made camp for the night. Mr. Peters took a long obs. and I rec. for him. We don't seem to make much progress to the north but considerable east to get out of the young ice. The temp. tonight is  $-6^{\circ}$ . The day has been beautiful, sunshine and calm. We could see Cape Germania when we stopped, so we are at any rate north of Fligley.

March 20th-05 Monday

Were called at five this morning. Thick and snowing. At 7 we broke camp. The lead we halted at last night was widened out so that we could not cross it. After running east and then west we finally managed to get over at 10 o'clock. After that we got into a network of leads and the progress was very slow. At noon we stopped for lunch and had to pitch the tent on account of the snowfall. After noon we crawled over lead after lead and at 3 we came to a standstill on an old piece of ice surrounded by water. The temp. is above zero and the snow is falling thick so we went into camp waiting for better weather and for the leads to freeze over. While Mr. Fiala was in our tent a loose dog got into his and ate up part of their mortadella sausage.

March 21st-05 Tuesday

Called at 5 a.m. Broke camp at 7 and went through the same exercises as yesterday of cutting our way and building passages over the leads. We seem to be right in the moving pack. It is horribly broken up in small cakes slowly moving about. The sun came out brilliant when we started and has been shining throughout the day. At noon we stopped for lunch and took some obs. At 3:20 we stopped and made camp for the night on a fairly big flow. The ice was then pressing in the leads close by. Some more sights were taken. Rudolph Land was visible several times today and Mr. Peters got some bearings. A couple of seals are playing in a lead close by and Stewart is out trying to shoot one. The dogs had several ducks crossing the leads. Temperature tonight is  $-10^{\circ}$  and still falling. Hardly any wind. Temp.  $-24$  at 6:30 p.m.

March 22nd-05 Wednesday

Got up and cooked breakfast at 5 this morning. Broke camp at 7. The weather is foggy. No wind. Min. temp. last night was  $-27^{\circ}$ . This morning  $-17^{\circ}$  and tonight  $-1^{\circ}$ . We probably made about 2 miles north today. The going the same as yesterday. The same broken ice and had to cut our way through. Had lunch at 11 a.m. and started again at noon. The ice has been quite quiet and many of the leads were frozen so that they were passable. The heavy snow is a great hindrance and that together with the broken up condition of the ice makes the outlook quite bad. Tomorrow is our last day with Mr. Fiala and Duffy and Mr. Fiala is considering whether to turn back, as at the rate we are travelling now we will not be able to accomplish anything. As far as we can see the ice is the same if not worse ahead. At 3 this afternoon we came to a standstill at a wide lead just skinned over and on the other side a vast expanse of broken up young ice. Turn in at 7 p.m. Got wet up to my knee crossing a lead and Duffy also went through with one foot. Had quite a job scraping the ice off my pants socks and boots tonight. Mr. Peters lost a compass and I had to repair another previously broke by soldering the dial on to the needle.



March 23rd-05 Thursday

Duffy slept over half an hour this morning so we were not through breakfasting until 8 o'clock. Mr. Fiala came our tent and declared that he had decided to turn back and take his medicine as he explained himself. The weather is thick and snow is falling with a light wind from south east. The temp. is  $-3^{\circ}$  at 9 a.m. Mr. Fiala said he will wait 'til noon for better weather before we start back. A lead about 30 ft. wide has opened up ahead of us during the night. At 11:30 the sun came out bright and we started back over our trail of yesterday. In many places we found it impossible to follow it on account of the motion of the ice. It was broken up and the cake turned around but nevertheless we made good time whenever we could follow it. At 12:30 we passed yesterday's lunching place, and at 3 we reached the camp of night before last. At 5:20 we stopped for the night. The ice is pressing quite close by. The afternoon has been nice and the temp. was up to  $+8^{\circ}$  when we stopped. The Island was seen plain all afternoon. Just after we made camp the ice field commenced to break up and left us floating on a good sized cake in danger of getting smaller. We found it advisable to keep watch as it seems the ice is in more the usual tumult. Chips and Stewart have just had the watch from 9 to 11 and Mr. Peters and myself are on now to 1 a.m. The temp. is unusually high, a light south west wind blowing. It has been quiet the last two hours. Water sky towards the Island indicates some big lead in that direction.

March 24th-05 Friday

Shortly after midnight we had the hardest squeeze. It wore the edges of our flow so that it is now only about half the size. After 1 a.m. the flow cracked right under Stewart's and Chip's tent so they had to get up and move it. At 6 we got up and made no start the ice being still in motion and the temp. up to  $+25^{\circ}$ . The wind is from S.E. and some wet snow is falling. Mr. Fiala had lunch with us, pancakes cranberry sauce and coffee. In the afternoon the wind shifted and blew quite strong from the west and it commenced to drift. We stand watch tonight again, Mr. Peters and I from 11 to 1. At 11:30 it cleared up and the temp. is falling. At 1:30 a.m. it is  $-3.5^{\circ}$ . At 11 last night it was  $+17$ . Chips is on watch now and says he can see land. Mr. Peters took a long. and a lat. obs. and is working them out now. Turn in at 2 a.m. the 25th.

March 25th-05 Saturday

We waited 'til noon before we started. The weather has been fine all day. Worked our way continually cutting through the awfully rough ice. Pressure ridge after pressure ridge and all broken up ice between. At 3:30 we came to a pass of fairly good ice and as the prospects ahead are not very good we made camp. Mr. Peters, Duffy, and Stewart went ahead for another hour cutting road for tomorrow while Mr. Fiala, Chips, and I put up the tents and start the supper.

March 26th-05 Sunday

It is very cold today. The temp. was  $-31.5^{\circ}$  this morning. I was very cold in the bag after being soaking wet through perspiration after yesterday's hard work. It took us some time getting ready and it was late in the morning before we started. It was quite



thick although the sun was shining. After passing the road cut last night, we got into some horrible stuff where we broke through several times wetting our feet and legs. In one place while we were cutting through a ridge I left my sledge on the thin ice below and it came very nearly getting a good duck. The ice was gradually giving away for the weight and I noticed it just in time to haul it out. At 2 p.m. we stopped for lunch. My back tendon on the right foot which I strained some days ago righting a sledge gave me some trouble this morning so that I had to leave off so much exercise. By changing off my finesko for a felt boot and some rest it eased up so that I could work as usual in the afternoon. At 5:30 we came out on some better ice and made camp. The ice ahead is rough but there seems to be a few big cakes.

March 27th-05

Thick this morning and throughout the day. The temp. was  $-15^{\circ}$  this morning and  $-18^{\circ}$  tonight. Did not move on account of the fog and drift. West wind. The ice opened up within two ft. of Chips and Stewart's tent, but closed up again after a few hours.

March 29th-05 Wednesday

Left camp at 9 a.m. Sun shining but foggy. At 11 a.m. we stopped for lunch and Mr. Fiala got a lat. obs. which put us at  $81^{\circ} 45' 33''$ . The going was bad and we had to do a lot of cutting. In crossing a lead my whole team got into the water. At 3 o'clock in the afternoon we crossed a lead about 200 ft. wide and after that we got out on better going. We stopped at 3:20 for something to eat and a long. obs. which put us within 5 miles of the island. At 5 p.m. we started again and made good time over good going over seemingly landlocked ice. We made about 3 miles and at 8 p.m. we made camp for the night. Have not seen the island all day. The temp. was  $-12^{\circ}$  this morning and  $-25^{\circ}$  tonight. My poor dogs are shivering after the bath they had this morning. The wind is west.

March 30th-05 Thursday

Broke camp at 9:20 in a fog. Ran west until 11 o'clock. when all of a sudden the fog lifted a little and we found ourselves right up on the glacier face of the island. It was then drifting and very cold so we had hard times keeping from freezing our faces. At 1 p.m. we had to stop, the wind and the drift being too much. The temp. was then  $-21.5^{\circ}$  and was felt very severely in the wind. Been traveling south west along the glacier face since 11 a.m. Min. temp. last night was  $-37^{\circ}$ .

March 31st-05 Friday

Got up at 8 a.m. Still fog and drifting with west wind. The temp. was down to  $-39.5^{\circ}$  last night. At noon today it was  $-31^{\circ}$ . Been lying still all day in a miserable condition, damp and cold waiting for the wind to stop and the fog to lift. At 5 p.m. it calmed down somewhat so we decided to move. After a light lunch we broke camp at 6 o'clock. We had hardly started before it commenced to blow and drift worse than ever right in our faces and we felt it badly. The going was excellent and after many stops we reached the place at Cape Hab. where we left the island at 9 o'clock. It was then blowing fiercely and we decided to go into camp. Shortly before we stopped we passed a dead bear, seemingly dead of want of food. A few minutes after we had the tents up it grew calm and cleared up nicely. I shook the frost out of my bag and fed the dogs, had supper and crawled into the bag.



NEARING 82° NORTH LATITUDE

"The ice was rough, worse than in 1904  
and very slow progress was made"



This picture and captions are from Fiala's "Fighting the Polar Ice" Fiala writes, "In order to extend the view angle so as to include the column of men, dogs and sledges, the pictures were taken as a rule from the summits of high blocks of ice. The high view point had the effect of lowering the ridges and flattening the the steep places of which the above photo is an example."

Dad told me that he is the man with his arm out to the left of center.



April 1st-05 Saturday

Arose at 6:30. The weather was beautiful, sun shining and and perfectly calm. The temp. must be very low, but it is not uncomfortable when the wind does not blow. At 8:15 we broke camp and ascended the glacier which was free from all loose snow and made it hard for the dogs which could not secure any footing and were constantly slipping and falling. We met with only one bad crevasse and passed that without accident. The top was reached about 10 ock. Mr. Fiala and Mr. Peters led the way roped together. After crossing the draw I lashed Mr. Fiala's and my sledges together and ran them that way with great ease all the way down to Cape Germania. At 1:15 we reached camp where we found Mr. Porter and MacKiernan who had arrived the day after we had left. They brought good news from Cape Flora and Camp Ziegler. Had a letter from John. The two detachments had returned in good time and all well.

April 2nd-05 Sunday

The pipe for the water barrel burst last night, the temp. being extremely low. I repaired it after breakfast. The rest of the day I spent working on my old fur shirt and drying out the clothes from the trail.

April 3rd-05 Monday

Working on my fur shirt all day. Mr. Fiala expressed his wish for me to lead a party down to Cape Flora. Mr. Tessem and Stewart to go with me. We are to leave as soon as we get our clothes repaired and ready. Probably the beginning of next week. We are to go via Kane Lodge, Camp Ziegler, and return from Cape Flora by Eaton Island from which place we will bring the instruments left by Mr. Peters last summer up to Camp Ziegler. While back there we will keep up a freighting of provisions from Kane Lodge and the last mentioned place. Another party will start from here a little later and transport stuff from Coburg Isl. and Kane Lodge, while Mr. Porter and two men go into Zichy Land to finish, if possible, the survey of that place. Mr. Peters with Perry will carry a load of instruments down to Camp Ziegler and will probably start with us. Mr. Fiala intends to stay here with the Chief yet for a while and come down to Camp Ziegler when the weather gets comfortable for the Chief. We had an issue (of) new clothes whatever was left. The weather has been beautifull all day, calm and sunshine.

April 4th-05 Tuesday

Been repairing cookers and sewed four pair of mittens. Preparations are going on for our evacuation of Camp Abruzzi. A strong wind from south east with bad drift is blowing this afternoon at the of 50 m.p.h.

April 5th-05 Wednesday

South east wind, quite strong, with drift. Been working on our tent most of day.

April 6th-05 Thursday

Stayed up last night working on the tent so as to get out of the way. Turned in at 4:30 this morning. I had Mr. Stewart to help me. Made three firing pins for guns.

April 7th-05 Friday

The same wind blowing and drifting. The rations for south are being put up and miscellaneous things packed for the two



parties at Cape Flora and Camp Ziegler. Mr. Peters will not be ready so we will leave Tuesday alone weather permitting. Finished the tent up and got two toolbags for south. The temp. is getting higher and it is commencing to drip in the house.

April 8th-05 Saturday

Snow drift still keeping on with high temp. The ice has drifted off again and the black sea is going high in the wind. Been repairing some clothes and packing up and getting things ready. Repaired on Henry Rifle. Dr. Seitz, Duffy, and MacKiernan will probably start with us on Tuesday and go as far as Kane Lodge and return here for more provisions.

April 9th-05 Sunday

Fixed up a pair of skis. The same wind continues. This is the fifth day. It is perfectly clear and the sun shining. I went out for a walk for the first time in four days. The open water extends about 2 miles north of Cape Saulen from where the edge may be seen. The temp. tonight was +16°.

April 10th-05 Monday

The wind stopped gradually this morning so we were at last able to get out, load our sledges and try the tent. We have the loads ready and will probably leave after breakfast tomorrow. Mr. Porter made a stamp and postmark type for the mail to go down to Cape Flora and Camp Ziegler. I received the orders for our work in the field this spring and summer from Mr. Fiala. All dogs are chained up, the weather fine, and I like to get off in the morning. The temp. is +14°. It is very sloppy and wet in the house.

April 11th-05 Tuesday

Left Camp Abbruzzi at 8:40 this morning in the best of weather. We ascended the glacier in the place south east of camp where the incline is very gradual and found it very much preferable to the old route. At 12:10 we reached the top above Cape Brorak. The loads were rather heavy for the dogs and in many places they had hard times to gain any footing the glacier being swept clear of all loose snow during the last 5 days stormy winds. The descent was easy although a little steep so that we had to go zig zag. At 1:05 p.m. we reached the ice below, just a little to the east of the cape. The teams were seemingly good for few hours work yet so we decided to continue across to Hohenloe and if possible to Coburg, but Dr. Seitz' and Mackiernan's teams were quite played out when we arrived at Hohenloe so we went into camp. Duffy's sledge was damaged crossing the glacier. One of the runners broke in two, the sledge being one of the single runner oak sledges. He managed to get along without trouble the way it was and had it patched up with some boards found at our camping place from last fall at Hohenloe Is. The day has been brilliant throughout. Arrived here at 4:25 pm.

April 12th-05 Wednesday

Arose at 5:15. The night has been quiet, the sun is out, the sky clear. At 7:40 we broke camp and started off at good rate reaching Coburg Isl. at 8:40 where we took on 10 tins of pemmican and three tins of oil which increased the loads to over 700 lbs., a very heavy load for seven dogs. The going was excellent and we had no trouble. Left Coburg 9:10 and stopped for lunch at the



eastern extremity of Alexander Land 11:30, giving the dogs a rest of nearly two hours. 1:10 we were on again making very good time down the channel. After leaving Rainer Isl. behind we got into some salty ice and had to help the dogs. For four miles they did not have the least fresh snow and they were very tired when we stopped at 6:20 reaching some rough ice with a little brackish snow on it. We made camp and had supper which was less pleasant no fresh snow or ice being obtainable. Considering the loads we have covered considerable ground. The weather has been splendid throughout the day. We had expected to make Stoliczka but we have to be satisfied with what we done. We have covered a distance of just about 20 miles.

April 13th-05 Thursday

Broke camp at 8:15 and after a few miles of salty ice and heavy hauling we got into some fair going. Passing Stoliczka we shot a big walrus, cut him up and cooked the meat on a low iceberg. At 1:10 we had lunch. Broke camp again at 3:10. The going was excellent the rest of the way down to Coalmine Isl. A light south wind blew the latter part of the day. At the waterhole we had to take the teams over one by one. Lots of birds and seals in the water attracted the dogs so it was hard to keep them from jumping in the water. From there on the going was very hard, soft snow and slush. At 9:45 we reached Kane Lodge. The dogs were completely played out. Dr. Seitz and his party cleaned the house out and slept during the night.

April 14th-05 Friday Kane Lodge

Arose after a good sound sleep at 9 ock. Had breakfast in the house. The weather is thick and south wind with some drift comes in puffs up the channel. At 3:30 we left Kane Lodge and arrived at the rookery 7:10 where we made camp.

April 15th-05 Saturday

Arose at 6:30. The weather is quite thick and some snow is falling. We were disturbed by a bear last night after we had turned in. A shot scared him off and we were left at peace the rest of the night. Left at 9:15 and were lucky to get across the ice at the waterhole, although it was quite slushy in places. 2 bear were roaming about but left us alone. Another was seen along the glacier of Zichy Land. The traveling was not the best. The snow of last night lay quite deep all along. The skis came in very handy and both Chips and myself kept them on all day. It became so thick that after lunch which we had from 1 p.m. to 3:20 I had to go by the compass setting course for the unnamed island on the east side of the channel. It cleared up somewhat at 5 p.m. and we were then rounding the spires of the island. At 7 we made camp after some unfruitful search for Mr. Porter's igloo. Soon after it commenced to snow bad. Had pancakes and tea for supper. We all are getting more or less sore in the legs but not enough to keep us from going on as we have \_\_\_\_\_. Turn in at 9:20. The temp. is very high and it is getting wet in the tent.

April 16th Sunday

Arose at 7 a.m. It was snowing and has been snowing during the night. Very thick and foggy. At 9:20 we broke camp and travelling by compass all morning. We stopped for lunch at 12:45.



Been on skis all morning. The snow is very deep and soft. Broke camp at 2:45. A good N.W. wind blowing with drift. At 4 pm the fog lifted somewhat and Alger Island loomed up 3-4 miles off. At 6:30 we reached Camp Ziegler and were well received by the inhabitants. The party from Cape Flora is all through here, having made two trips and being perfectly satisfied with what they got here. Dr. Vaughn, Long, Moulton, Butland, Hudgins consisted the party.

April 17th-05 Monday

Stayed at Camp Ziegler all day resting dogs and men. Mr. Stewart's knee has given him trouble the two last days and his leg stiffens right up as soon as he stops. If he will not be in condition to continue tomorrow, Mr. Butland has volunteered to take his place. Our outfit was in very good shape, so we don't have to dry anything but a few pair of sock, some mittens and boots. Sleeping bags, tents, and other clothing is very much the same as when we left Camp Abruzzi. We have spent the day packing the sledges and replenishing our food stores. The weather is splendid, a light breeze from the S.W.

April 18th-05 Tuesday

We had everything ready to leave this morning. Mr. Stewart had to stay, his knee being no better much to his regret. Butland was ready on 5 minutes notice. No food supplies for Cape Flora was taken on, Mr. Rilliet stating that they did not want any more. An extra dog was taken to be exchanged for two dogs in care of Chas. Hudgins down there. At 10:45 we left setting course for Matilda drawing a straight line for Bliss Island. At 2:30 we had lunch outside Brice Isl. 4:20 we were moving again. The snow is very deep in the channel all the way from Matilda. We used the skis all day. The poor dogs were wading up under their bellies in the soft snow but as our loads were lightened somewhat at Camp Ziegler they got along fairly well. At 7:20 we made camp at Bliss Isl. for the night. The temp. is a little lower than we have had before.

April 19th-05 Wednesday

Arose at 7 this morning. The sun shining and just a light breeze from the E.N.E. 8:45 we broke camp and rounding the cape we set course for Cape Louis Poole on Hooker Island. Soon after it clouded over and commenced to drift. The wind was on our backs and did not bother us any. At 12:10 we were opposite Jefferson Isl.

and stopped for lunch. At 2:10 we left and reached Cape Louis Poole at 5 o'clock. It was drifting off the glacier, the snow coming down like a waterfall right over the place where Mr. Porter's igloo was snowed under. We passed on the place, dug out a little bear meat, and made camp in behind an iceberg. The snow in the channel lays knee deep, just hard enough for dogs and sledges, but a man sinks right through it. Butland regrets very much that he has omitted practising on skis. Tessem and I have been on the skis all day.

April 20th-05 Thursday

Arose at 6:30, had breakfast, and broke camp at 8:15. A light east wind blowing, the sun is out and the temp. is agreeable. The ice around the capes is quite rough, but there is



no snow to bother. The dogs are quite fresh. They had a good bear feed last night. At 11:20 we reached Scott Keltie Isl. and stopped for lunch. The ice is somewhat wet at the point but only for a short stretch. The rocks are alive with auks. Butland shot 9 of them and he saw 3 ptarmigan and killed 1. The weather is excellent. At 3:30 we started again and reached Dundee Point at 5:30. After some search for a cache of bear meat with no result, we passed on towards Camp Point. At 6:50 we made camp about 4 miles from Dundee Point. We had a fine supper on the birds which made an agreeable change in the diet. The weather is as fine as we can wish. It is getting a little colder. Calm and clear.

April 21st-05 Friday

Arose at 7:40. Calm and quiet throughout the night. At 9:45 we broke camp. It set in quite thick so we had to go by compass. At 11 ock. we met Dr. Vaughn and Sergeant on their way from Camp Point to Dundee Point for some supplies left there. They brought good news about everything at Cape Flora. At 1 p.m. we stopped for lunch. When we came out again it was very thick. Tessem blames me for giving Sergeant the tobacco. He says it is his smoke that fills the atmosphere. At 3 p.m. we started again and struck some better going. After a while we got on to Dr. Vaughn's trail and followed it to Camp Point. At 5:30 The point loomed up out of the fog and at 6 we were at the iceberg where we dug out some of the bear meat cached by Dr. Vaughn. Took some along and made camp a little farther down. Had bear steak with onions for supper and gave the dogs a good feed.

April 22nd-05 Saturday.

Left Camp Point at 8:15. It was still very foggy but following the trail we had no difficulty in travelling. At 11:45 we stopped for lunch to 2 ock. At 3:20 we reached Cape Flora where we were welcomed by everybody. Issued the tobacco, mail, and personal packages out to great satisfaction of all. Jimmy, Thwing, and Burns are over on Bell Isl. for the sake of taking an inventory of the house of Leigh Smith, and if possible do some hunting. Captain Coffin asked for some pictures that were to have been sent down by Mr. Fiala. The provisions were received and receipted by Mr. Truden and Haven.

April 23rd-05 Sunday

We stay at Cape Flora today and will also stay tomorrow giving the dogs a rest and drying our clothes out a little. We cleaned the bungalow and made a fire in it and slept there last night.

[Two pages of this book are missing, but there are some loose notes in this collection which cover the trip from Camp Abruzzi to Cape Flora the period April 11 to the start north through April 25. These notes may have been a draft of a report and are inserted here because they cover some of the missing days, April 24, 25, and the 26th:

"Left Camp Abruzzi April 11 at 8:40 a.m. Stopped at Coburg Isl. for 10 tins pem. 3 tins of oil. Arrived at Kane Lodge 13th 9:45 p.m. took some clothes and ammunition from there. Left at 3:30 p.m. and camped at rookery 7:10 p.m. Arrived at Camp Ziegler the 16th at 6:20 p.m. Party from Cape Flora



all through, having taken all they wanted out of here; so not necessary for us to increase our loads any. Mr. Stewart left behind, Butland taking his place. Stopped at Camp Ziegler all day the 17th. weather good. Wind S.W.

The morning of the 18th we were all ready to leave, fireman Butland taking Mr. Stewart's place. At 10:45 we started, reaching Bliss Isl. where we made camp for the night. Encountered heavy snow in the channel on the way here. Temp. must be low. Arrived at Louis Poole at 5 p.m. the 19th. Drifting and deep snow on the ice. Crossing De Bruyne Sound we met Dr. Vaughn and Sergeant Moulton on the way to Dundee Point for a load of provisions the 21st.

Arrived at Cape Flora 3:30 the afternoon of the 2nd. We were welcomed by everybody. Issued out the tobacco, mail and personal packages for great satisfaction of all. The provisions were received by Mr. Truden and Haven acting commissaries for the different houses and receipt for same given.

Stopped at Cape Flora the 23rd and 24th giving the dogs a rest and drying our wet clothes. Mr. Chas. Hudgins was in the meantime getting ready together with sailor Montrose to accompany us back to Camp Ziegler for the purpose of bringing down one of the indian canoes and some more provisions if possible.

April 25th we started together leaving everyone there in seemingly good health. As my brother, John, uttered his wish to go along with us to Camp Ziegler and there wait for the relief ship and we very well could accommodate him in our tent for a few days, I took him along."]

(The journal continues).....Point. It was then 2 ock. Taking on a tin of kerosene crossed the point and after an hour we got down on the other side and after some fumbling around made camp down on the ice in lee of an iceberg. We dug down about 1 foot in the snow and built a low wall around the tent. Even then the wind almost tore it to pieces. Made supper for all hands in our tent. Turned in at 10 p.m.

#### April 27th-05 Thursday

The wind calmed down a little this morning. At 1:40 we broke camp and travelled up and got in under lee of Rubini Rock at 4:40. After supper Butland and I went over to see if there was any walrus meat left from last year, but found none, but some skin and bones. On the north east end of Scott Keltie Isl. is a big water hole opened up and as our dog food is low I sent John and Butland over to try their luck on seal or walrus hunting. The temp. is very high. Wind S.E. We feed the dogs walrus skin.

#### April 28th-05 Friday

Did not turn in until 7 a.m. At 2 ock. we broke camp intending to follow John and Butland over to Scott Keltie Isl., but they met us halfway over reporting the ice to be too bad to travel over with loaded sledges. They could not get near the water hole on account of the slush and had seen no game but birds. We altered course and landed on N.W. point at 3:30 a.m. where we went into camp. A little while after we caught sight of a bear. Turning some of the dogs loose and made chase after him. Start was soon up with him and kept him worried until we reached up after a stiff run through the slush. As I was nearing I saw him tumble headfirst



From The NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC MAGAZINE- April 1905

THE ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION

Mr. William Ziegler is sending north this summer a large party to carry supplies to the Ziegler Polar Expedition. The party will sail from Norway about July 1 on board the TERRA NOVA, a powerful whaling vessel which Mr. Ziegler recently purchased for this purpose. Mr. W.S. Champ, the general manager of Mr. Ziegler's arctic expeditions will be in charge. They will try to reach Franz Josef Land, where the Ziegler expedition is expected to meet them. In case the ice is as heavy as it in 1904, Mr. Champ will force the TERRA NOVA as far north as possible and then allow the vessel to be frozen in. The party will then push across the ice to Franz Josef Land.

The Ziegler North Polar Expedition, which it will be remembered, set out in 1903, is being made under the auspices of the National Geographic Society, whose personal representative, Mr. W.J. Peters is in charge of the scientific work and second in command. It was expected that the expedition would return in 1904, but the ice was so thick that they could neither get out nor could an auxiliary party reach them. They are abundantly supplied with provisions, and no anxiety is felt on that score.

Mr. Ziegler will also send a representative on board the BELGICA which is to proceed about July 1 to Shannon Island, on the east coast of Greenland, to make sure that none of the party who made the polar dash have been carried there by the polar drift. Several years ago a large stock of provisions was established at this point in case the men making the polar dash were prevented by the drift from returning to Franz Josef Land and were landed on the Greenland coast.



through the rotten ice. Some more of the dogs got up by this time and they kept him there until I got up close enough to shoot. It was only a small she bear. We cut it up and hauled it to camp. Had supper and turned in at 7. At 4 p.m. we were out again. Cooked some bear steak and birds for breakfast. It is thick and snowing a little. We will stop here until the morning. The snow is melting and it is quite wet in the tent. All our footgear got wet in the bear hunt last night.

April 29th-05 Saturday

Arose at 11:20 this morning. Thick and a strong S.E. wind blowing. Left for Cape Louis Poole at 1:40 arriving there at 5 ock. The wind is sweeping down from the mountain in strong gusts and wet snow is falling. We made camp close to Mr. Porter's cache. After supper we dug for nearly 3 hours in search of the snowed under igloo. We dug down about 8 feet a hole about 6x6 but no signs of it so we gave it up. The snow was very hard packed so we had to chop it out with the pick.

April 30th-05 Sunday

Arose at 11:30 a.m. Still quite thick. The temp. very high. Left at 2 p.m. Stopped for lunch at 5:10. The going is very tiresome. The snow soft and wet and it stuck to the skis and sledge runners. At 20 minutes past 7 we broke camp and arrived at Bliss Isl. at 10:40.

May 1st-05 Monday

Arose at 1:30 p.m. It is still foggy and the temp. mild. Left Cape Beresford at 10 minutes to 4. The travelling is miserable. The snow heavy and wet. East wind with snow. At 6:45 we stopped for lunch. We had then just passed Brice Isl. Broke camp again at 9 and made the west camp where we took on a tin of ship's bread. Arrived at East Camp Ziegler at 1 a.m. the 2nd of May. Mr. Porter and party and Mr. Peters and party were there. They had been there 4 days. Mr. Porter cooked some coffee and cornmeal mush for us. It was not a very hearty meal but we had to be content.

May 2nd-05 Tuesday

Arose at 2 p.m. Had some bear steak and coffee. The house is very crowded and dripping all over. It has been raining and the whole place is miserable. I got some provisions out from Mr. Rilliet and intend to leave in the morning as here is no place to dry out.

May 3rd-05 Wednesday

The temp. is very high. The snow is melting and it is wet and miserable. We cannot sleep only wishing to get off as soon as possible. At 9:50 we left and reached North Isl. at 1:20 where we made camp for the night. I fried up some bear meat for supper and after Chips and I went out on skis after some seal. There were 6 of them lying on the ice a little ways from camp. We did not get any. The ice is rotten out here and some big holes are forming.

May 4th-05 Thursday

Left North Isl. at 5:30 this morning. The temp. is very high and it became quite thick during the day so we had to go by compass. At 9 we stopped for lunch abreast of Cape Trieste. Broke camp again at 11:15 and reached Rookery Camp at 6 p.m. The snow has been very soft and wet. It is melting and makes travelling poor. The water hole at the Rookery was open almost right across



but we got across by hugging the shore closely. At the rookery we found enough bear meat for a feed for our dogs. The two quarters and most of the carcass was eaten up by the gulls which made an awful noise when we disturbed them in their feast. We had some field rat.(ions) for supper and turned in at 7 p.m.

May 5th-05 Friday

Arose after a long sleep at 11:30 this morning. Broke camp at 2 p.m. Shot a seal and filled up a bag of coal at Cape Washington and arrived at Kane Lodge at 6:45. It has been foggy and snowing all day and drifting tonight.

May 6th-05 Saturday

Turned in at 6 this morning. Arose again at 1:30 p.m. Has been drifting all day with a N.W. wind moderating somewhat in the evening. We have been busy digging the house out from out of the drift. It cleared up very nicely at 9 p.m. The sun is shining bright and only a light wind blowing. Fed the dogs emergency ration. It is getting a little colder tonight

May 7th-05 Sunday

Arose at 8 a.m. After breakfast Mr. Stewart and Tessem hitched up a team and went over to Coalmine Isl. in view of gathering up some game. They came back with 6 guillemots. The channel is open on the east side of the isl. from Zichy Land to Greely Isl. preventing them from reaching the isl. They saw track where Dr. Seitz's party had had to go across the glacier on Zichy Land. Their tracks away from here lead around the eastern end of Greely Isl. Been busy fixing up skis and foot gear all day. Fed the dogs seal meat tonight. We had birds and bear steak with onion and apple sauce for supper. The weather has been fair with, shifting winds and drift and high temp.

May 8th-05 Monday

Made a trip to "Rookery Place" today. The weather was fair when we started but half ways over to Washington Cape it blew up a strong head wind with bad drift. The snow was hard packed and going good so we kept on. The snow blowing off from the talus of the cape was mixed with sand and made our eyes smart badly. Keeping the snowglasses on helped somewhat. We left at 10:40 and reached the rookery at 2 ock. Had lunch there, unloaded the sledges and left at 4:20. We could not see far ahead but relying on old Start as leader we jumped on the sledges and made the return in 1hour 55 min. After supper we dug out the coal oil barrel behind the house and filled our empty tins. The barrel is almost empty. The weather is moderating. The wind is south and wet snow is falling.

May 9th-05 Tuesday

We turned in at 1 this morning and arose at 11. The sun was out and the temp. high so that the snow is melting. I decided to wait until 6 p.m. seeing that it generally gets colder by night fall. At 6:30 we left and found the going quite heavy in the beginning, but improving as the temp. got gradually colder. At 10 p.m. we reached the rookery. Mr. Stewart shot 2 guillemots while we unloaded the sledges. 10:45 we started back. At Cape Washington we found some fresh bear tracks. The beast had eaten up a sealskin left there by Mr. Stewart. I turned Start loose



and we had a grand chase over to Kane Lodge and along the glacier to the east where we chased him up on the snow under the glacier and killed him. It was quite a big bear. He had been over to the house and finished a big tin of blubber.

May 10th-05 Wednesday

Arrived at Kane Lodge at 1:30 this morning after killing the bear. Mr. Stewart cooked supper while Tessem and I cut the bear up. At 4 a.m. just as we finished supper Dr. Seitz and party arrived by way of the waterhole. We arose at 4 p.m., had breakfast and will leave with two loads for the rookery. Dr. Seitz's party left for their loads at the waterhole at 6 p.m.

May 11th-05 Thursday

We left at 9:30 last night and returned after 6 hours absence. Arrived at rookery 12:45 a.m. Left 1:30 and got back at 3:25. Thick and snowing. Had bear steak for supper. Turned in at 10 a.m. Arose at 7 p.m. Dr. Seitz's party left for Stoliczka Isl. about 9 p.m. Our dogs are in very poor condition so I decided to stay here today and give them some rest.

May 12th-05 Friday

Tessem and I went over to Coalmine Isl. at 1 this morning to shoot birds. Left Mr. Stewart in camp. We had to cross the glacier in Zichy Land to get past the waterhole. The weather was fine, sun shining and colder than it has been for some time. In the rocks on the island in the waterhole we got 16 guillemot. We got back to the lodge at 7 a.m. Had birds for supper and turned in at 10 ock.

May 13th-05 Saturday

Leave Kane Lodge at 1 a.m. The travelling down Collinson Fjord is better than I have seen it yet. The temp. must be fairly low. The atmosphere is clear and almost calm. We arrived at the rookery 4:15 where we made camp. It commences to drift as we turn in at 10:30 a.m. Had guillemot for supper. Mr. Stewart has diarrhea. The wind is S.W.

May 14th-05 Sunday

Arose at 9 last night. The wind grew stronger during the day. Our bamboo tent pole cracked in one of the strong gusts. Tessem made a new one from a Russian pole found under the boat. The temp. is rising and it is blowing again and wet snow is falling. The wind moderated somewhat before midnight so we loaded up the sledges and hauled four loads around to the other side of the waterhole. Coming back the second time the wind started afresh and we had to stop. Our clothes were soaked from the wet snow and it is quite miserable. Had bear steak for lunch and guillemot for supper. The waterhole has not altered any since we passed going up so it is comparatively easy to get the loads by. If the weather permits we will move the remainder of the cache tonight and tomorrow morning. We turn in at 10 a.m. Arose at 11 p.m. Still blowing and foggy. Temp. high.

May 15th-05 Monday

We were just loading our sledges after having breakfast when Dr. Seitz's party arrived from Kane Lodge. It was then 1:30 a.m. I sent Mr. Stewart and Tessem over with them around past the waterhole. They came back and we packed on our garbage and the rest of the



cache and moved our camp around while the doctor and his men continued back to the lodge. The weather is miserable. S.W. wind with wet snow and fog. We made camp on a bare spot of ground close to the cache. I took a stroll along the beach after lunch while Tessem and Stewart went down to the water hole and shot a few guillemot. We turn in at 7 p.m. The weather is getting a little better. It has stopped snowing and cleared up somewhat. Arose at 10:30 and were through with breakfast at midnight. Still foggy. Temp. high.

May 16th-05 Tuesday

Broke camp at Wiener Neustadt Isl. 12:50 this morning. The travelling is something horrible. Deep wet snow which sticks to the runners so intently that it is almost impossible to start them when they once stick. Being out half an hour we had to throw off a box of emergency rations and shift the loads about. At 3:45 we stopped for lunch. Wind south with wet snow. Very foggy. At quarter to 6 we broke camp and travelled until 8 a.m. Had bear steak and scrambled eggs for supper. The sun came out and it cleared a little about noon. It was miserably hot in the bags. Turned in at 1:30. Arose at 9 p.m. Broke camp at 11:20.

May 17th-05 Wednesday

It set in thick and commenced to snow right after we had left. The temp. is very high and it is miserable going. Stopped for lunch at 2:30 leaving again at 5. We reached North Isl. at 7 a.m. and made camp on the isl. Turned in at noon and arose again at 9 p.m. The weather fine. It is freezing and the sun is out.

May 18th-05 Thursday

We broke camp in good weather at 11:50 last night. The frost of yesterday evening and night has made the snow hard and travelling excellent. Lightening our sledges considerably by leaving our sledge stores behind we made good time, arriving at Camp Ziegler 2:20 this morning. The sunshine did not last long. It is now blowing a sharp N.W. wind with drift. We stayed up all day fixing up two sledges with German silver runners. Turned in at 10 p.m.

May 19th-05 Friday

Arose 5 this morning, had breakfast at 7:30. It is still blowing but not hard. We will start after lunch. Worked on our sledges all morning and were ready to leave but it blew up a blizzard before noon and we could not leave. Mr. Spencer, Meyer and Perry went over to the west camp after breakfast and had a hard time getting back with the drift in their faces. They brought over a barrel of cornmeal and some coal. The houses are very gloomy and dismal. Wind east.

May 20th-05 Saturday

Still blowing and drifting hard. We stay at Camp Zeigler all day unable to get off. Wind east. Temp. high.

May 21st-05 Sunday

The weather is moderating a little today. After breakfast dug the tent and sledges out of the drift and packed up and left for North Isl. at 9:30. leaving the leading to "Start". The old veteran is getting quite acquainted with the roads needing neither



trail or anyone ahead. Dr. Seitz's party was encamped, being just arrived from Wiener Neustadt Isl. They have made two trips and will finish in another. After arranging our provisions we left at 12:15. Riding all the way we had no trouble, the dogs following the trail. We had some strong gusts of wind, misting the snow so that we could not see anything at times and some soft snow was falling at intervals. We reached Wiener Neustadt Isl. at 5:35 making the distance in 5 hours and 20 minutes, cutting one hour and 20 minutes off Dr. Seitz's record of 6 h. and 40 ms. We made the distance from Camp Ziegler in 7 hr. and 30 m.

May 22nd-05 Monday

Dr. Seitz arrived here at 4:25 this morning. It is still drifting and blowing strong from the east. We got up at 5:20, had breakfast, loaded our sledges and left at 8:15. We had the wind in our backs and putting up our parkas as sails we went along at good speed over good going. Standing on our skis, we did not have to move our legs, just sliding before the wind. The drift was low and did not bother any. The dogs were quite played out when we arrived at North Isl. at 5 minutes to 4. Had flapjacks for supper and turned in at 8 pm. The wind is N.E.

May 23rd-05 Tuesday

Blowing hard and drifting all night. Arose at 8 and at 11:50 Dr. Seitz came in with their last loads. We were ready leave then. A few minutes after we left it blew up stronger than ever and snow and drift made it miserable to travel with wind in our faces. The dogs refused to go at first, but the whips soon aroused them and we went along riding following the trail. The going is still good and hard. At 5:55 we got on to Wiener Neustadt Isl. cold and stiff after lying on the sledges for six hours with the miserable drift against us. The dogs are quite worked out. Had some fried birds for supper with scrambled eggs and tea. Wind N.E. My eyes are quite sore tonight.

May 24th-05 Wednesday Snow blind and storm bound all day.

May 25th-05 Thursday

Our tent broke down in the storm of last night. We lay with with the pole down all night. We left with two loads at 12 a.m. and arrived at North Isl. at 10 p.m. having lunch on the road. The weather is fine and travelling good. Mr. Spencer and Perry arrived one hour after us from Camp Ziegler. Dr. S. and party are through here. They are camping with their last load on the other side.

May 26th-05 Friday

Arose at 1 p.m. Mr. Spencer and Perry left for Camp Ziegler at 2:20. After unloading our sledges we left at 3 p.m. The weather was fine when we started but on the road we had some snow and drift with the north west wind. At 8:10 we arrived at Wiener Neustadt Isl. Had bear steak, scrambled eggs and tea for supper. Stewart and Tessem go over to the water hole to look for game. My eyes are getting better.

May 27-05 Saturday

Arose at 10 a.m. Weather fine. Sun is shining warm through the tent. We had cornmeal and bear steak for breakfast. Turned the dogs loose for an hour to limber up. They certainly seemed to enjoy it. We took out last loads and left at 2 p.m. The travelling



is very good and we are making good time. Stopped opposite the spires on "Cony Isl." for lunch at 5:45. Started again at 8 and arrived at North Isl. 9:50. Mr. Spencer and Perry were encamped there and had coffee ready for us. They went out to the waterhole to look for game while we had supper. Tessem went over to the rocks and shot a few guillemot while I scraped a bear skin which I brought down from the rookery.

May 28th-05 Sunday

Mr. Spencer and Perry left at 2 p.m. for Camp Ziegler with a load of provisions. We arose at 3. After breakfast Mr. Stewart and I hitched up a team and went over to the waterhole on the east side of the isl. We shot two seals but got only one. The other sank before we could reach him. Had bear steak and scrambled eggs for lunch and left with our last loads to Camp Ziegler half an hour before midnight. It is clouding up and light snow is falling.

May 29th-05 Monday

Arrived at Camp Ziegler 3 ock. in the morning. It is snowing and thick. Slept until noon. Drifting and snowing in the evening. The wind is west.

May 30th-05 Tuesday

Mr. Porter and Butland came in from Zichy Land about 11 ock. last night. Mr. Porter seemed very satisfied with his work.

May 31st-05 Wednesday

Left Camp Ziegler for Zichy Land at 8 last night and arrived there at 1 this morning. John and I shot a ptarmigan each. The weather is sulky, snowing and thick. We turned in at 6 a.m. and arose again at 2 p.m. Had cornmeal and ptarmigan for breakfast. Mr. Spencer shot two more ptarmigan after breakfast. At 6 p.m. we packed up and travelled over to the place where Mr. Porter had cached the bears. We got them at 8 p.m. and are just getting settled for lunch. Dug up the bear meat. Took one carcass along and left for the waterhole about 5 miles up the channel.

June 1st-05 Thursday

Made camp after travelling for two hours at 1 this morning on a point in Zichy Land commanding the view of three channels. There is a waterhole outside here and we will stay a while for the purpose of getting some game. Turned in at 5 a.m. The weather is misty and some snow falling. Arose again at 4 p.m. Had breakfast and went over to the waterhole. Saw no seals and returned while Tessem and John stay and shoot guillemot. This district seems quite deserted of all game. Snowing and misty. Decided to turn back. Left after lunch on guillemot and scrambled eggs at 15 minutes past midnight.

June 2nd-05 Friday

After taking on the bear meat we passed on to a point about 3 miles farther on in the direction south east from there. Made camp and will stay for a while and if possible do some hunting. Overcast and a light east wind blowing. The temp. seems to keep below freezing so the travelling is still very good. Arose at 2 p.m. Tessem went up in the rocks looking for ptarmigan but saw none. After breakfast I took a look up there and shot a pair of them, one white, the other brown. Overcast, east wind.



June 3rd-05 Saturday

Broke camp at 2 this morning and drove around to the cache on the other side the cape. John went up in the rocks and got one ptarmigan. For supper we had ptarmigan and egg omelettes. Turned in at 7:30 pm. Left for Camp Ziegler at 11 pm.

June 4th-05 Sunday

Arrived at Camp Ziegler 6:45 this morning. Duffy, MacKiernan, and Meyers are back. They found nothing of value down at Cape Tegetthoff. Mr. Peters wants me to go up and look for Mr. Fiala and Chief. Tessem and Mr. Rilliet go along. Two teams and sledges. We will bring down the boat from the rookery.

June 5th-05 Monday

Been repairing our sledges and replenishing our provisions. Are ready to leave after supper. Left at 7:10. The atmosphere is very pressing and the dogs are very drowsy. Leaving North Isl. behind it grew a little colder. We ran across a fresh bear track and pretty soon we sighted the bear. We had the dogs behind a hummock, turned some of them loose and Mr. Rilliet went after him. The dogs got him treed on an iceberg and kept him there until Mr. R. got up. He emptied 8 shots out of his pistol and three out of his rifle, still the bear was alive, walking around. I ran up with team and put two more bullets in him before he dropped, Mr. Rilliet being short of ammunition. Three of the dogs had light wounds, one ran off and did not show up any more. By his trail we could see that he was wounded. We cached the meat and continued. Overcast. Light N.E. wind.

May 6th-05 Tuesday

Made camp on the ice at 3 this morning. Arose at 7 pm. Stopped at the rookery for lunch 2:30 the 7th of June and kept on to Kane Lodge. Tessem shot a seal on the way. The travelling is good. Arrived at the Lodge 8 a.m. the 7th of June.

June 8th-05 Thursday

Arose at midnight. Had breakfast and Tessem and I went over Cape Washington, climbed the glacier and went about 5 miles inland to a cape from where we could get a view of Coalmine Isl. and around Greely Isl. No sign of Mr. Fiala. Returning we discovered more coal. We brought some of it to the lodge and found it to burn very well. We came back at 7 a.m. After lunch I started to make a new sleeping bag of the fur pants left here. Overcast, N.E. wind.

June 9th Friday

Arose at 5 a.m. Had breakfast and started out for Kuhn Isl. The weather was fine, snow hard and the sledges ran easy. We met with several water holes and finally came to a standstill in front of what looked to be quite an extensive open water. We turned back to a low place of the glacier where Mr. Rilliet and I climbed up and travelled across until we got a view of the capes on Greely Isl. and could see way up to Rainer and Becker Isls. and along Alex. Land. We could detect no traces of the Commander. The ice looked quite rotten as far as Rainer Isl. Along Alex. Land it still seemed fairly good. Returned to the Lodge after 4 hours absence. Worked on the new sleeping bag after lunch and supper. Turned in at midnight. Calm and clear.



June 10th-05 Saturday

Been working on sleeping bags all day. Tessem hunting seal but got none. The weather fine, sun shining, warm and the snow melting. Left the dogs loose part of day.

June 11th-05 Sunday

Blowing, snowing and wet. Repairing boots and fixing up skis and sledges for wet travelling. The spring on my watch is broken so we can't keep track of the time very well.

June 12th-05 Monday

After cleaning the house and leaving a letter for Mr. Fiala we packed our sledges and left in the forenoon for the rookery. Arriving there made camp and spent the better part of the day hunting quillemot, seals, and ducks. The sun came very hot at noon. The rest of day has been snowing and a good east wind blowing. Tessem is out tonight after a big seal. He did not get it but shot a duck.

June 13th-05 Tuesday

After breakfast we loaded the boat on the big sled and hauled down to the water where we launched it. Tessem rowed around on the other side the glacier while Mr. R. and I took the dog team and sleds over the rocks. Stopped for lunch on the other side. Overcast.

June 14th-05 Wednesday

Broke camp at midnight and travelled about 10 miles and made camp for the night. Overcast and thick, A N.W. wind blowing. Some snow falling. Had duck for supper. Arose at 5 p.m., had breakfast and broke camp at 6:30, arriving at the bear meat cache where we stopped for lunch at 9 p.m.

June 15th-05 Thursday

After loading on the bear meat and skin and being done with lunch we started again at 10:30 last night and kept on until 1:30 this morning when we made camp at North Isl. Cloudy and a good S.W. wind.

June 16th-05 Friday

Left North Isl. last night for Camp Ziegler where we arrived about 10:30. Turn in after a good supper on bear meat and potatoes 2 this morning. Arose for breakfast at 9 a.m. Mr Peters asked me to go up to Camp Abruzzi which I agreed to do. Tessem and Rilliet follow. Dr. Seitz, Butland, and Stewart are over to Negri Fjord hunting. Mr. Peters sent Mac. and Duffy over to bring the canoe here as we will need it going north. Spent the afternoon packing up provisions. The party from Negri Fjord came back after supper. They had shot a bear and two seals. Drifting from the west.

June 17th-05 Saturday

Drifting bad all day. Got everything ready to start in the morning if weather permits. Repaired my watch.

June 18th-05 Sunday

It was still drifting and snowing this morning. After breakfast we harnessed up and left at 10:50. At 1:20 we stopped for lunch at North Isl. The wind stopped and it is gradually clearing up. At 7:30 we made camp for the night on the ice a little north of Cape Trieste.



June 19th-05 Monday

Arose at 9 a.m. Some wind from the north during the night. Broke camp at 11:20. The light wind from the north now and then bringing a cloud of snow in our faces made it just comfortably cool for travelling. The dogs were livelier than yesterday and we made good time. Arriving at the water hole we launched the canoe and while Mr. Rilliet rowed it around, Tessem and I took the teams across the point. We arrived at the rookery 3:20. The ice is breaking up fast around here. It extends all around and past the rookery and almost across Collinson Channel. At 5:15 we left the dogs chasing from seal hole to seal hole. Travelled at a good rate. The going up the channel was remarkably good for the season. Arrived at Kane Lodge at 8 p.m. It was drifting and blowing quite hard. The wind is N.N.W.

June 20th-05 Tuesday

Arose at 12 a.m. Still blowing bad. Mr. Rilliet and I went up on the rocks to see about the ice. The loose ice is all packed in on this side so it will be quite difficult to launch the canoe and as the wind is against us we will wait until it calms down. I spent the day half soling my komagers. Tessem shot some guillemot which we had for lunch. Turn in at midnight. Wet snow and strong N.W. wind.

June 21st-05 Wednesday

Arose at noon. Had breakfast and packed up and left for the water hole expecting to cross. When we got down there we found the ice packed in worse than yesterday. We decided to wait a couple of hours for the tide to change. In the meantime I climbed up on the dome to see if there was any possibility of crossing it. A thick snow cloud swept over the highest part so I could not make out anything on the other side. Went down again and had lunch. The ice kept piling in so there was of no use waiting any longer. We packed up and travelled around to the eastern end where we ascended the glacier. Going up the slope it commenced to drift and snow so badly that we had to go into camp. It was then 9 o'clk. in the evening. Took two cans of pemmican from the house.

June 22nd-05 Thursday

Arose at 1 p.m. It has been snowing considerably during the night. Wind is gone down and the sun is shining through the mist and some light snow yet falling. Broke camp at 3:45. Got up on the top about an hour later. It was snowing and very thick and impossible to see anything. We descended in the fog and after a few hours run we were down. At the cape on the east end of the island we made the ice. After rounding the cape we stopped for lunch. At 9:15 we were off again heading north.

June 23rd Friday

After 4 hours travelling through deep snow and thick fog and wet snow falling we arrived at the rocks on the unnamed isl. east of Stoliczka. We moved up on the island and made camp at 1 o'clk. this morning. The weather is miserable. Thick and wet snow falling. There is open water right across to Stoliczka. Any farther we can not see for the fog. We are encamped just back of Cape Kremsmunster. Turned in at 4 a.m. Arose at 2 p.m. Still



snowing and foggy. Wind N.W. After breakfast we moved over to the other side the isl. to find a place where to descend on the ice. It became so thick that we were forced to go into camp not finding a way down.

June 24th-05 Saturday

At 9 last night it cleared up so that got a glimpse of the country. We packed up and descended to the ice about 10 p.m. 11:20 we were up on the point of Jackson Isl. across Back's Inlet. Took some bearings and crossed the point. Finding the going good we made good progress and when we made camp at 2 this morning we were at the entrance to the channel between Alex. Land and Rainer Isl. Arose at 3 p.m. Overcast and drizzling. Broke camp at 4:30 p.m. The travelling up the channel was good. Arrived at Coburg Isl. at 9 p.m. Three bears were prowling around but made off as soon as they saw us. Stopped for lunch on the isl. There is open water on the point and on this side of "Hohenloe. Isl". Left at 10:20 for Hohenloe Isl. After crossing a narrow strip of water using a floe as bridge we had no trouble. The rest of the going was good. Arrived at Hohenloe ten minutes after midnight. The weather is fair, temp about freezing.

June 25th-05 Sunday

Arose at 3 p.m. Left for Rudolph Land at 5 ock. Arrived there 7:30. Very thick and raining. The snow lies very deep in the channel. Wind N.W. and increasing. Had lunch and crossed the island in a very dense fog.

June 26th-05 Monday

Arrived at Abruzzi after some fumbling around on the glacier in the fog and rain this morning at 1 ock. Nobody here and no message. The house seems to have been empty for quite a while. Things are molding. We dug our way in and after cleaning up a little we had supper. Did not turn in until towards morning. Arose at 7 p.m. Tessem had breakfast ready. Found a camera in the observatory amongst other instruments packed away there and have been busy all day taking pictures, developing and printing, and have just managed to make something out of them. Tonight calm, warm and foggy at instruments.

June 27th-05 Tuesday

Turned in at noon and arose at 8 p.m. We have had fine weather today. I have taken a lot of pictures and developed and printed.

June 28th-05 Wednesday

Turn in at 3 this morning. Arose at 10 p.m. Taken some more pictures and developed and printed some. Have had the dogs loose all day. The ice is still packed in the bight as far as we can see. Stayed up all night and

June 29th-05 Thursday

Turned in at 4 this evening. Weather still good.

June 30th-05 Friday

Arose at about 10 a.m. Been busy fixing up our clothing and getting things ready to leave. Stayed up all night. Overcast and some snow falling during day.

July 1st-05 Saturday

Turn in at 5 a.m. Arose for breakfast at 11:30 a.m. Tessem and I have put up trail rations. We will probably be ready to leave tomorrow. Fair weather, wind S. The mainspring in my watch broken. I managed to get the watch running by riveting the spring together.



July 2nd-05 Sunday

Turned in at 3 a.m. Arose again at 11 a.m. After breakfast we packed the sledges, cleaned the house. At 5 we had everything in order, had our last lunch, nailed up the windows and doors, and left for south, leaving a note, at 6:30. A good south wind was blowing and it felt rather cold on the glacier. A thick mist hung over the dome but to no bother for us. At 9:30 we were down on the south side east of Cape Brorak. Made camp for the night. Fixed the canoe after supper.

July 3rd-05 Sunday

Turned in at 2 this morning. Arose again after a long restless sleep at 4 p.m. Thick and snowing. Wind S.W. Loaded on the canoe and left for Hohenloe Isl. at 7:20. Passed 6 bears in a bunch. They all made off over the isl. Stopped for lunch at 10:40. Calm and thick.

July 4th-05 Monday.

Left Hohenloe Isl. afterlunch at 11:50 last night. Passing Coburg Isl. we stopped and shot some guillemot for supper. Arrived at the little Coburg about 3:30 where we made camp for the night. The ice is getting very rotten now. The sledge with the canoe on broke through twice giving us wet feet, and Rilliet fell in to his waist only saving himself from a complete bath by hanging on to the railing of the boat.

July 5th-05 Tuesday

Arose at midnight. At 1:15 a.m. we broke camp. It was snowing and very thick fog. Wind south. The going is miserable, deep snow and pools of water. At 6:30 we stopped for lunch at the entrance to De Long Fjord. (most likely confused with Keltie Sd.) Clearing up and stopped snowing. After lunch we continued down to Jackson Isl. where we arrived at 11:30 a.m. Some more wet snow and fog. Made camp for the night. A good breeze from south.

July 6th-05 Wednesday

Arose at 10 p.m. last night. After breakfast we crossed the edge of the rocks about 2 miles down the channel. The channel was crossed without trouble and at 5:27 a.m. we stopped for lunch a little ways from Cape Kremsmunster. After lunch we travelled on to Cape Baldwin. The sun came out hot. Camped at the cape for the night. Calm and clear.

July 7th-05 Thursday

Arose at 3 a.m. Overcast but calm and fairly clear. Broke camp at 5 a.m. and stopped for lunch on top of the dome of Greely Isl. at 9:15 a.m. Weather fair. We encountered some water pools as we started to ascend the glacier where we had to wade around up to our knees in order to pull the sledges through. The going is not bad on the glacier. In some places we met deep snow which is very hard on the dogs which sink down up to their bellies. At 2:30 we arrived in Kane Lodge. The place is very dirty looking. The snow having melted down leaving all the rock uncoverd. The ice in the channel seems still fairly good. A lot of water is, of course, gathered on the surface where the snow has melted away. Calm and clear. Tessem shot 3 geese.

July 8th-05 Friday

Stopped at Kane Lodge all day, drying clothes and repairing. A light west wind, fair weather.

(There is confusion with the July dates not corrected until Tues, July 11)



July 9th-05 Saturday

Left Kane Lodge at 12 a.m. Arrived at the rookery 3:20. Stayed for lunch. Went around to the other side of the water.

July 10th-05 Sunday

Arose at 10 a.m. The weather is brilliant. Let the dogs loose a few hours. Shot a seal. Left at 4 p.m. Arrived at North Isl. at 11 p.m. We crossed it and camped on the south side an hour later. Calm and clear.

July 11th-05 Tuesday

Left North Isl. at 3:25 and arrived at Camp Ziegler at 6:20 p.m. Found Mr. Fiala and Mr. Hartt here. They arrived one day after we left for Camp Abruzzi. 1 hour after us Dr. Seitz with Mr. Stewart and Butland came in from Cape Dillon where they had been stationed for a week. They report favorable ice conditions south. John and Perry are over at the west camp where they have a house built. Everyone is in good health. Weather fair with east wind.

July 12th-05 Wednesday

Tessem and I went over to the west camp with a dog team and our sleeping gear to take a rest for a few days. We left in the afternoon. When we got over there we saw John and Perry coming from Matilda where they had been hunting. We were received well in the house built there while we were away. They had some birds and John fried some ducks and auks for supper. Thick and raining tonight.

July 13th-05 Thursday

West Camp. Resting all day. Wind west, snow and foggy.

July 14th-05 Friday

Went over to Matilda Isl. today. Had a good view over the open water between Cape Dillon and Brady Isl. Weather fair, wind west.

July 15th-05 Saturday

John and Tessem went over to Matilda Isl. to shoot some birds while Perry and I stayed in camp. I baked some "bannocks" and cooked the lunch. In the afternoon I spent a couple of hours on the mountain under "Pikes's Peak". Through glasses I had a good view of the neighboring sounds and islands. The weather has been fine. Some snow falling tonight. West wind.

July 16th-05 Sunday

We left the west camp at 2 p.m. today and arrived at East Camp Ziegler about 3:30 p.m. Dr. Seitz and Mr. Stewart and Butland had already departed for Cape Dillon with two dog teams and indian canoe. They are to stay there for 21 days unless the relief ship is sighted before, then in which case they return to camp immediately. Foggy and snowing.

July 17th-05 Monday

Duffy and MacKiernan and Perry left today with two dog teams and a small canvas boat for Cape Dillon to remain until the other party returns. Fair weather. Been repairing shoes.

July 18th-05 Tuesday

Been repairing the old horse stable and digging out lumber for a small house which Tessem and I have in mind to build for ourselves. It is freezing and a cold west wind blowing.

July 19th-05 Wednesday

Went over together with Tessem to the west camp for some lumber for the shack we are going to build for ourselves. West wind



and some snow falling. Returned at 6:20 p.m. The dogs have a hard time with their feet on the hard crust formed on the ice after the freezing of last night. Most all of them have had cuts which seems to bother them considerably.

July 20th-05 Thursday

Been repairing my komagers. The weather fair, west wind. Took a walk up to the mountains tonight. Could not see any open water down south.

July 21st-05 Friday

Repaired the stable. Finished the work on my komagers. It has been blowing and raining hard all day. We had to take the tent down and move into the house. Wind west.

July 22nd-05 Saturday

Cooked dog mush in the morning. Done some work in the stables. South west wind continues with rain. The ice is starting to break up in the channel.

I herewith submit a report on the field work accomplished---- (Then follows a listing of the supplies received from storekeeper Rilliet and a listing of the stores hauled from Kane Lodge to Camp Ziegler plus some notes on departure and arrival times on this last journey. This ends book 14. The next entries are taken from some loose pages.)

July 24th-05 Monday

Cooked dog mush and worked on the stable.

July 25th-05 Tuesday

Cooked dog mush and worked on the stable.

July 26th-05

Cooked dog mush and worked on the stable.

July 27th-05 Thursday

Cooked dog mush and worked on the stable.

July 28th-05 Friday

Fair weather, just a light rain at noon. Tessem and I went over to McClintock Isl. hunting, got nothing. Cooked dog mush and worked on the stable.

July 29th-05 Saturday

Weather fair, the wind--- Cooked some dog mush, worked on the stable. The ship did not come.

July 30th-05 Sunday

Party from Cape Dillon arrived at about 1:30 this afternoon with news that the ship was arrived. Great stir in camp. Mr. Champ on board. Captain, Kjeldsen. The ship's name is "Terra Nova". It arrived at Cape Dillon last night and left this morning for Cape Flora. It will be back to fetch us tomorrow. We have been busy packing all afternoon. Cooked dog mush and soldered up some instruments for Mr. Peters.

July 31st-05 Monday

After packing all provisions in the stable and nailing the house up, we left for Cape Dillon at 12:45 p.m. On the road we met Mr. Champ and some of the ship's crew. They had left the Terra Nova at 6 a.m. The going was miserable on account of the water on the ice. We were too enthusiastic to pay any attention to it. We were all wet over our knees, wading through big pools



deep enough to float the boats on the sledges in many places. At about 8 p.m. we arrived at the ship. All our stuff was hoisted on board and soon after we were steaming to Cape Flora where a boat was to be put ashore there.

August 1st-05 Tuesday

Arrived at Cape Flora about noon today after lying still for fog for a few hours. At about 3 p.m. we left and are steaming full speed for home. Weather fine, calm.

August 2nd-05 Wednesday

Until about 4 this morning we met no ice but since then we have only advanced very slow and are at present at rest. Weather very fine and calm.

August 3rd-05 Thursday

Fine weather all day. Making fair progress through the ice.

Aug. 6th-05 Sunday

It cleared up about midnight and we started soon reaching thin rotten ice through which the ship plowed without much trouble. At noon today we got clear of the ice and setting the sails we made about 9 1/2 miles an hour. Tonight we were all called aft and drinks were served and toasts for Mr. Champ and America and Norway were drunk. Weather south-west wind, some snow in the morning.

This ends the journal

[The relief ship, TERRA NOVA, carried the English Captain Robert Scott to the Antarctic in 1911. Scott, who died within 12 miles of succor, reached the South Pole January 17, 1912, three weeks after the Norwegian, Roald Amundsen. The story of these two men is fascinating.]



NEW YORK, Nov 21, 1905

TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:+

This is to certify that ANTON VEDOE has been honorably discharged from the ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION 1903-1905.

He served aboard the expedition ship the S/Y "AMERICA" as Second Assistant Engineer, in which capacity he proved efficient. He also was of great value in attending to the electrical work of the expedition.

After the loss of the "AMERICA" Engineer Vedoe assisted in the work of the expedition on shore and proved to be of great value in the many sledge journeys made between 1903 and 1905. He is especially recommended for honesty, efficiency and faithfulness.

Respectfully,



COMMANDING ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION.



From the NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC MAGAZINE- September 1905

THE ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION

The loss of their ship, with most of their stores and equipment, almost at the beginning of their Arctic campaign, was mainly responsible for the modest achievements of the Ziegler Polar Expedition of 1903-1905. The party did not get farther north than 82° 13', which is some degrees south of Abruzzi's record, but they did considerable surveying and conducted scientific observations of value. On arrival of the expedition in Norway, Commander Fiala issued the following statement:

"Our rescue was most timely. By my order the AMERICA wintered in Teplitz Bay, where early in the winter of 1903-4 the ship was crushed in the ice and became a total loss, together with big quantities of coal and provisions.

"Supplies of stores left at Franz Josef Land by various relief parties saved us very serious privations. Three attempts to reach a high latitude failed. The scientific work, however, as planned was successfully carried out by Mr. Wm. J. Peters of the United States Geographical Survey.

Our rescue was due to the splendid efforts of Mr. William S. Champ, secretary of the late William Ziegler, who owing to the terrible weather, failed to reach us last year, and to the untiring zeal of Captain Kkjeldsen and his Norwegian officers and crew, who for six weeks persistently forced their way through solid floes of ice and finally reached us.

"An abundance of stores had been left in the Franz Josef Archipelago by the Duke of Abruzzi and the André relief expedition, so that we did not suffer serious difficulties on that score."

In the spring of 1904 repeated attempts were made eastward and westward to force a passage to the Pole. The conditions, however, were insurmountable. The expedition found much open water, and day after day encountered fresh dangers and difficulties. Ultimately the supply of provisions ran short and a painful journey southward was begun, the members of the expedition finally reaching the depots at Cape Flora, Cape Dillon and Camp Ziegler, among which they were distributed and where they managed to eke out the limited supplies by catches of walrus and bear.

The relations between the members of the expedition were most cordial and all took turns at duty, doing the hard work willingly.

Mr. W.J. Peters, second in command, and who was in charge of the scientific work.....has cabled" "No record. Conditions unfavorable. Considerable scientific work"

Mr. Champ, leader of the relief expedition which sailed from Tromsø June 14 on the TERRA NOVA, deserves much credit for bringing back the party. The ice was unusually thick the past summer, and a less courageous man would have failed to get through.

On July 29 the TERRA NOVA reached Cape Dillon, and found six members of the Ziegler expedition safe and well. From this outpost sleds were dispatched to notify Mr. Fiala at the headquarters camp of the arrival of the rescue ship.

The TERRA NOVA reach Cape Flora July 30 and found more members



of the expedition. These had become weakened by the hardships they had endured, and some of them were so ill that they could not have held out for another winter.

Returning to Cape Dillon, Mr. Champ organized a sled party and started for the headquarters camp, from which he brought back M. Fiala and his comrades.

The TERRA NOVA sailed home August 1. It got out of the ice pack August 6 and returned in excellent condition, arriving in Tromsø August 11.



From the NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC MAGAZINE- January 1906

The ANNUAL DINNER OF THE NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY

Excerpts:

The Toastmaster-.....We have with us tonight the leader of the Ziegler Polar Expedition. He was the second in command of the first Ziegler Polar Expedition, which was compelled to return. He was then placed in command of the second expedition. Our Mr. Peters .....was second in command..... The second expedition stayed in the Arctic over two years, and after many hardships-fighting with climatic condition no human power could combat- was rescued by our friend Mr. Champ..... Mr. Anthony Fiala will respond to the toast "The Arctic."

The Arctic- Mr. Fiala

.....I think I ought to be here in fear, but the fact that I know you are all brother explorers gives me courage. Every person, as in the days of old, in the days of adventure, who is looking to or doing something new, is an explorer, so that I feel that I am with my friends, brother explorers. The toast is a large one, and I won't attempt to treat fully of it. I know I could not respond to it as it should be. There are veterans in this room, one in particular, who could tell more of the Arctic than I could. .... There are only two places, practically, on this earth where there is still a chance of investigation, of discovery, the chance of making new maps, that is in the Arctic and the Antarctic.

A returned explorer has generally to face three questions- I know they have come to me. One is, "How far did you get?" That one is a hard one to answer: it makes the explorer feel badly. The second one is, "What is this all good for, anyway.?" and the third, "What do you go up there for and waste your life away in that region of ice and snow?" and yet your answer to that last question brings back the first, as to how far north you got-showing they have an interest in why you went there.

I have often thought of our trip into the north. The first year, two sledge trips went over the ice and were failures, and then there was the return to Cape Flora, 160 miles south, where our relief ship was anchored in the ice, and there a large number of men waited while another party went north during the month of September, reaching our northern outpost November 20. Now the sun went below the horizon on October 22, and so you can imagine how much light there was to travel over these ice fields after the sun was down. Mr. Peters and myself with a sledge ran repeatedly into ice columns which neither of us had seen, because of the darkness being so dense. The moon fortunately appeared, and we traveled over a glacier a thousand feet high to reach our camp, and that Thanksgiving Day will be a Thanksgiving Day that every member of that party will remember as long as he lives. To you who have traveled in other countries the daily life of the man on the polar trail is possibly of interest. These great



fields of ice are in constant motion under the currents and the winds. Imagine yourself on 500 miles of solid ice grinding with that immeasurable force against a rock-bound coast; can you possibly comprehend what sort of conditions you have to combat?

You have to take care of your dogs; you have been traveling over ten hours a day, and when the time comes to camp at night the first thing the dogs have to be unharnessed and the temperature is possibly 30° or 40° below zero, and you have to take your mittens off to get the dogs out of the harness. The poor dogs are tired, and the little dogs crawl down in the holes made for them to sleep in. Then you go to put your tent up, and when you light your lamp and start to cook the interior of the tent fills with an intense vapor which you can hardly see through, and this vapor condenses on the interior of the tent and forms clusters of frost crystals that you have to brush off, and then it melts and forms part of the little rivulets of water that accompany your sleep that night. The sleeping bag itself, however, is a great place of comfort, and you know of what pleasant times you have in your dreamland at night thawing out your sleeping bag of ice- and you can imagine this sleeping bag thawed out in the moist atmosphere of its interior. These are simply ideas; we go there for that and we are perfectly satisfied. .... And then the next morning you get up at your usual time and it often seems as though you only had half an hour or even fifteen minutes' slumber, and sometimes if you get that much on a very cold night you are lucky.

So you have to confront a problem of a trip 500 miles up and then there is 500 miles back; your dogs eat a pound a day and a man eats three pounds a day. If you make 10 miles a day, which never has been made, it would take you 100 days. Your dogs eat one pound a day, and if you have 10 dogs that means 10 pounds; a man eats three pounds a day, and without taking into consideration the weight of your sleeping bag, tent or any of the equipment, there would be an expenditure of 13 pounds a day. Now you can put about 600 pounds on a sledge, so you can realize what the total weight must be, and you will realize some of the problems that stand before the explorer.

Then of course you know about these sledge trips. We have to work many hours a day. We start out about 5 o'clock in the morning and work late in the afternoon, and some days we do not make more than a mile and a half, the poor little dogs, pulling only as dogs can, do their best.

To me it seems that the end of the Pole will be reached .... I have often thought that a drift ship would be the way-..... equipped with wireless telegraphy, and then the party would leave it and go off on their sledge trips and communicate back and forth with the drift ship by means of the wireless telegraph.....

.....we have received the commandment, "Subdue the earth," and as long as there is a spot on the earth that has not been subdued man will try to accomplish what he was placed on earth to do.



The Toastmaster

..... Mr. Champ.... led the expedition that rescued Mr. Fiala ....after they had been in the Arctic over two years and their position had become one of extreme peril. I shall ask Mr. Champ to get up and say a word .....

A Polar Bear Story- Mr. W.S. Champ

..... I pay tribute to.....the National Geographic Society for their hearty cooperation and their assistance in equipping the Ziegler expedition with such a worthy representative as Mr. W.J. Peters. In addition to Mr. Peters, there was also another member attached to the expedition who is also a member of your society. I refer to Mr. Russell W. Porter, and I am proud to say, gentlemen, that these two men assisted by a few others accomplished a great deal of work under the most trying conditions.

.....I feel like asking your indulgence in listening to a little story, an incident which happened on board our relief ship this year. Today there is in your zoological park a small bear called "Buster", a polar bear. This member was captured by the relief ship and presented to the National Zoological Park. I want to tell you in a few words the story of his capture. To me it appeals strongly, as it occurred after we had been in the pack about 20 days, or about 150 miles into the pack. We were enveloped in a very dense fog for three days, and when the fog lifted on the skyline we noticed a very large bear with a young cub. Everybody on board ship was very quiet when we went into the pack, though we knew there was nothing to fear and waited to see what the bears would do. .... there is no sport in killing a polar bear; they come right up to the ship; they do not know what a human being is, and as a result of their hunger and curiosity they come right up to you; this bear had evidently been hunting for food for several days. She encircled the ship entirely and gradually worked her way up to the ship. In the meantime, the doctor who was on board and one of the harpooners and myself went on the ice and crawled up toward the bear behind a huge cake of ice and finally dispatched the old bear. As a usual thing, when a mother is shot the cub will run away, but in this instance the young bear sat over the mother and fought us off. We sent the harpooner back to the ship for more ropes and more men. We lassoed the cub and brought it back to the ship, and in its efforts to get back to its mother it very nearly bit its tongue off. We made it fast to the deck, and that was about 6 o'clock in the evening. About 9 o'clock the little bear was suffering so from distress that I finally I told the captain if he would shoot it, it would be a great relief, but I didn't want him to shoot it while I was on the deck or on the ship. I was going down the gangway when the thought struck me, if I can get the skin of the mother to this cub, possibly it will quiet her. I went on deck and told the captain to get the skin of the mother, and the little cub jumped on the skin and fell asleep. It slept for about 20 hours; the only sign of life in the cub was the twitching of its muscles. About three days after that I was standing watching the cub; its tongue was so swollen that it could not eat anything; it took its mother's skin and turned it over and started eating the blubber, the fat off



of its own mother. It lived for eight days that way. After that we took the mother's skin away and brought it to New York, and shipped the cub to the park here, and that little bear is now in Washington.



From The NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC MAGAZINE- January 1907

### FIGHTING THE POLAR ICE

In "Fighting the Polar Ice", just published by Messrs Doubleday, Page & Co., Mr. Fiala gives a graphic narrative of the Ziegler Polar Expedition of 1903-1905.

..... The expedition left Norway early in July, 1903 but owing to the great amount of ice encountered failed to reach Teplitz Bay in Franz Josef Land, before the end of August. As a result they had not time before the darkness set in to discharge the supplies, and were therefore compelled to keep their ship in an open roadstead, where she was finally crushed and sunk by the ice with more than half the provisions and coal. What they had taken ashore, however, was sufficient for one year.

The failure of the relief ship to appear in 1904 would have seriously embarrassed the party if it had not been for the abundant stores cached at Cape Flora by the Duke of Abruzzi, and a vein of coal found by Assistant Engineer Vedoe 600 feet up on the talus. The coal burned freely. Twenty tons of it were mined out of the frozen clay and carried down the steep talus on the backs of men.

....The lowest temperature recorded was 60.2 below zero (Fahr.), on January 5, 1905.

..... "It is a curious fact that when one dog has antagonized the others the only way to save him from destruction later on is chain him. Then the other dogs let him alone. Unfortunately for us, the dogs that seemed to incur the enmity of their fellows, were the large, strong animals- the bullies and fighters. There seemed to be a degree of justice in their judgements. From close observation, I found that the dogs generally forgave a bite on the head or body, while an attack on the legs seemed to be considered foul play and must be paid for by the life of the offending canine- the whole pack uniting in his execution.

"The one important point in which our equipment differed radically from that prepared for other attempts over the polar ice was in the use of ponies. These tough little animals are accustomed to the very lowest temperatures experienced in the steppes of Siberia, some parts of which are considered the coldest places of the earth. They are also accustomed to forcing their way through deep snows and across frozen rivers whose shorelines are lined with broken ice and deep drifts. They had been used first by Jackson, who believed them superior to dog teams and used them in preference to dogs on his trips of exploration and survey through the Franz Josef Archipelago.

"On smooth ice the dogs traveled faster than their rivals, but as soon as they struck rough going, the ponies outdistanced the dogs easily, at the same time dragging heavier loads. The men driving the dog teams were tired out at the end of a day's march by the constant exertion in helping the dogs pull their loads up grades and over ice-blocks, but it was seldom that the ponies required assistance.

"Over 120 polar bears were killed during our two years stay



..... Scurvy was unknown and the general good health of the party was good.

"During the summer our party secured seventeen bears, and we luxuriated in bear steaks fried in butter. Most of the men enjoyed the meat, which was not unlike beef when prepared carefully, by cutting away all fat before frying. The fat gave the meat a rancid taste.

"In the nesting time of the gulls and loons, several of the sailors went up the talus daily, dragging with them a long ladder that they had constructed and, at the risk of their lives, clambered up the precipitous side of the great rock and robbed the nests. Many of the eggs were fresh, and when fried with the ham we had found in the Duke's cache gave us a breakfast not to be despised.

"Eight hundred brant and several hundred loons were shot and added to our larder and sixteen great walruses and about the same number of seals. Walrus liver was considered a delicacy, but the meat proper was rather tough and made one think he was dining on automobile tires."

The party also shot a number of ptarmigan, which is interesting as the first recorded appearance of these birds in the archipelago.....



Porter's Story of the Ziegler Polar Expedition 1903-1905

Following are some excerpts from "The Arctic Diary of Russell Williams Porter", published by University Press of Virginia, 1976. Copies can be obtained from Books on Demand, Ann Arbor Michigan. The excerpts cover the sledge trip of Vedoe and Porter starting March 27, 1904, as well as provide some background material of other aspects of this expedition.

"On the commander's return to New York that fall, (following the Baldwin Ziegler Expedition) and after Mr. Ziegler had received all the facts of the previous year's work and from various members of the expedition, Mr. Baldwin was peremptorily removed from command. Curious to know who would take his place as head of the second expedition, I anxiously awaited the mails. .... Then a letter from Fiala. 'I have been chosen. Will you go with me?'

Anthony Fiala- all explorers now know Fiala, who outfits parties to all quarters of the globe. Fiala had been the official photographer to Baldwin and had made a clean job of it, bringing back a fine photographic record of the year's effort. Everybody **liked Fiala**. .... Nearly all the old men wanted to go with Fiala

... The AMERICA, reconditioned, (left Norway) ... and with one or two false starts we found the right lead through the pack and soon raised familiar landmarks over the northern horizon. Cape Flora was revisited... then a determined drive at the British Channel for a high northing. The gods were certainly with us here. Day after day, little by little, the pack moved away from the land and allowed the the AMERICA to squeeze through. By September we were at the most northerly tip of Europe-Rudolph Island- nothing beyond but the floating polar pack, clear to the pole. ... Landing at the Baldwin cache, we took it aboard and proceeded around a headland into a rather shallow bay to what proved to be winter quarters.

"Here five years before, the Duke of Abruzzi, nephew to the king of Italy, had wintered and with sleds reached at that time the farthest north, a few miles beyond Nansen's record. Evidence of past occupancy was noticeable ashore- a large tent where the Italians had been forced to live when their vessel had been forced up on the beach, a large cache of food boxes on a pile of rocks. ... An extensive raised beach overlooking the bay offered a place to dig in for the winter. A house was to be erected there, also the circus tent to shelter the animals, while the ship was to be occupied by the crew.

"The bay was not much good as a harbor; it hardly indented the coastline. More sheltered places had been found among the islets farther south, but at the first intimation of the ship's leaving us, such a protest arose from those who were to remain ashore that the commander decided, I am sure against his better judgement, to dock the AMERICA alongside the fast, old ice filling the bay, with no protection from north and west- and from which anchorage she was destined never to leave.

... When the house was completed, electric lights were installed, supplied by cable over the bay ice from a generator aboard ship, where steam was to be maintained in the boilers. ....



"... By November darkness was upon us in earnest. The first intimation to us on shore that all was not right on the ship came one night when the arc light in the living room went out. .... I went out across the bay following the cable. Aboard the AMERICA all was commotion. Caught between the fast ice of the bay and the relentless pressure of the pack, she was held between the jaws of a vise. Slowly under the terrific pressure her sides were being crushed in.

"Somebody leaned over the rail far above me. It was the steward. 'Look out below', he cried, and heaved down a gunny sack that crashed on the ice. The contents were flatirons and lamp chimneys. Laughable perhaps, but humor of a grim sort as we watched our only contact with the outside world being ground to pieces. Too late now to consider a safer harbor. the Ship was doomed with forty men marooned on the tip end of the old world, and no getting home without outside succor.

"For several days the AMERICA seemed unwilling to give up her ghost. Held in an icy grip.... great blocks of ice tumbled onto her deck. The engine room was half filled by drift. Plenty of time to remove anything of value. Her cozy deck cabin presented a sorry spectacle after the walls had been stripped of their finish. Then an offshore gale completed the havoc.... The good ship was gone, sunk there at her berth or carried away with the pack...

"Living quarters for the ship's officers and crew had to be provided ashore. An annex to the house was built, even a blacksmith shop and a machine shop. Tunnels and passageways burrowed through the snow, filled with supplies. The living room was a hive of activity preparing for the spring campaign. ....

"My diary notes that the esprit de corps after the loss of AMERICA still ran high. ... At the observatory I held vigil with stars.... Those were cold cheerless hours at the observatory. No thrashing around to restore circulation. No shutting out the wind that had free access through wall and roof shutter openings. There were times when the kerosene lamp refused to burn. The oil was like so much snow slush. Mercury could be molded into plastic shapes. ....

"There were wonderful nights of aurora. Like incandescent streamers, they squirmed across the heavens lighting up the snowscape to almost full moonlight. Another display was the radiating arch near the horizon. At times faint iridescent colors marked the displays. At no time have I heard the sound of rustling silk accompanying auroral displays- frequently referred to in old accounts of arctic expeditions.

"The cold at minus sixty- two ,our lowest, is little different in feel than minus twenty; that is if there is no wind. But with the slightest air movement the lower temperature is immediately apparent, and it behooves one then to seek shelter. Of the many attempts to protect the face, none were successful. Any object placed over the face soon froze to the skin. While most of the men let their beards grow, they removed all hair from around the lips.

"... Then there were hours sewing reindeer suits, diary writing, working up star sights and listening to Long describe those days at Cape Sabine where the Greely party, one by one,



died of starvation until about a third of their number, twenty three, were left when relief arrived. He recounted the killing of the bear that saved the survivors and the secret councils that resulted in the shooting of Private Henry for stealing food, and indignantly denied the practice of cannibalism. 'Just a newspaper yarn,' he said.

"...the sleds packed with food, and camp equipment in the dugout, the hour approached for the big getaway. The sun was returning; there was sufficient light for a day's run. Finally the long cavalcade crept like a worm up over the ice dome of the island, following a line of flags that marked the trail.

"It was an inauspicious beginning. Going into camp near the ice foot, we remained stormbound two days, only to be ordered back to headquarters. Sleds broken down, stoves out of order, six of the men unfit for work. It was more or less a shock, but back we went, made the necessary changes and readjustments, and started again, this time camping out on the sea ice perhaps a mile from shore. The end of the run had seen much rough ice and a lot of chopping to let the ponies through. That night Fiala called me into his tent where I found Mr. Peters and the man in charge of the dogs, Vaughn.

".... Dr. Vaughn tells me that the sledges are going to pieces... It may be a wise thing to back now to headquarters and with improved equipment make another effort a year hence.'....

"I came out flatly against going back, didn't believe Mr. Ziegler or the world at large would believe we had made an honest effort. The thought of turning around now after years of preparation, to turn tail when still in sight of land- the idea was unbelievable.

"There were more arguments, pro and con, and I went to my tent. Later Fiala came to me. 'Porter, we have decided to give up the dash for this year. It's hard, but my better judgment tells me it's best.' 'Well,' I replied, 'all right, but give me a man and dogs and let me go on a few days and see what the ice looks like. It seems a pity to lose this chance of studying the pack.'

'Good, and while you're out here, try to get to White Island, where the men that the duke lost were headed. Perhaps you may find some clue as to what became of them, and possibly of Andree's fate. And while you're at it, go down among the islands and examine all the caches laid down by us and Baldwin, for there will be a retreat to Cape Flora this summer, and I have the responsibility of getting a lot of fellows, who are unfit for this kind of life, back safely to civilization.'

"In the dumps an hour before, I was elated now and picked my companion, Anton Vedoe. He stood head and shoulders above any other man in the party for the work at hand, Shipmate on the Baldwin trip, Vedoe had always made clean-cut work of any job entrusted to him. He was a good dog driver, kept his equipment in efficient working order, and above all had an even, buoyant temperament. He too was overjoyed by the release from the now disgruntled crowd.

"Perhaps we noticed an alacrity with which many of the party, on hearing the news of the retreat, broke their tents and harnessed



up their dogs. It seemed but a short hour before they were again seen toiling up the dome of the island, headed for warm bunks and hot meals.

'A good riddance,' remarked Anton as we entered our silk tent for a cup of coffee. 'Ain't it nice and quiet here? What a relief from the crowd.'

"... After a few hours sleep, camp was broken and we followed a northeasterly direction for the rest of the day. The going was surely bad. Here on the exposed north end of the island, with nothing between it and the Pole but floating ice, there was but one huge pressure ridge after another... chaos of huge upended blocks with deep soft snow between them. If only this zone of screwed-up ice that showed so plainly the influence of the nearness of land could be penetrated, there would be a chance of better traveling. When Captain Cagni left Rudolph Island four years before, he took to the pack directly in front of our winter quarters and over young smooth ice, and was well away from land when he came up to the old ice. Not so here. We were surrounded on all sides by ice conditions that permitted only a mile or so northing for a day's effort. We worked over to a particularly high ridge and climbed to its crest to pick out the next day's run, but found only the same jumbled mass clear to the horizon-east, north, and west. ... As I scanned that abomination of desolation, it left a picture back in the cells of my memory that has never been effaced. A few years ago, about thirty years after the scene I have been describing, I was at work at the eye end of one of the world's largest telescopes, drawing craters of the moon. The ghastly white expanses of the lunar surface seemed startling near, due to the magnification of the powerful instrument. The similarity of this moonscape to the snowscapes of the North was enough to transport me back again to the tip end of the eastern hemisphere, looking out over the frozen polar sea. Throughout those nights at the eyepiece I was not in sunny California; I was back in the Arctic under the cold light of a midnight sun gazing at the scarred surface of the shifting pack, the long lines of pressure ridges, and sharp pinnacles of distant icebergs. The illusion was complete.

" 'It's no use, Vedoe. It would take a month to reach White Island. I don't know but what Fiala did the right thing to pass up this sort of going. There's no knowing how far it extends. We can put our time to better purpose by looking up the food caches. Fiala's got some job on his hands getting that crowd to a relief ship. If the ship doesn't show up, those caches will certainly become popular.'

"There was not much conversation while moving. Each one of us had to give his undivided attention to his own team. Although we had good dogs, the sleds were heavily loaded and required careful maneuvering to prevent capsizing or jamming. From time to time there would be a movement of the ice blocks. One fault that was followed about a mile had a series of smooth, new ice areas, perhaps formed the day before. Saltwater ice is always soft and slushy. There was a continual crunching sound, and occasionally an ice block would topple over.



"When we finally reached the island and made camp a little way up the glacier, it began to blow and held us prisoners for three days. There is little use in trying to travel in the drift. Not only impossible to see where you are going, but the dogs dislike it. And, of course, if it is head-on, there is no alternative but to seek shelter. Drift storms are not snowstorms, for it is not snowing at all. As the wind increases in force, the loose snow is picked up and carried along with the wind. This layer of drifting snow gradually increases in thickness until you are completely submerged in it. Then, of course, all landmarks disappear.

"But in the tent, hot pemmican under our belts, snuggled down in our sleeping bags, with pipes going, we remarked on how comfortable we were and thanked our lucky stars we were not at headquarters. The tents were drift tight; that is, with canvas floor sewed to the walls and entrance door made like a cloth tube with a pucker string, no snow could get inside. There was more or less loose hay on the floor. And on striking the tent when loading up, nothing was taken out. The whole affair, rolled up, was lashed to the sled. Of course, there were times when the tent grip gave way under high winds, but we didn't mind it much. The collapsed tent lay upon us, drifts accumulated, and so we lay until the blow was over. ....

"The going south among the islands along the line of food caches was good, and when the going is good, sledge travel in the North is a joy. Smooth fast ice joined one islet to another, and over this royal highway we made fast time, opening one cache after another, noting their contents and restowing those that had been damaged by bears. At Kane Lodge, erected by Baldwin two years before, there was the luxury of a stove and the chance to dry out our equipment. Spring sledding in the Arctic is not all a bed of roses. The sleeping bags slowly absorb moisture until they are as stiff as dry hides, and it requires considerable time and patience to worm one's self into them and to thaw them out by the heat of one's body. .... Each time the bag is occupied, a warm object, one's body, comes into contact with a cold one, the bag. Moisture is therefore condensed on the colder one- the bag. As this goes on day after day, the bag gets heavier. The same thing happens to one's socks, although here the moisture comes mostly from perspiration. Each night they lay like wet compresses over our chests to dry out. Our boots, the Lapp Finskas, were made from reindeer, which have the property of shedding snow. Inside these boots we placed handfuls of swamp hay called sennegrass. These false soles act as insulators against cold and absorb the perspiration from the feet. Each morning this perspiration is shaken out of the sennegrass like so much fine snow. The grass crumbles away with time and must be replenished.

"The return to winter quarters was marked by a few high spots of interest. At the first camp we discovered coal up the side of a cliff on the west side of Coal Mine Island (called so afterwards). This was considered an important find now that the ship was gone and a fifty pound bag was taken along for the ship's engineer to test out.



"As Cape Norway lay near our return route, we visited the historic spot so that Anton could see with his own eyes where Nansen, his fellow countryman, had hibernated like a bear through a long night.... Bear and walrus skeletons strewed the beach, ribs protruding here and there through the snow. ....

"...we discovered an islet not on the charts. It was not much of a discovery as discoveries go, but it happens to be the only piece of new land I have been able to name. It is a huge pile of rock in the middle of Backs Channel and bears the name of Miriam, its only history as far as I know is as the site of a cold lunch and an uncomfortable head wind.

".... Meanwhile.... some apprehension was being felt for our safety. The time presumed necessary for our scouting trip was long past. The commander had sent out one search party, which reported that there was little hope for us ever showing up. This report so worried Fiala that he took the steward and a dog team and started down through the islands. I shall never forget the day we ran across them. It was like finding a needle in a haystack.

"Happy as larks, [see Anton's remarks about the toddy] Anton and I were making fine time over the channel ice south of Hohenloe Island. Only the stern duty of having to show up at headquarters and render our report kept us from extending the trip indefinitely. Well, there was more field work coming, and we were hoping to be thrown together in the next shuffle.

" 'I see a tent. Where? Look!' Search as I would, nothing but ice and distant land. 'There.' and he pointed to a jumble of small rocks a mile away, where the small pyramid point of a tent could be made out... With full speed we dashed into camp and opened up the tent flap..... Fiala speaks of this reunion in the official narrative as one of his pleasantest recollections."

Thus ends the trip of Porter and Anton Vedoe. Porter goes on to note that he and Anton and Mr. Peters did a survey trip from Camp Abruzzi to Cape Flora and describes the dissension there the discovery of a coal mine there, half rations and his trip back to Camp Ziegler in 1905. He notes Mr. Peters journey south with Tafel and John Vedoe. John's account of this trip is included herein. He found the skipper, as did Anton, an interesting character. To quote; "The most interesting character by far, was the skipper, a weatherworn whaler from Edgertown, Mass., wise about oil, grease, blubber bone, and ships. He did a good deal of his thinking out loud. I never got a word of it, and probably few of the sailors did. They were sort of stage asides."



J. S. Yedoe

Log.

July 8, to Sept 1.

1904.



ACCOUNT OF A CANOE TRIP  
FROM

Teplitz Bay to Cape Flora During July and Aug. 1904

Fiday July 8-1904

Encamped in fog on ice east of Jackson Island. Three of us, Messrs. Tafel and Peters and myself, left Camp Abruzzi this morning in the open sectional canoe bound for Cape Flora. The scientific work was wound up a week ago and these last few days we have been waiting for the ice to open up. The packing of the scientific instruments and records was completed and I had got together and weighed out 15 days provision. The last few days it blew more or less from the east, slowly opening up the ice, and this morning the ice broke that divided the open water south and that around the bay and Mr. Peters announced the start. The Chief had to turn a new shaft for his launch and could not be ready yet for a day but we could not let this chance go, so we started without his aid. The wind had truned from e. to n.e. or n. so we had to hurry.

Half a mile from the shore the canoe was launched; the provisions were stored long ago and all we had to do was stow the scientific instruments and start off. All at camp were down to bid us good luck, except the Chief who was busy on his shaft. It was half past ten when we pushed off. At 20 minutes past 12 we had passed Cape Auk and put into a little bight in the ice in shelter of the waves to put up our sprit sail, using the tent pole for a mast. While we lay here a walrus came up close to the canoe eying us inquisitively, but to our comfort he soon disappeared after floating about, blowing. We set off again and made good speed with sail and paddle, about 5 miles per hour.

The canoe though heavy loaded proved a good sea boat, except when the waves struck us from the side when we felt that she was not as rigid as a one-piece boat. Her load brings the gunwale down to within eight inches from the water. A fog soon enveloped us and hid the land from our view, but we followed the ice edge, making good time, although we went unnecessarily into many bays and bights in the ice. At two o'clock we pulled up on a floe, put up the tent and had some coffee and then we discovered that we had forgotten to bring utensils to eat with, but we remedied that by emptying some tin cans and cut a spoon each out of wood and we were just as happy. It was not long before we were off again and about 4:30 o'clock we judged by the appearance of the ice that we were passing De Long Fjord. The wind had died out but the fog still laid thick and steering by compass and the trend of the ice we kept on until 11:30 p.m. We had hoped we would be able to spend the night on some island but were obliged to spend the night on a floe on which we pulled up the canoe after first unloading her and then had supper on ebswurst, biscuits, head cheese, jam and coffee after which we turned in satisfied with our first day. We must have made about 30 miles. Lots of bear track around.

Saturday July 9.

Turned out at ten this morning, had breakfast and got off at noon. Had nice calm weather for an hour or two, but it soon got



foggy and disagreeable. My paddle which had broken at the handle yesterday was repaired while under way; one has been lost in some unexplained way and we have to be careful with those we have left. Seeing a walrus dozing on a floe we pulled up and Tafel (whose winchester is the only gun in the party) shot him in the neck, but somehow he rolled into the water and sank. The fog got pretty thick in the evening and as we could make nothing to the south but only west we pulled up on the ice to wait. Messrs. Peters and Tafel in the meantime made for a small rock not on the map but were stopped by waterpools and returned. Starting off towards the west again we after a while pulled into an opening that seemed to run south but it turned out to be only a blind lead; pulled up again and camped for the night. We think we are in the neighborhood of Cape Harkness but perhaps not quite so far south. We have not seen either Harley, Omnany or Neal Islands.

After consulting the map we conclude that we must be far wrong in thinking our position being as far south as Salisbury Island and it seems more probable that we still near Jackson Island in the vicinity of Cape Norway.

Sunday July 10

Probably near Snugg Harbor, Jackson Island. 12:30 p.m. Turning in last night at about 8 o'clock we were out again at 4 a.m., when we found that the floe on which we were camped had separated from the pack and that the south wind was taking it north. We quickly put the canoe in the water, loaded up and started off in a south westerly direction where it looked as though we might find a lead or at any rate a safer place where to prepare our breakfast. The ice from the north seems to have closed up the open water in which we traveled yesterday. To the south the ice is closely packed and we can go no farther just now. After paddling a short time to the west we found a deep bay in the ice over which a coat of young ice had formed on the night, but we managed to get through by breaking the stuff with the paddle in the bow and pulled up our boat on the ice a half mile nearer the little island near which we camped yesterday and which we at times think might be Mary Elizabeth Island, but the shore line and the neighboring capes to the east looks a bit puzzling as well as the large, high, flat island to the west and the low glacier land to south. After we had our things safe on the ice Mr. Peters and I went up to the island about a mile away and climbed up its height of 150-200 feet. From its ridge the south seems impossible, the west all closed, and in the east we discovered a lead near shore running south about 4-5 miles, but to get to it we will have to pull the canoe and things over the rough ice for a distance of 5 to 6 miles. The weather is good but always a bit foggy, mostly to the north. Pulling the boat and equipment about 300 yards further in we put up the tent, made breakfast, and turned in to finish our sleep. Turned out again at 12 noon, it blowing a light wind from the south which we thought might have opened up the ice.

Later- going up on the island we found the ice nearly the same; however, Mr. Peters decided to wait a little longer and we made some coffee. While enjoying it in the tent we were disturbed by hearing some tramping outside and going out we discovered a bear



and two good-sized cubs within 50 feet of us. Peters gave the mother a bullet in the fore-shoulder but they made for the water and got away. Later Tafel killed two walrus but they both rolled from the ice and sank. A piece of fresh meat would taste good now and fill up the hole in our food supply. From the north the ice comes close in large masses and Mr. Peters thought it safest to pull about five hundred yards farther in on the floe, which we did. In the evening I collected some duck eggs from the island and we had boiled eggs, chocolate and biscuits for supper. Some of the eggs were in an advanced stage of evolution but we did not notice it until half way through our meal when Tafel was surprised to find two little black eyes staring him in the face from out of his egg and Peters began to pull forth feathers from out of his. Whether mine was in the same stage I did not care to investigate for I had already eaten half and suddenly discovered that my stomach had received food to its full capacity.

Wet snow coming down outside. Mr. Peters is sure it is Prince George Land we see to the south and I am of the same opinion. My tentmates have laid down to sleep and I think I will follow their example. It has been alternately foggy and clear today.

Monday July 11

12 o'clock. midnight. Foggy all day;- a light south wind blowing which seems to bring it along. Slept until noon when we had breakfast and shortly after 2 o'clock we started to haul canoe and things over the ice towards the pool we saw from the rocks yesterday, and after about three hours hard work during which we got our feet and legs well soaked we reached the water. It is disagreeable work moving our belongings over the ice, especially where it is rough going, then we have to unload the equipment and haul the canoe forward over ridges and hummocks a few hundred feet and make three more trips for the rest of the gear. The instruments (magnetometer and dipcircle) have to be forwarded with extra care and it is hard to keep from stumbling in the wet snow and scrambling over the ridges. The ice near the edge of the pools was so rotten that the last two hundred yards we had to pull the canoe loaded out in fear of breaking through at any time. We made about a mile south and some east when we came to the end of the water, and we put up the tent and had some lunch after which we hauled out on the ice and continued to carry things forward in relays. After strenuous work for some time in an easterly direction where we expect to find a lead we decided to camp for rest. Mr. Peters took some compass bearings which we compared with the map and though some points seem misplaced we feel pretty sure of our position. The canoe stood the rough handling she received today and got through almost without a scratch, thanks to the 2 by 3 inch keel with which she was provided before leaving Teplitz Bay; she weighs about 270 lb. net. We had supper and went to sleep wrapped up in our oilskins and blankets.

Tuesday July 12 Midnight

Turned out at 12:30 today. It was foggy, the south wind still blowing. At about 2 o'clock we started to move over the ice but made little progress owing to relaying and bad going. About 10 p.m. we gave it up, and had only advanced about a mile, Mr. Peters



preferring to wait as the ice is likely to open up at any time. We crossed two small pools. It is almost disgusting work this moving our baggage through the snow slush and wading through the pools; the boots are full of water continually and to put on dry change would be of no use; and then the constant fog does not help to brighten things up any. It is a trifle clear outside just now and a heavy water-sky to the south. Before turning in I made an excursion toward Geelmuyden Island (at least that is what I believe the rock to be) a mile away to the n.e., but the ice was in commotion near shore and so many fissures that I gave it up.  
July 14, Thursday, 7 a.m.

Turned out yesterday about five in the evening only to find the ice in the same condition and foggy, but not quite so chilly. We took hold of our slow work again trying to reach the nearest point on Jackson Island and after 10 hours wet and hard labour we landed successfully on a high rocky beach about two miles north of Cape Norway and pitched our tent on the rocks. We crossed nearly two miles of rough ice relaying and in many places had to load up and cross small pools only to unload on the other side again and wade along as before. Broke through the ice up to our knees in many places and at times barely escaped a full bath. We have had no drying weather for a long time and our bedding as well as our clothing is wet. It feels good to be on land again. The ice is grumbling and pressing out in the channel tonight. After a supper of pemmican stew, crackers and chocolate, Tafel reads aloud from a book on physical geography.-- Later, 4 o'clock p.m.-- Turned out one hour after noon and found a light breeze blowing from the north and it looks as if the sky is going to clear. The sun shows its welcome face again, giving us a chance to dry the blankets, clothing and foot-gear. Several large pools have opened up in the south, probably caused by the north wind, and we are waiting for them to connect. Our next stop from here is the rock on the map about two miles west of Cape Norway where we expect to find the cache of provisions left there last summer by the ship. We probably have ten days food left but will need a good deal more to see us through, judging by the rate at which we have traveled the last few days. There is a strong current along the shore here that keeps the ice grinding and moving and where the beach meets the water the ice has been piled up in great pressure ridges that are from twenty to thirty feet high, but consist of small fragments rather than of larger blocks. Our breakfast consisted of cornmeal mush, a little head-cheese, black coffee and crackers. Plenty of bear tracks around here.  
Friday July 15, 3 p.m.

Turned out at 1:30 p.m. and found that the n.e. wind that had blown strong all night, and probably aided by the tide, had opened a big hole in the ice along this shore and it now seems that as if it would be possible to reach cache rock in open water. I took a trip inland yesterday over level clay and boulder land not far from Cape Hugh Mill and from a ridge looking north I saw what I think must be De long Fjord and to the n.e. another fjord with glaciated land on both sides which might be the channel between



Rainer Island and Carl Alexander Land. I found fox tracks and tufts of fur from that animal .

Saturday, July 16, 4:30 p.m.

In camp under the cliffs near Cape Norway. Yesterday while in our last camp we turned in at lunch and shortly after were called by Mr. Peters and told the welcome news that now was a chance to get through to the cache rock if we hurried. We were out of the tent in a jump and in twenty minutes had it down, canoe put in the water and were off. It blew a stiff breeze from the n.e. and we cautiously hug to the ice-foot, but when we tried to cross a little bay between where we had camped and the high cliffs that terminates Cape Norway the wind and waves took hold of our little boat so strongly that we thought it too risky to continue across, and with difficulty we turned around against the wind and after a stiff row made the ice-foot to which we closely kept while rounding the bay. We had another difficult place to pass and that was the point where the shoreline turns right angles to the bay; here the wind caused the sea to rise high and now and then strong air-currents would sweep down the mountain-side from all directions and stir up the water like a whirlwind. It was with difficulty we passed the corner and for a moment it looked dangerous for our little craft, and scarcely had we passed the point and thought ourselves safe when a cyclone from the opposite direction struck us and forced us to quickly turn once more, Peters breaking his paddle in the operation. We struggled back to the ice-foot, unloaded the boat in quick order, pulled her up and were glad to have got out of it so luckily. After seeing our belongings safe we pitched tent on the moss about a hundred feet up on the slope. There is open water out to the cache rock but high sea and whirling air-currents are too strong to attempt a crossing. While waiting for better weather we got the cooker going and had to sit close up around it so that the flapping of the tent walls would not put it out; it took more than twice the ordinary time to cook our meal. My companions are sleeping. The seagulls, loons and guillemots that nest here by the thousands, make an infernal noise on the rocks above.

Sunday, July 17, evening

Have not been able to move today on account of the terrific wind blowing from s.e. and e.s.e. Early last night our tent blew down and to put it up again would only be to risk it being torn asunder, so we laid with it flapping on top of us all night, chilling us through, and a fine continuous rain adding to our discomfort. Our tent is a four-sided pyramid with canvas floor about 7 ft. sq.; the walls are of pongee silk and the door is a slit on one edge and closed from the inside with strings.

During the day the wind increased and we built a wall of rocks to windward and braced the tent pole like a ridge-pole inside about two feet from the ground, which helped to keep the wet cloth up a bit. It was next to impossible to keep the cooker going for our meals as the wind would drive the flame dancing all around the pot no matter how we tried to protect it. The sea is free from ice as far as the eye can reach, and fierce whitecapped waves roll with great speed over the surface. It may be that the



whole British Channel is open and we are anxiously waiting for the storm to pass so that we can go on. We are lucky to be on land in this kind of weather. Mortedello sausage, biscuits, and chocolate for supper; coffee and same for lunch.

Monday, July 18

Got up about 8 or 9 this morning. The sun shone and the storm had passed apparently.

Tuesday, July 19, about 7 a.m.

Made Cache Rock this morning about 4 o'clock, and had comparatively good weather during the three miles of paddling. It occupied about 3/4 of an hour. While going across I noticed that two of thumb screws holding the first and second sections of the canoe together were broken off, causing the first and second section to give some every time a swell struck her; not so much, however, as to cause alarm, but it would probably not be very agreeable if any of the sections would part company with us at any time. The bolts are weak (only 3/16 inches in diameter) and too few, and I think it is the strong keel that saved the boat from damage from this. The angle-iron between the bulkhead and railing in the second section has also loosened, starboard side. Yesterday was a pretty good day, with only now and then a breeze from the south east. Strict lookout for the launch has been kept as Mr. Peters seems to think that she may by this time be somewhere in the neighborhood if the Chief has take advantage of the storm which has driven the ice back from the land. In answer to a question yesterday Mr. Peters said he thought it best to wait about two days, but the good weather came and he decided to cut across to Cache Rock. We found the cache in good condition. It consisted of;

80 lb.---pemmican

50 lb.---emergency rations

200 lb.---Sratt's Dog Biscuits

1 1/2 case--- Malted Milk (36 small bottl.)

The ice is out of sight again in w.n.w., but marrow strips are coming down from the north. Went to sleep on hot chocolate, and biscuits and butter.

Wednesday, July 20, 7 Or 8 o'clock. a.m.

Encamped on Salisbury Island, two miles south of Cape Mc Clintock. Last night the weather became unusually good, nearly calm, so that at 2 o'clock a.m. we pulled away from Cache Rock, after having replaced one of the broken bolts and added a couple of nails to strengthen the two sections. From the cache we took 40 lb. of pemmican, 12 emergency ration tubes, 6 glass jars of malted milk and as emergency food we took along 130 dog biscuits. Yesterday afternoon while Mr. Peters was cooking a meal, the burner in some way caught fire, which damaged a part of the tent, and a hole was ripped in the silk in scramble to extinguish the flames, but no one was hurt although we rolled over each other and the flames in smothering them. The tent was soon repaired and in good order again. We had a stiff row of three hours before we made Cape Mc Clintock and we were lucky in having good weather the whole time though we did not escape without a little adventure.

About an hour had passed when we heard the bellowing of walrus around us, and soon after one of them poked his head up close to the canoe and stared at us with his blank, ugly eyes, but we were force to laugh at the queer contrast the ugly beast made with the peaceful surroundings and the almost unrippled water. He did not threaten us in any way and soon dove, and about



10 minutes elapsed before he came to the surface again a good distance off. The appearance of the walrus had made us the least bit nervous perhaps, owing to the great distance we had yet to travel before we could reach the nearest point of land, and, with the fierce storm still fresh in our minds, we worked along in silence for a long while; the gun was put handy in case of more unwelcome visitors.

We feel pleased with ourselves at having covered this stretch so successfully, for it is one of the most exposed places we have to pass; the distance is from 13 to 15 miles. We have made camp in a little fine bay directly opposite Mary Elizabeth Island (which island we have located to our satisfaction). The narrow strip of beach is covered with fine pebbles and makes an excellent camping ground, and the bottom of the bay consists of fine gravel, the first I think I have seen in the archipelago; several streams run from the bluffs above into the bay. Supper; mortedello sausage, head cheese, biscuits and hot malted milk.

Thursday, July 21

Wednesday morning the weather was still nice and calm. At 4 in the afternoon we turned out, still feeling a bit stiff from yesterday's work and at 5:30 we were on the way in open waater along shore. We passed the beautiful basaltic columns of Cape Fisher which mirrored itself in the unruffled surface of the water, and were soon out on the Brown Fjord. About 4 miles from Cape Alice Armitage we were forced to pull up on the ice and haul the canoe along in the traces. The floe was fairly smooth and we could travel without relaying, stopping for breath every two hundred feet or so, and after about a mile of this we launched and soon paddled onto a little bay a mile to the east of the cape and pitched camp about 4 o'clock a.m. Here we came upon a cache, undoubtedly left by the Jackson-Harmsworth expedition (though before this was ascertained I had a faint hope that it might possibly be a trace of the Andree ballon expedition which was last heard from while in the neighborhood of these islands, and which I always have had in my mind while moving around up here). There was a boat or pontoon of aluminium and canvas, filled with water, and a couple of paddles, a little hay, and some oats and one or two canned food articles, all of which was spoiled. The whole cache was in bad condition and placed where rocks and clay had rolled down upon it. Many colored moss thrived on the little beach of this nook, but it was crossed all over with running water and we could hardly find a dry spot large enough to pitch our tent upon. Brown Channel was open as far as we could see and at the other end a low glaciated land blocked further view; close on our left however we had a narrow strip of ice between us and the open channel. Across the British Channel we can plainly see what must be Arthur and Armitage islands, the former a low snow clad land, the other of a more rock shoreline. Our stove refused to work good tonight. It took over two hours to cook supper.

Friday, July 22, 10 o'clock p.m.

Richtofen Peak. Left the little bay at 8:45 taking two of Jackson's paddles that were in good condition; our own were battered and broad on the edges and of poor material while Jackson's



were of hard wood and larger. Paddling along shore we reached Richthofen Peak where we were stopped from further progress, and we pulled the boat out of the water and put up the tent to wait for an opening. From the top of the mountain we saw a narrow lead running south and we hoped that it would wide enough to let us through, but it closed up instead and we must wait yet a while. The channel is blocked by ice in all directions but north, and as the wind is s.e. we hope soon to find an opening again. There is a light watersky in the south.

Sunday, July 24, 1 o'clock p.m.--At Cape Polar Gleams

Constant fog while at Richthofen Peak with now and then a lift, but though we kept steady watch we had to lay there nearly 30 hours before we could move on; and in this kind of weather we would much rather be on the move than sit huddled up in the tent and feel uncomfortable in our damp clothing. If we had something to smoke it would help to while away the time quicker, but the little supply that Stewart wisely smuggled along in Tafel's pocket gave out several days ago, and happy we were while it lasted. When we left camp all three of us decided that here was a good chance to lay off smoking and accordingly none brought any tobacco along, but by now we find that it was the most foolish thing we could have done, for since what Stewart sent along was used up we have nothing to occupy ourselves with in the tent or when storm or fog bound. The time drags, and it is sometimes difficult to feel sociable, especially in gloomy weather and when the day's progress has been slow.

At about 4 o'clock in the afternoon of Saturday we at last discovered that the ice had opened some on the s.w. and a heavy watersky in the same direction, but though the fog still lay thick and our meal was due we started off feeling our way along the ice edge. Three or four miles of open water when what seemed to be an extensive floe stopped further progress. Still seeing the heavy watersky in the south and now quite near we determined to reach the water over the ice and accordingly we hauled out on the floe which fortunately was level enough to avoid relaying, but rotten and full of pools through which we cheerfully waded, though we got thoroughly soaked. But the water was farther away than it had seemed and on and on we trudged, often stopping for breath and three times we got the cooker going in the bottom of the canoe for something hot. The equipment is no easy load to haul for three men this fashion a longer distance. Tafel is generally in the lead with a line attached to the bow, or sometimes pushing in the stern. Peters has a short line attached on the port and I another on the starboard side. Our work is not only to pull ahead but a part of our effort is spent in keeping her on even keel, which sometimes is an easy matter enough, but now and then she takes an overhauling to one side or the other and then we have to right her before the side scrapes the ice, for it would not take much of that to wear a hole in the canvas, and the inner wooden shell is undoubtedly leaky. So far we have been lucky in keeping the canoe in good condition.

Thus we traveled for over five miles through fog and pools when we at last saw water ahead and after another strenuous hour we reached it. It was then 12 hours since we left camp at Richthofen



Peak. We launched the canoe and got in and it was 11 o'clock a.m. Sunday when we made land near what we believe is Cape Polar Gleams on Nansen Island, nineteen hours from our last camp. We are glad to have covered this stretch to our account, but it was not covered without work either and we feel that we have earned a good sleep. Going through the open water we passed several large bergs and much broken ice and for a good while we did not know whether we could make land or not, but we were determined to make a hard bid for a piece of ground before giving up. Where we passed open stretches we paddled for all we were worth and made the spray fly around the bow, and how contented we were when we thus sped along without interruption and watched the ghostly icebergs as they loomed up ahead and disappeared behind us; to me it seemed even a bit fascinating, this race with fog and ice, and how good it felt to feel the warm blood travel down the legs, diffuse itself into the feet and our into the very toe-tips, which members had been tired out over the floe and soaked in the icy pools through the hours. So we made Cape Polar Gleams in good spirits though no doubt on a very different kind of a day to what Jackson had when he gave this place this suggestive name.

Monday, July 25, 1:30 a.m.

After a refreshing sleep we were out again, The weather was still foggy, but it could not long withstand our irresistibly high spirits in which yesterday's successful work had left us, so it soon turned into sunshine and it looks like a promising day. The east wind of yesterday has changed into a light north wind. Later-4 p.m.--- About one o'clock we struck camp at Cape Polar Gleams, and at three were able to set sail, keeping closely to the shore. The north wind was increasing and after four hours sailing, we arrived at the southern end of the island. Here we had a bit to eat; cold ham, biscuits and a piece of german sweet chocolate, and filled our pot with water from a stream issuing from the glacier face. The channel from this spot seems open right across and as far south as Scott Keltie Island which we see in the distance. We headed south again, but after about 2 1/2 hours sailing and paddling were stopped by ice within three or four miles from the shore of Scott Keltie Island. We worked around in the loose ice trying all directions for an opening to get through, but were forced to give up after 4 or 5 hours useless work and I was glad when we prepared to camp on a small piece of heavy ice. We have made a fair day's work anyhow and have reason to feel satisfied, although at one time my spirits mutinied against what seemed to me useless wasting of time and energy while circling around in the loose and moving ice here for hours, and I fear I louted my opinion in some impatient way which Mr. Peters however misinterpreted to mean that I was bodily tired, and I was coward enough to acquiesce by silence. Two narwhales passed us today twice; the first I have ever seen in these islands and that probably have ever been seen by any expedition here. They passed us first going south about 15 feet from the canoe, one ahead of the other, and their grey black-spotted bodies were plainly seen; both had horns about probably 5 feet in length. They swam very fast and about 4 feet deep. A half hour later they passed us again going north and I believe they were the same pair.



Wednesday, July 27

Encamped on a floe about 4 miles north of Scott Keltie Island and about as many miles west of north end of Hooker Island. We were not able to move from our last floe until about 3 or 4 o'clock this morning. Fog and rain last night. Have kept up 4 hour watches during our 48 hours stay on the little cake of ice so as not to lose any opportunity. This was a dreary camp. About the only cake of ice that we could reach that was of a somewhat safe size, but impossible to find a dry spot for the tent, and before many hours our blankets were wet and sticky and very uncomfortable to roll up in. Our oilskins that we spread out under the blankets do not keep the wet out much. The ice was in a restless state and so as not to lose any possible chance to get away toward land we took turn about to sleep and keep watch in the fog and drizzling rain. The hours were dreary and long; the oilskins kept the wet out, but nothing to do to while away the time. On my watch I rolled a cigarette of tea leaves, but it is hard to imagine much satisfaction out of that. Tobacco would have helped along many a weary hour. Once the ice seemed to loosen some, and we put the canoe in, advanced a couple hundred yards but had to return to the cake again. This morning the ice loosened and this time we made a couple miles to the east and another 1/4 mile over a floe before again stopped by small pieces of moving ice, over which we could not cross. Allen Young's sound appears to be open and this ice moving that way, for we have drifted a good deal to the north. We hope to find open water along the shore of Hooker Island for which we now aim and are ready to move any time the ice slackens a little. Eaton Island we can see to the s.w. though not as plain as yesterday. We will probably have to touch there for provisions. Our coffee is gone several days ago; so is oatmeal and cornmeal which were our most satisfactory foods, and of bread we have about 3 or 4 lb. left outside of dog biscuits. Still plenty of pemmican (35 lb.), mortedello sausage (2 lb.), emergency rations (6 meals), 4 lb. corned beef, a little malted milk, 1/2 lb. sugar, 1/2 lb. butter, and a 1/4 lb. of jam; still plenty therefore, thanks to the addition made at Steinen.

Thursday, July 28, 4 o'clock a.m.--On Hooker Island

About 10 this morning the ice opened up towards shore but a 1/4 mile away from us, and we immediately set to work hauling over the ice. The ice consisted of small pieces and cakes moving around in all directions, and we had a short time of hard and exciting work before we reached the water. We ran the boat over cakes full of pools where we got thoroughly soaked; in other places we ferried across narrow leads and out again on the next pan; here we used the canoe as a bridge on which we scrambled over, pulling it after us, and in other places again we narrowly escaped being nipped between two floes that were coming together. Many times it was only quick action that saved us from disaster. There seemed to be no general direction to the motion of the ice (probably a change of tide), but the whole mass was mixing up, whirling around, separating, and coming together, and it made us hustle until we at last reached the water which extended over to



the shore. Pulling across we hauled out on the icefoot and put up the tent on the rocks a little south of Cape Markham. The ice seems to be separating towards Eaton Island, and is also opening up towards Scott Keltie Island. Turned in on pemmican stew, fried ham and tea.

Friday, July 29, Hooker Island about 10 a.m.

Have not been able to move from here. The weather has been foggy and rainy the whole time, and everything is wet through. The ice seems open about a mile towards Eaton Island and also as far as we can see down the channel between this and Scott Keltie Islands. Mr. Peters expects to find open water beyond Dundee Point and will probably try this channel. Our cooker is in bad shape and refused to burn satisfactorily, filling the tent with smoke and gas. We have cleaned it and bothered with it and as far as we can find everything is in working condition, and I believe that the whole trouble is in the quality of the oil, which will not vaporize steadily though we thoroughly heat the burner with alcohol. And so we have to sit with sore and running eyes through the meals, not to talk about waste of time and oil, sooty utensils and other inconveniences. Peters and Tafel are drying out tea leaves to smoke as an experiment, having nothing else to do. We tried to steam dog biscuits with butter this morning and though not a delicacy they can well be eaten when down to hardpan. Our pemmican stew upset on the floor this morning and we have to go with half a meal. We pass the time reading and waiting for mealtime, for it seems we are always hungry when laid up like this.

Saturday, July 30, at 12 noon

The sky cleared some this morning, the rain stopped and we took advantage of the sunshine to spread out tent, blankets, and clothing on the rocks to dry. The ice looks closed up in all directions, and as it now is we can go nowhere, but we hope that the change of tide will open up the ice along the shore at least like yesterday so that we can try the channel past Rubini Rock. Messrs. Tafel and Peters climbed the mountain above camp and found De Bruyne's Sound blocked with ice except for a narrow lead in the middle, and there is also a waterpatch between Dundee Point and Eaton Island.

Sunday, July 31, on Scott Keltie Island

This morning at 1 o'clock the ice opened up and we were able to leave Hooker Island and through loose and broken ice we made our way to the northeastern end of Scott Keltie Island which we climbed to look about. We could not get much satisfaction about the condition of the ice between this and Hooker Islands, so we thought we would try a lead running in the opposite direction and apparently toward Eaton Island, but we had made but a short stretch when we came to the head of the lead and had to return. Following the shore we pulled up on the southern end of the island, where we at 7 a.m. made camp on the fine level ground to await a better chance. It looks from here as if we could have made Dundee Point if we had tried the Hooker Island side of the channel.

Tuesday, August 2d, 11 o'clock a.m. Scott Keltie Island

A continual south wind has been blowing here, sometimes very strong, but only the last few hours does it appear to have done anything to the ice, and how much we are unable to ascertain



on account of that old enemy, the persistent fog. A lead seems to have opened up in the direction of Eaton Island, and another larger one runs west from Dundee Point with a heavy watersky in the same direction, but there is no connection from here that we can take advantage of. Fog covers Eaton Island. About an hour ago we were ready to start for Eaton Island when a mishap forced us to put up the tent again. For some reason we have stuck to a very awkward way of getting into the boat. In dropping her into the water we slip the bow in first and leave the stern resting upon the ice until we have crawled in, and Mr. Peters being the last shoves her clear of the ice at the same time as he gets in.

This particular time I had successfully balanced my way over the gear and out to my place in the bow and was settling myself snugly for work. Tafel was following me closely, and possibly I was not aware that he had already entered the canoe; however, the boat suddenly lost equilibrium from our united movements and lurched over to starboard, and Tafel who was on top of the loose gear was sliding over the rail and into the water. I threw myself over to the other side and Peters applied his strength at the stern, but not until Mr. Tafel had relieved the canoe of his weight and dropped to his shoulders in the water were we sure that we had saved the situation---and---ourselves. If Mr. Tafel, instead of letting himself be carried into the water gradually and slowly as he did, had made some quick motion towards the other side, I think the situation would have become more complicated, for he was resting on the tent under which lay the cooking utensils and other loose stuff, which would not have resisted any considerable disturbance; but as it was we could use our heads and strength to advantage and finally succeeded in righting the boat and helping our comrade out of his enforced and uncomfortable position. Feeling ourselves lucky to have escaped without loss of anything, we brought the things up on the beach again and put up the tent to dry out.

I had a touch of diarrhea and Peters an attack of colic last night. We attribute it to the dog biscuits of which we have eaten freely at most every meal. We miss the soda biscuits much.  
Wednesday, August 3, 7:30 p.m.

Yesterday we made another attempt and had made about three or four miles over ice and water when the fog closed in and ice barred further headway. There was a good deal of loose ice ahead but too compact to go through, and as we could not see very far ahead for fog we put up the tent to wait awhile. After a stop of two hours during which we had a meal of hot emergency ration and corned beef, it cleared up a bit and we saw nothing but ice ahead, and what was worse, we found that we were drifting at a good rate to the north, the south wind still blowing and probably aided by the current, and the open water in which we had come was closed up by the ice. We were not yet half way to Eaton Island so Mr. Peters thought it best to get back and out of the current as quickly as possible. We were a long time hauling before the water showed up ahead and our work was, of course, as usual accompanied by disagreeable foot baths half way up the leg. We



crossed many very bad places and worked along for about a mile and a half, when we brought up to the water which extended over to the shore, where we landed two miles north of our old camp at 11 p.m.; the south wind blew by this time very strong and a few miles south a storm seemed to rage taking in Eaton Island and Dundee Point. Turned in on pemmican stew and chocolate.

Thursday, Aug 4, about 7:30 a.m. On Eaton Island

Shortly before 7 o'clock p.m. yesterday we made another attempt to cross to Eaton Island but were again unsuccessful, for hardly had we started when the blamed fog came on thick and forced us to return. This time we pulled up on the beach a little south of the old camp. We did not have to wait long before the fog again lifted a bit and as we had made no preparation to camp we were at once ready to start. As for water it looked as if we might make this time if the fog, which we now feared, would not interfere before we had gone through a strip of ice two miles away, which separated us from a great lead. We were lucky, however, and after an hour and forty five minutes hard row we pulled up on a cake of ice half a mile from shore at 9:30 p.m. Between us and the ice attached to shore was about fifty feet of ground-up mushy ice which was too loose to allow walking over and too compact to paddle through, and for nearly three hours we sat there looking at the shore but unable to reach it. Then an iceberg came drifting down on us, opening up the ice in front of it. At first it looked as if it was going to ram us on the floe, and we kept running around the cake trying to find a place to get off, but there was no water anywhere except immediately in front of the berg. There was the choice of staying on the floe and get caught in the confusion, or else try to get around the berg and behind it. We threw the boat in the water and jumped in, and after a few seconds of exciting maneuvering we succeeded in getting clear to shore, although we did not get there without the usual wettings, but we don't grumble at that by now. We made the island at 1:30 a.m. Mr. Peters shot a walrus shortly after we left Scott Keltie Island, which came threateningly near the canoe. He sank immediately.

We found the cache without trouble and in good condition, and we enjoyed a meal on chipped beef, biscuits and tea. The biscuits were particularly welcome. I have had continual diarrhea from eating dog biscuits.

Saturday, August 6, about noon, Eaton Island

Yesterday in the early morning the wind changed from south to north accompanied by a heavy snowfall. The south wind had almost continually blown for six days without change since we left Hooker Island.

Sunday, August 7, 9p.m.

The north wind which we had hoped would fix things for us all right in De Bruyne's Sound soon died and shortly after the south wind set to blow (which seems to be the prevailing wind here at this season). Of course it was accompanied by rain and fog.

We were mighty glad then when the sun broke through the mist and cleared the sky, and we were not slow to take advantage of the drying weather by putting out blankets, socks, shoes; dry the tent floor etc. After about three hours of sunshine it clouded



over again and a north wind sprung up, but soon worked around to the east and will probably turn south with fog and rain before Long. During the sunny weather we climbed the high part of the island to get a look at the ice but not at any time was it clear enough to make out how far the extended south. On that side it was close up on the island although only a few hours ago there was a good deal of open water in that direction, and we at times feel sorry we did not start then; but we know the fog too well now. No land to be seen either south or west on account of fog banks. Towards the north there is a good deal of water, also in the east and in the west a lead seems to extend some ways. We keep a sharp look-out for the relief ship and often imagine we hear a whistle blow outside.

Monday, August 8

Sunshine, light northeast wind, no movement in the ice to our advantage.

Tuesday, August 9.

Fog, rain and snow. Northeast wind, which has opened a channel along Scott Keltie Island down to and a little beyond Old Depot, Hooker Island. We are hoping for a west or northwest wind to clear out the channel, but it don't seem to want to come.

Wednesday, August 10, 6 p.m.

Today clear and foggy alternately and a very light wind from s.s.w. The lead on the east side does not extend as far south as it did yesterday and has narrowed up considerably. Mr. Peters says he is likely to try that pretty soon down to Old Depot and Etheridge Island; that is alright but from Etheridge Island across to Northbrook in an open canoe of this kind is a risky crossing; with the ice-filled ocean to the south, a northerly wind and nearly 20 miles of crossing would not be altogether pleasant; but on the other hand we have laid here now nearly five days-- longer than at any other time on the trip. It is time to try something.

Thursday, August 11.

Sunshine, fine weather, no strong wind, no change in ice. Sent a flash with magnetometer mirror for one and one half hour to Northbrook Island in hope that someone might possibly see it and if the ship is there, to send for us. We have little hope that someone has seen the flash, but as it is a fine day it might happen that some of the boys there would be running about on the island and possibly look this way.

Friday, August 12, still on Eaton Island.

Cloudy today. Light east wind. No change. Have had diarrhea and pains in stomach these last four days, caused probably by inaction and want of fresh food.

Monday, August 15.

Here we are still on this island with little hope of getting away to the south. Since yesterday it has blown a stiff south wind, sometimes changing to s.s.w., and we are anxious to see what it has done, but today it is clear again and the wind is dying out and opposite to our hopes we see no change to the better; it is even tighter than ever in all directions. We are wondering if the ship is up yet, or if she will come at all. Whatever the



case we do not expect anything from her any longer. This island seems to hold the greater part of the ice from moving, and it would perhaps now be better if we were over on the east side again: perhaps we would have a better show along Hooker Island to Etheridge and from there to our destination, Northbrook Island.

Mr. Peters has been thinking of dragging the canoe empty over the ice to Northbrook Island, and he has also talked of Camp Ziegler and Camp Abruzzi; but I think both Tafel and myself have our thoughts too much towards Cape Flora as yet to look to other places. Since the 11th we have had alternately fog, sunshine, mostly light winds and a little rain.

Tuesday, August 16, 3 p.m.

Time is passing and there is no change in the condition of the ice, closed in every direction. Tafel and myself understand each other well now. We had a talk yesterday and came to the conclusion that in three or four days we would have to look for winter quarters. It is drawing near the end of the summer now and we will no doubt agree on taking the first chance of open water, north or south. Mr. Peters said to me that he would take the first chance of open water back or ahead yesterday, and we have begun to give up all hopes of getting home this year. It seems hard after having made a hundred miles with so much labor and then get stuck in the last twenty. For my part I would be willing to take the risk of walking across dragging the canoe light, but Mr. Peters thinks our footgear, which by now is very dilapidated, won't hold out. It is doubtful whether we would find the ship there anyway; and, of course, we would all rather winter at Camp Abruzzi where there is plenty to eat and a good library, than at Cape Flora, which is doubtful as to food. We will probably move, therefore, north or south.

Coffee and tea are gone two or three weeks ago, also sugar. We make thin drinks of pea soup and emergency ration and occasionally a drink of weak chocolate for substitute. My stomach is nearly well again and our health is good. It is a fine day today, no wind. The ice on the east side is moving up and down with the tide, opening and closing little water spaces. In no direction see we any larger fields of ice---the very worst kind, too small and loose to walk safely over.

August 17, Wednesday.

Fine warm day. Took a bath in one of the beach pools and finished with a plunge in the salt water on the ice-foot.

Thursday, August 18.

Fine warm day. Ice has loosened in the south some.

Friday, August 19.

Foggy; rain in night.

Saturday, August 20.

Fog and mist. No change.

Sunday, August 21.

' Light east wind.

Monday, August 22.

Strong north wind opening the ice on the west side of the island. Fog. About every four hours of the day and night some one of us has gone up on the high point to observe the ice, and we have at least the satisfaction to have kept our eyes open for any possible



chance to get away. There are quite a number of walrus tusks strewn over the island, some way up on the rocks several hundred feet from the water; some large whales and a bear skull we have also come across.

The robber gull and ivory gull nest here. For supper we had the flesh and soup of a couple of robber gulls which we had killed and cooked over a big log fire which we built from drift wood, which was a treat in the cold north wind blowing. One of the gulls Peters killed with a stone; it kept sweeping close to his head, back and forth, and got so troublesome that he threw a stone at it and killed it. As they nested close by the bird probably wanted to scare him away. We found one of their nests up on the rocks and it was interesting to observe the female; to draw our attention away from the nest, which contained one of their ugly, long legged young, she beat her wings, made a noise and acted as though wounded, but if we came up to her she would fly a short distance off and begin again. The male was more bold. He would fly with great speed at our heads as though to strike us and when a few feet off, turned and came back and made himself really annoying.

We have tried a new kind of tobacco here; a dry moss that grows on the rocks. It is smoke producing, but as to the taste, perhaps it came close to burnt paper. It seems a difficult thing enough, to lay off smoking. Our tent is pitched on the sand, there is not much of a choice for a camping place here, and in rainy weather the water penetrates and wets everything; to avoid it we have dug a little trench around it and it helps some.

Tuesday, August 23.

South point, Eaton Island. A pretty strong wind has been blowing for forty eight hours. It opened up a water space on the west side but fog set in and when it again cleared some hours later the ice-field had come down from the north and closed it up.

We are determined now to move as soon as we have good weather and pull across the ice to Northbrook Island. We cached the instruments, records and everything unnecessary for the trip, and then dragged the canoe on the ice-foot to the south point, here, from where we probably start tomorrow. For lunch we had soup on a sea gull. Built a big fire of drift wood tonight and cooked our meal.

Wednesday, August 24, 11:30 p.m.

In camp on ice, British Channel. Left Eaton Island today at 1 o'clock p.m. It was foggy in the morning and we had to wait. Over rough ice and many tight places we made about 4 miles toward Camp Point, halting once for lunch. Made camp for the night at 9:30 p.m.

Our foot gear is in a very poor shape. The uppers of our "komagers" are rotten and torn and the moosehide moccasins get wet and soft and hurt the feet, and are not fit for this kind of traveling. Tafel is worse off for foot gear than any of us; the best things he has is a pair of worn-out heavy sea boots that are so dilapidated that we have had to cut off the tops to cover over holes worn through the soles, and one of them is so crooked that he is walking on the top rather than on the sole. Sometimes we are forced to burst out laughing and pass remarks about our



about our sorrowful but comical appearance. Peters and Tafel got in the water up to their waists.

Thursday, August 25, 11 o'clock p.m.

In camp on ice. Turned out at 6:30 this morning. The weather fine and after breakfast on pemmican stew, we started off hauling over still worse ice than met with yesterday, except for the last two hours when the going was a trifle better. Got very wet today. Mr. Peters up to his neck in a pool. Stopped twice for lunch and supper which we cooked in the boat. Camped for night at 9 p.m., and made between three and four miles. No noticeable drift; getting foggy but no clouds.

Saturday, August 27, midnight.

Camp, British Channel. Yesterday was a hard day for rough ice, pressure ridges and water spaces. We made probably three miles. Today has been cloudy with fog in the forenoon which delayed our start until noon. We met with some large cakes and young ice over which we traveled at a good rate, although now and then we got a ducking when the young ice broke through. It was my turn for icy baths today; got in the water twice and had to change underwear, and shortly before we stopped for supper, 11:30 p.m. I got in the water again and have to roll up in the blankets with wet underclothes while my trousers are drying outside. It's getting very cold too. Our boots are in very poor condition.

Monday, August 29, 2 o'clock a.m.

Sunday at 2:30 p.m. we were off again on another 12 hour run. Before we started we turned the boat over and scraped the keel, which had been badly worn and made her drag heavy. For work like, this the keel ought to be sheeted the whole length. We had a very hard day's work and Mr. Peters and myself were very weak from diarrhea. Mr. Tafel is not bothered by it. It is hardly anything to wonder at though, with improper food and continual foot-baths; and the luxury of perfectly dry clothing we have not had for weeks. The pemmican found in the cache on Eaton Island is entirely too greasy for my stomach and rather unpleasant to the taste. It is the kind used by the Duke of Abruzzi on his expedition. The pemmican brought from the States, the same used on the Baldwin expedition, is again very palatable and sweet and liked by all, raw or cooked. A few pinches of tea had been put away for use as a stimulant in case of need and it is too bad that we have to do without those refreshing beverages, tea and coffee. It seems to me that in depositing a cache intended for future use a small quantity of coffee or tea or some other invigorating and refreshing stimulant, as most every man has had as part of his meal from childhood up, should not be eliminated, but considered rather as a necessity. Met with lots of loose ice today and many partly closed leads today, but were lucky not to get wet more than up to the knee. Stopped for lunch and made soup on a sea (ivory) gull which went very fine. Kept on 'til three a.m. and made perhaps three or four miles. The land does not seem to be over four or five miles off now, and we expect one to two days will see the end of this.

Tuesday, August 30, 4 o'clock a.m.

at 12 noon

Camp Point, Northbrook Island. Broke camp and dragged along



as before. The tin can with the remainder of the dog biscuits we left on the ice to lighten up, as we saw that we were soon to make the island. We met with several good sized fields cut through with a network of pools frozen over with young ice  $3/4$  inch to 1 inch thick, and which cracked in all directions as we slid over. Only a few days ago we had to paddle over these pools or else find a way around them. Stopped for lunch after six hours and then pulled on again over terrible bad ice and crossing many lanes with narrow escapes of getting nipped. One place was a long pool that was closing up and which contained several small bergs and a lot of broken ice moving about in confusion, and it was by scrambling out, on, and over some cakes and almost lift over a little berg that we avoided getting crushed. At another place we had to cut down a good part of a hummock (with Peters' geological hammer, which has been very handy as an ice-pick) and when we hauled over, it almost turned turtle. It was about 15 hours when we pulled up on the glacier slope having made a last short distance in open water, and put up the tent, glad to have made the island at last though yet we have about 20 miles to Cape Flora.

Friday, September 1th, a.m.

Cape Flora, Northbrook Island. At noon, August 31 we packed the blankets on our backs and started overland for Cape Flora. The icefield was close up on the glacier face in the channel so we could not, as we had wished, go down in canoe. Turning the boat bottom up we stored everything under it except the blankets and a few crackers and a little chipped beef for lunch on the way, expecting to make the trip in about 8 hours.

To travel still lighter we also left the gun behind, thinking that the three of us would be good enough for any bear that might come along. Roping ourselves together we started up the glacier, Mr. Peters taking the lead and using the tentpole as a feeler for cracks and fissures. We were not five minutes under way when a heavy fog settled down around us and we stopped a minute to consider; but as we had started we were too anxious to go ahead, which we did, thinking we would not go far out of our way.

Keeping along the glacier slope we continued for several hours, now and then stopping for a blow. A wet snow kept pouring down, making our packs heavy, and a strong easter had also sprung up. For five hours we kept going south by the compass, not being able to see ten feet ahead, and quite often we put our feet in fissures of the glacier, but did not meet with any large ones. The dull grey light was very trying to the eyes and caused my head to ache from constantly watching the glacier surface and trying to get a glimpse of the channel, which must lay somewhere below on the right, but the fog was impenetrable. Two or three times, indeed, someone of us would call out that he could distinguish the bluer spots of the water-soaked ice or make out an iceberg, but on closer investigation it would only turn out to be some little specks of depressions on the glacier, almost immediately at our feet.

We found it a bit difficult to find the nook of Gunter Bay, from where we were to turn our course westward, but descending the



glacier carefully we came down on a low flat beach over which we waded in water and from the trend of the glacier opposite we guessed we had struck it right. Ascending the ice slope, we traveled along for three or four hours more when at last we discerned through the fog a big towering mountain ahead which, when we came nearer, we thought might be Cape Flora. Not long after we were on a rocky beach below and came across footprints in the sand and piles of driftwood stacked up here and there, and momentarily expected to see huts show up through the fog.

How surprised and disappointed were we then when we finally came to a stop against a perpendicular glacier face and recognized that we were out of our reckoning and had walked around Cape Gertrude without having met a living thing.

We had by this time grown very tired, having been on the march something over 11 hours, and wearily we retraced our steps. We knew the whole story now however, as interpreted by the stacks of driftwood and other signs of activity, as hoof-prints and sled tracks, the relief ship had not been up and the party at Cape Flora was preparing for the coming winter. My quiet wishes were then that I had never left Camp Abruzzi, where there was everything in plenty, while down here we knew that food and clothing must be scant perhaps even for a small party, and already there were about twenty men there. No doubt Messrs. Peters and Tafel indulged the same line of thought, particularly Mr. Peters who had been so wrapped up in his scientific work. The fog lay still thick and Cape Flora four to five miles away. Peters and Tafel walked ahead while I sat down for a minute on a rock to swallow a couple of crackers and a bit of chipped beef. Our packs, light as they were, had grown heavy and our feet, that had grown tender from a long and almost continual soak in water for weeks, were aching from the long tramp, and the small stones and pebbles on the beach were a torture to me cutting through the thin and wet moosehide moccasins.

About two hours more of weary walking over the last glacier brought us down on the mossy slopes of Cape Flora and a few minutes later we came in sight of the houses. It was now about 1 o'clock in the morning and the whole camp seemed to be asleep. Coming closer we found Anton and Rilliet astir in their little hut. They were attending the tidal observations and at once got the fire started and the coffee pot going and cooked up some food for us, and there over the roaring fire and steaming coffee we told our news and experiences and listened to theirs happy that we at last had reached a place where we could stretch our tired legs in comfort and without fear or worry.

They had a good laugh at our unrespectable appearance; our hands and faces were black from the soot and smoke of the cooker, and otherwise I guess we did not look any too presentable. We brought greetings from the comrades still at Teplitz Bay, but the sad news of Myhre's death brought seriousness to the otherwise happy faces in the camp.

Here they have been preparing for the winter. Bear, walrus, seal and a great number of birds have been killed, and a vein of coal (or rather a kind of lignite) has happily been discovered at an elevation of 600 feet up on the mountainside and some 30 or more tons taken out; the winter therefore is looked forward to without too much privation. Well, so ended the canoe trip, and the memory of it will certainly stay long with its heroes.



# Commonwealth of Massachusetts

City Clerk's Office, Quincy, April 4, 1946 19.....

I, .....Hattiemay Thomas.....hereby certify that I hold the office of City Clerk, and have the custody of the Records of this City relating to DEATHS, and that the following is a copy from the Record of Deaths in said City:—

Date of Death.....April 24, 1942.....

Name of Deceased.....Anton Marius Vedoe.....

Sex Male..... Condition Married..... Age 61..... years 4..... months 7..... days

Disease .....Carcinoma of kidney.....

Occupation Tool manufacturer..... Residence 58 Cheriton Rd., Quincy, Mass.

Place of Death Quincy, Mass. Place of Birth Sweden.....

Name of Father.....August Vedoe.....

Birthplace of Father.....Norway.....

Name of Mother.....Martha M. Pedersen.....

Birthplace of Mother.....Norway.....

Place of Burial.....Forest Hills Crematory, Boston, Mass.

Date of Record.....April 27, 1942.....

IN WITNESS WHEREOF I hereunto set my hand and the Seal of said City, the day and year first above written.

*Hattiemay Thomas*  
.....  
City Clerk.



You can locate frequently mentioned places by the approximate longitude and latitude coordinates below. The lines of longitude run from the top to bottom of the map. They increase in value from left to right ( $40^{\circ}$ - $56^{\circ}$ ). The lines of latitude run from left to right across the map. They increase in value from the bottom to the top of the map ( $80^{\circ}$ - $82^{\circ}$ ). Each degree is divided into sixty parts so that 15' (fifteen minutes) is one quarter of a degree, 30' is one half a degree and 45' is three quarters of a degree etc.

With these points as reference you can follow Anton's journeys.

<u>Place</u>	<u>Where</u>	<u>Longitude</u>	<u>Latitude</u>
Camp Abruzzi	N.E. Rudolf Island	$58^{\circ}$ E.	$81^{\circ}45'$ N.
Kane Lodge	S. Greely Island	$58^{\circ}$ E.	$80^{\circ}55'$ N.
Camp Ziegler	S. Alger Island	$56^{\circ}$ E.	$80^{\circ}20'$ N.
Cape Flora (Elmwood)	S.W. Northbrook Island	$50^{\circ}$ E.	$79^{\circ}55'$ N.
Nansen's Hut	Cape Norway Jackson I.	$55^{\circ}30'$ E.	$81^{\circ}15'$ N.
White Islands	Hvidten Land Islands	$62^{\circ}$ - $64^{\circ}$ E.	$81^{\circ}30'$ - $82^{\circ}$ N.



July 22, 1992

To holders of "The Arctic Diary of Anton M. Vedoe";

This material should be added to your copy of "The Arctic Diary of Anton M. Vedoe".

April 23, 1992, and by coincidence one day short of the 50th anniversary of Anton's death April 24, 1942, the original material was donated by the Vedoe family to Dartmouth College, Hanover, N.H. An inventory of the donated items and a copy of the deed of gift is herewith. The deed of gift guarantees to the descendants of Anton Vedoe the right to view the collection during normal business hours of the Arctic Collection at the Baker Memorial Library at Dartmouth.

Also a copy of errata is enclosed. I have used "slush" for "sludge", because that is current American usage, but since making the change I have found some glossaries which identify "sludge" as an accepted use at the time Anton wrote his diary.

Special attention is called to the discussion, page III of the appendix, on Walter Sullivan's story on the Russian report on finding a note at Camp Abruzzi in 1969. It is now clear that Sullivan's conclusion that Tessem, A. Vedoe and Rilliet were defectors is incorrect, and that Hunt's allusion to assassination is without foundation.

For additional interest is Susan Barr's article and photos in the "Polar Record" of her 1990 visit to Franz Josef Land.

Also added are pages 174-1,2,3,4 which are a draft report of Anton's field work April 11-July 11, 1905. Note page 171-4 which confirms the composition of the party including equipment on July 2, 1905, the date of the note found by the Russians.

J.D VEDOE



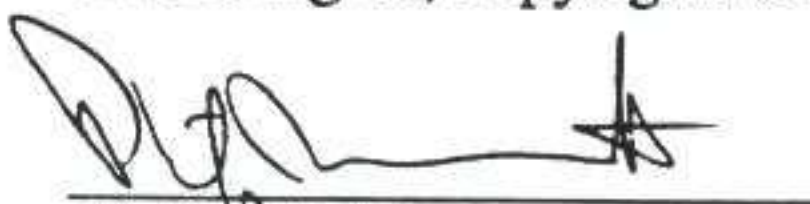
## Deed of Gift

We, Shirley Ida Vedoe of Lexington in the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, Russell Anton Vedoe of Westminster in the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, and John Douglas Vedoe of Spruce Head in the State of Maine, hereby jointly give and grant to the Trustees of Dartmouth College, a corporation duly existing under the laws of the State of New Hampshire and located at Hanover in said State, all of the papers and personal archives, consisting of literary, historical, scientific or other manuscripts and typescripts, as well as correspondence and documents, notes and notebooks, photographs and other associated records relating to the Arctic exploration career of Anton Vedoe from the period 1895 to 1963. The collection is described on the attached inventory which forms a part of this deed of gift. This instrument will also serve to convey any further gifts of Anton Vedoe material that we wish to make to the said Trustees at a later date.

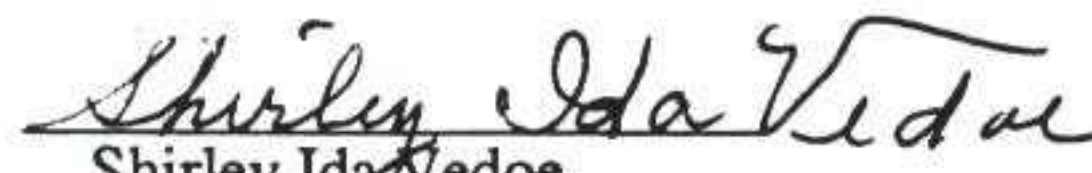
The following restrictions apply to this gift:

1. That any materials deemed not germane by Dartmouth College during the processing and cataloging of this collection will be returned to the donors immediately.
2. That if, during the lifetime of any of the three joint donors, the collection is no longer deemed germane to the College's manuscript holdings, the collection will be returned in its entirety to the donors.
3. That access to the collection during normal working hours of the department is guaranteed to the descendants of Anton Vedoe.

This conveyance is restricted to the physical property herein described and to the physical property rights attaching thereto. It does not transfer to said Trustees any literary property rights, artistic rights, copyrights or patents that may be associated with these materials or resources.

  
Philip N. Cronenwett  
for Dartmouth College

Aug 23, 1992  
Date

  
Shirley Ida Vedoe

  
Russell Anton Vedoe

  
John Douglas Vedoe



ARTIFACTS AND MANUSCRIPTS OF ANTON M. VEDOE RELATIVE TO BALDWIN-ZIEGLER  
POLAR EXPEDITION (1901-02) AND ZIEGLER POLAR EXPEDITION (1903-05)

	Qty.	Item
#1	4	8x10 negatives of AMV
#2	1	ditto scene at Camp Abruzzi
#3	1	photo AMV fur clothes and gun
#4	1	photo ship America
#5	1	2½x4 photo Fiala
#6	1	invitation "Complimentary Dinner Robert E. Peary" 3/5/10
#7	2	invitations "Dinner Frederick Cook, Discoverer of North Pole" 4/21/08
#8	1	envelop addressed to Eldridge Perry- hand drawn stamp
#9	1	letter recommendation from Hartt to Henderson
#10	1	original copy typescript "Description & Inventory of Caches between Camp Ziegler and Wiener Neustadt Is." 5 pgs.
#11	1	Copy "General Orders" #32 1/14/04
#12	2	menu Christmas Banquet 1903
#13	4	copies "Arctic Eagle"
#14	3	covers only ditto
#15	1	original discharge signed Fiala 11/21/05
#16	1	letter invitation to Anglo/American Polar Expedition to Parry Islands and Beaufort Sea, signed Einar Mikkleson
#17	1	projected program above, signed Leffingwell and Mikklesen
#18	1	photo 3½x5¼ Spencer Stewart in furs 1905
#19	1	photo 7x8½ printing Arctic Eagle, John Vedoe, Pierre La Royer, Bernhard Spencer, Montrose, Spencer Stewart
#20	1	letter Spencer Stewart 3/199/63 with captioned photos
#21	1	letter Stewart to Porter 11/30/23
#22	1	letter Herman Andre to John Vedoe 4/05
#23	1	Declaration of Intention- aboard S.S America signed Baldwin 3/2/02
#24	4	photos 3½x5½ Porter, Fiala, Hare, Stewart, A. Vedoe 1923 (in #21)
#25	1	letter recommendation signed Hartt 5/9/04
#26	1	report Porter to Fiala 4/27/04 journey Porter and Vedoe
#27	1	application Baldwin/Ziegler Polar Expedition signed Vedoe
#28	1	letter Fiala To Vedoe 2/21/03
#29	1	photo 6½x9 Engine room America- Vedoe, Hartt 3 others



	Qty.	Item
#30	1	Declaration of Intention, Jan. 12, 1907
#31	1	photo, school class Stockholm- Anton 3rd from rt 2cnd row from back
#32	1	diploma grammar school 10/8/'95
#33	1	receipt for delivery East Camp Ziegler 5/19/05
#34	1	copy "Ziegler Polar Expedition 1903-05 Scientific Results"
#35	1	McClure's Magazine Feb. '06 "Two Years in the Arctic" Fiala
#36		ditto March '06
#37	1	map from library Duke of Abruzzi "Nord Polar Region"
#38	1	assortment news clippings relative to Ziegler expeditions
#39	1	typescript "journal J.S. Vedoe" account of canoe trip from Teplitz Bay to Cape Flora July 8-Sept. 1, 1904
#40	1	sledge flags, Norwegian
#41	1	ditto German?
#42	1	flag 22x30 Norway
#43	1	"Rules and Regulations" ZPE 1903
#44	1	packet notes on Baldwin/Zielger Polar Expedition
#45	1	"Vulture" hand done joke book
#46	1	assortment bulletins Arctic Club of America 1907-1910
#47	17	hand-written note books and loose leaves- diaries of Anton Vedoe 1903-05 Ziegler Polar Expedition
#48	1	note J.S. Vedoe to Spencer Stewart
#49	1	map of Franz Josef Land with Baldwin survey results
#50	1	Arctic Club Manual
#51	2	mounted photos of Terra Nova
#52	1	folder- assortment of photos- mostly from Baldwin 1901-02
#53	2	walrus tusks 20 and 23 inches long- one broken
#54	1	fossilized snail about 3" D.
#55	1	8mm Mannlicher rifle branded Ziegler Polar Expedition-fine condition
#56	2	postage stamps- designed by Porter printed at Camp Abruzzi- Rare
#57	1	bound copy typescript "The Arctic Diary of Anton M. Vedoe"
#58	1	unbound original typescript with negatives etc.



Notes on 1992 Revision

The transcription of Anton Vedoe's Arctic diaries was completed in August 1990. Completion and printing were rushed, with only a cursory review for typos and accuracy, as I wanted to take copies to Norway the end of August. This edition has been reviewed for typographical errors and corrected as best I could. There are a few instances in the first typescript where my interpretation of Anton's handwriting did not make sense. I have reviewed these and made appropriate corrections.

I will not attempt to list the typos, and, indeed may not have found all of them. There are many places where "flow" has been corrected to "floe" and "sludge" to "slush". I will attempt to list the changes in wording which have an effect on meaning.

<u>Page</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>line</u>	<u>Original</u>	<u>followed by corrected</u>
42	7/3	1	blank--	loose
42	7/4	5	blank--	circus
47	7/21	1	blank--	fast ice
65	10/22	20	filled--Anton may have confused the Swedish word for drunk which sounds like fill. Anyway the Captain and First Mate, who were alcoholics, were drunk.	
70	11/12	16	instantly--	starting
71	11/13	14	tinned--	turned on
76	11/26	9-11	should read-- Sometimes the wind would take the sledge and swing out in a circle and almost tear the line out of our hands.	
77	11/3	13	ratchetts--	brackets
81	12/25	16	blank--	here
81	12/25	17	blank--	now
81	12/26	7	blank--	dinner
82	12/28	3	turned--	burst
87	2/12	7	easiest--	surest
87	2/12	10	lighter sledge--	higher edge
89	2/12	6	with--	in front
91	3/2	21	should read--	is very warm when standing still for any length of time.
91	3/3	10	add--	"him"
92	3/6	9	Fiala--	Mack
92	3/7	2	should read--	it was thick and drifting
92	3/6	4	house--	canoe
98	3/30	8	gblocking--	rough locking (ref. Fiala & Shorkley)
98	3/31	6	strewn--	screw
100	4/3	31	starting out--	slanting, at that,
101	4/5	1	had had--	had bad
102	4/8	3	saying--	shouting
122	6/8	23	sound--	road
128	7/5	6	down--	dam
144	11/17	1	hideous today. Still--	hideous to lay still
147	1/19	1	South is written--	does he mean North?
160	4/19	9	we passed on--	we paused once past
173	6/26	10	instruments--	intervals
174-1,2,3,4			Added "Draft of Field Report" Fiala from Vedoe	

In addition to the corrections the material on the finding of a note by the Russians and the visit in 1990 to Franz Josef Land by the Norwegian Polar Institute were added in an appendix.



Draft Report on Field Trip April 11-July 11, 1905

In accordance to your request, I take pleasure to submit a report of work accomplished by parties in the field under my command, April 11th 1905 to July 11, 1905, mainly for the purpose of relieving parties wintering at Cape Flora, transporting provisions from Camp Abruzzi.

I call special attention to the fact that during these three months Mr. Tessem and myself have found the skis, that we carried, almost indispensable while using them practically all the time in all kinds of going.

Leaving Camp Abruzzi the 11th of April at 8:45 a.m., crossing the glacier of the island and travelling down the channel by way of Coburg and Stolickza Islands, we arrived in good condition at Kane Lodge the evening of the 13th. After having selected a few articles of clothing for the men at Camp Ziegler and also 100 rounds of 45-70 ammunition to be exchanged at Cape Flora, we took farewell of Dr. Seitz and party, and continued on our way, camping that night at the rookery on Wiener Neustadt Isl. The afternoon of the 16th we arrived at Camp Ziegler having met with deep snow and bad weather during the last day's travel.

Here we found everything in good order and after some hearty handshakes and answered numerous questions, we were soon deeply interested in bearsteak and tea. The two, Rilliet and Butland, soon to be lonely inhabitants seemed in the best of health. Tobacco, mail and packages were issued and receipts for same received. The party from Cape Flora had been here, and on Mr. Rilliet's stating that they had taken out of here everything they wanted, as our loads were still heavy I concluded not to increase them, especially as the last day's heavy drift indicated hard travelling.

Remaining there the 17th, repacking our loads, resting the dogs and drying our footgear we were all ready to leave the morning of the 18th. Mr. Stewart, whose knee had for some time bothered him, and showing signs to the worse was to his great disappointment forced to stay behind. Fireman Butland took his place.

As expected we met with very deep snow the two first days out of Camp Ziegler until rounding Cape Albert Markham. Fireman Butland whose inability to use the skis to advantage forced him to trudge through the often knee deep snow on foot deserves all praise for his laborious work during those days.

Crossing De Bruyne Sound the 21st we met Dr. Vaughn and Sgt. W. Moulton on their way to Dundee Pt. after a load of provisions previously hauled from Camp Ziegler. Some tobacco was given to Sgt. Moulton and soon after we saw them disappear enveloped in a cloud of smoke from where we were encamped.

At 3:25 the afternoon of the twenty-second we arrived at Elmwood, Cape Flora, and were welcomed by everybody in camp. Many helping hands soon emptied our sledges. mail, tobacco and personal packages were issued to their respective receivers. The provisions were taken care of by Messrs. John Truden and 1st officer E. Haven as acting commissaries for the different houses. As far as could be judged by appearances the men were in good



were in good health.

Our dogs were falling off fast, especially the younger ones, so in order to give them a well needed rest I decided to remain for a few days, during which we were treated with kind hospitality by both parties. During our stay we occupied the little house on the hill and were provided with fuel from the houses as we did our own cooking.

In the meantime Chas. Hudgins was getting ready, together with sailor Montrose, to accompany us to Camp Ziegler for the purpose of bringing down the indian canoe and some more provisions if possible. Dr. Vaughn and Sargt. Moulton returned and we were generously offered to make use of several caches of dog food and kerosene, deposited by them, on the time of our return. As my brother, John, expressed his wish to follow us up to Camp Ziegler and there wait for the relief ship arrival, I arranged with Mr. F. Long to relieve him, which he willingly agreed to.

Thursday the 25th at 10:31 a.m. we started our return in company with Mr. Chas Hudgins and sailor Montrose reaching Cape Louis Poole the 29th at 1:40 p.m. (having shot a bear on the way). Here we dug for the Porter igloo, but with no result. A hole about eight feet deep and 6x6 square was dug. The snow being so hard packed that it had to be cut out with the pick. Not knowing the exact spot to dig and the snowbank being 25 or more feet I gave it up as it would probably be several days work with the few tools we were in possession of.

The second of May we were at Camp Ziegler again after two days of tiresome struggle through deep moist snow and foggy weather.

Two parties from north having arrived, the place was crowded and less suited for a resting place.

Replenishing our sledge stores and having had a few hours sleep we left for Kane Lodge the following morning at 9:50. Mr. Stewart was now in condition to accompany us and fireman Butland remained at Camp Ziegler. Passing Cape Washington the afternoon of the fifth, we filled a bag with coal from the deposit found there last year. We tried it on arrival at Kane Lodge and found it to burn quite satisfactory.

Resting here three days we made a general overhaul of clothes and equipment. Dr. Seitz and party arrived there the 10th, and left for Soliczka Isl. the day after.

May 13th we were through at Kane Lodge having hauled eight loads of provisions to the Rookery which I judged to be as much as we could safely transport to Camp Ziegler before the end of the month.

The night of the fourteenth our bamboo pole gave way under one of the strong gusts sweeping down from off the Rookery. A new one was hewed by carpenter Tessem out of an old shaft found under the boat placed there by Mr. Baldwin. That day we hauled four loads past the waterhole placing them on the beach on south side of the island. Following day the four remaining loads were safely taken around.

The 16th we broke camp at Wiener Neustadt Isl. 1 o'clock in the morning. The prevailing high temperature together with heavy snowfall had made great changes in the travelling. The deep wet snow



clung so intensely to the sledge runners that it was almost impossible to start them when once stopped. Lightening one of the sledges by leaving a box of emergency rations on the ice and shifting the loads about we made slow progress arriving at North Isl. after two days of hard work. I decided then to run through with part of our loads to Camp Ziegler to exchange our sledges for metal shod ones.

May the 21st at 9:30 a.m. we left Camp Ziegler equipped with german silver shod sledges on which we had spent two days for repairs. Going through to Wiener Neustadt Isl. we arrived there 5:35 p.m.

May the 27th we brought our last loads into North Isl., from which place part of our established cache had been removed to Camp Ziegler by parties sent out from there.

The morning of the 29th all of the provisions were at Camp Ziegler in good condition.

The 30th of May I started out with a party of four men and 4 dog teams for the purpose of bringing back the cache located by Mr. Porter in Zichy Land and also some bear meat cached at a position a little further inland. Finding the caches without trouble we continued to a waterhole a few miles further in view of getting some more game for dog food. No game was seen. We returned to the emergency ration cache, on the way loading on the bear meat. The 4th of June it was all at Camp Ziegler.

Mr. Peters, worried for the welfare of you and Mr. Hartt, asked me together with Mr. Chas. E. Rilliet and carpenter Tessem to make a run up to Kane Lodge with orders if not finding you there to look for you east and west of Greely Island, and on our return to bring down the boat from the "Rookery" at Wiener Neustadt Island.

With two dog teams we left June 5th and arrived at Kane Lodge the morning of the 8th. We found no signs of you there. The following morning, leaving Mr. Rilliet in camp, Tessem and I ran over on to Cape Washington, where we ascended the glacier and travelled across the domes to a place about 5 miles inland from where we had a good view of the west side of Coalmine and Greely Islands. We detected nothing through the glasses that indicated your presence anywhere. The following day we hitched up the dog teams and taking tent and provisions along we intended to run up to Kane Isl., but stopped by open water a little south of the entrance to Sternek Fjord stretching about three miles east and the ice beyond the ice looked quite broken up in places. We returned to a place where an easy ascent of the glacier was made, and from there the ice and points of land were closely surveyed. Several water holes were visible to the north and east. Along Alexander Land and as much as could be seen of the western limits of Austria Sound the ice looked still quite solid. No trace of man was seen. We waited two days at the Lodge in hope of your possible arrival, occupying ourselves repairing and making new sleeping bags.

On the morning of the 12th we started on our return. At the "Rookery" the boat with oars was loaded on one of the sledges. The old sledge on which it had been resting was left in its old place. We arrived at Camp Ziegler the 16th, on the road having picked up a bear shot and cached on our outboard run.



June 18th we again started; this time for Camp Abruzzi. Mr. Chas. E. Rilliet, carpenter Tessem and myself consisting the party. Two dog teams of nine dogs each and the Indian canoe were taken along. Although late in the season I did not expect to meet with much open water on our intended course, and therefore decided to take the above mentioned number of dogs to facilitate speedy travel, not giving the channels time to break up.

8 p.m. the 19th we arrived at Kane Lodge. The ice, so far, was remarkably good. A strong N.W. wind packing the loose ice tightly in the channel in such a way as to prevent the launching of the canoe kept us at the Lodge the 20th. The following day, after an unsuccessful attempt to cross the waterhole, we decided to cross the island. Entering at day the south west point under west cape where camped in the evening on the glacier slope being compelled to stop on account of very heavy snowfall and thick fog. Next day we reached top of the dome and descended slowly gaining the ice at the western end of the Isl., from where we travelled north up the channel, camping that night at Kremsmunster, Backs Inlet, "Jackson Island." Up the channel over fair going we arrived at Coburg 9:00 p.m. the 24th. Stopping there for lunch we continued on to Hohenloe Isl. where we made camp at midnight.

At 1:00 a.m. the 25th we arrived at Camp Abruzzi, which we, of course, found vacant. The house and storeroom were still in good shape, also the astronomical observ. A few articles and instruments, already known to you, needed at Camp Ziegler were gotten ready for our departure which took place the 2nd of July, after having put everything in order and nailed up the house.

On our return to Camp Ziegler had no difficulty to follow our route as before, on which no particular changes had taken place. Arrived at Camp Ziegler 6:20 p.m. the 11th of July.



APPENDIX

Page

- I- New York Times "'04 Note Stirs Polar Mystery"
- II- Discussion on '04 note
- IX- Letter Norsk Polar Institute
- X- Visit in 1990 to Franz Josef Land. From Polar Record.



THURSDAY, JANUARY 30, 1969

## '04 Note Stirs Polar Mystery

By WALTER SULLIVAN

A note seemingly indicative of defection in an American expedition during the race for the North Pole at the start of this century has been found by Russian explorers on Rudolf Island, northernmost point in Soviet territory.

Adding to the mystery, according to the Soviet account, has been the excavation, from ice covering the island, of women's shoes, top hats, tail coats and false shirt fronts.

In the cabin of the American leader, the Russians say, was "an infernal machine, the wire of which extended to the dynamic charge in the food storage."

Did this mean, the Russians ask, that the expedition failed because of "animosity" among its members?

The note that was found, in a state of partial decay, would seem to indicate such dissension. According to the Soviet account, it said:

"We, the opposition, are leaving the camp on Saturday, July 2, 1904, having 18 dogs, two ponies and an indian boat."

It was signed, the report said, by "Tess, Veddy and Ralliet."

### Dishes and Rum Found

Also excavated at the site were "crystal and porcelain dishes covered with gilt" as well as a small barrel of rum. All buildings of the station, said the report, were linked by telephone.

The base was that used by the Ziegler-Fiala Expedition of 1903-1906. From it three abortive efforts to reach the North Pole were made.

At the same time Adm. Robert E. Peary and Dr. Frederick A. Cook were thrusting northward from the American side of the Arctic. Cook claimed that he reached the

Pole in 1908, and Peary said he did so in 1909.

The finding was reported recently by Novosti, the Soviet feature agency. The report was made on the basis of a finding by a Soviet wintering party.

In an effort to elucidate the account, a search has been made by this writer of the records of the American



The New York Times Jan. 30, 1969  
American camp site (cross)

expedition and of an Italian party previously based at the same site.

The account written by the leader of the American venture, Anthony Fiala, a Brooklyn photographer, made no mention of telephones—for "infernal devices." However, he said, the camp was wired for electric lights, powered by a mile-long wire from the expedition ship.

In a storm one night the lights went out and when the gale subsided the ship had vanished. She had broken loose. She finally returned, only to be crushed by ice soon thereafter.

Fiala's account was pub-

lished by the National Geographic Society under the direction of Gilbert N. Grosvenor. The expedition was a major enterprise, with 39 men, 218 dogs and 30 long-haired Siberian ponies. It was financed by William Ziegler, a millionaire who founded the Royal Baking Powder Company and made another fortune in Brooklyn real estate.

In one respect the Russians give credit to the expedition where it is not entirely due. They say it was "considered successful" because Fiala brought all of his men home. Actually one member of the expedition who died was buried on Rudolf Island—possibly, Fiala said, the northernmost grave in the world.

Fiala had taken part in an earlier expedition, also financed by Ziegler, that failed to achieve the Pole. In March, 1904, from his base on Rudolf Island, Fiala made two abortive attempts to start for the Pole. In both cases he was turned back by bad conditions and a variety of mishaps.

### Second Try in 1905

He decided to remain a second winter and try once more in 1905. However, according to his account, he allowed all who wished to go home to retreat south to an agreed upon rendezvous with a rescue ship.

"The politicians in the retreating party," Fiala wrote, "used their influence and persuasiveness to enlarge their own party—until those to whom 'Northward?' had become a shibboleth, became, like Gideon's band, fewer and fewer."

After the homeward bound party had left, two other men "made no secret of the fact that they had grown discouraged with the out-

look." They took off after the retreating group.

However, the ship Terra Nova, assigned to rescue them, was unable to breach the ice and the entire expedition had to remain another winter. The Terra Nova later carried Capt. Robert F. Scott on his ill-fated expedition to the South Pole.

The note found by the Russians dates from the time when most of Fiala's men, temporarily under his leadership, had marched south to await rescue.

While the names given in the Soviet account are garbled, it is clear that the note was signed by: Peter L. Tessem, the Norwegian ship's carpenter; Charles E. Rilliet of St. Louis, Mo., quartermaster in charge of equipment, and one of the two Vedoe's on the expedition.

Both were from Boston and probably were brothers. John Vedoe was assistant quartermaster, Anton Vedoe was an assistant ship's engineer.

The episode that gave rise to the note is not described in Fiala's account. He was absent from the camp at the time. When he returned the three men had apparently ended their defection.

From Fiala's account he seems to have remained on good terms with Rilliet and the two Vedoes, but he virtually ignores Tessem.

The Soviet report of finery is puzzling since photographs of the expedition at Christmas dinner, both in 1903 and 1904, show no elaborate clothing.

It is possible that the Russians, who now maintain a station on Rudolf Island, dug up material left by Luigi Amadeo, Duke of the Abruzzi, several years earlier.

The Duke, a mountaineer, explorer and a dashing national hero of Italy, made his camp at the same site in 1899. His men marched across the pack ice to within 300 miles of the Pole—the furthest north achieved to that time. This led leaders of the two Ziegler expeditions

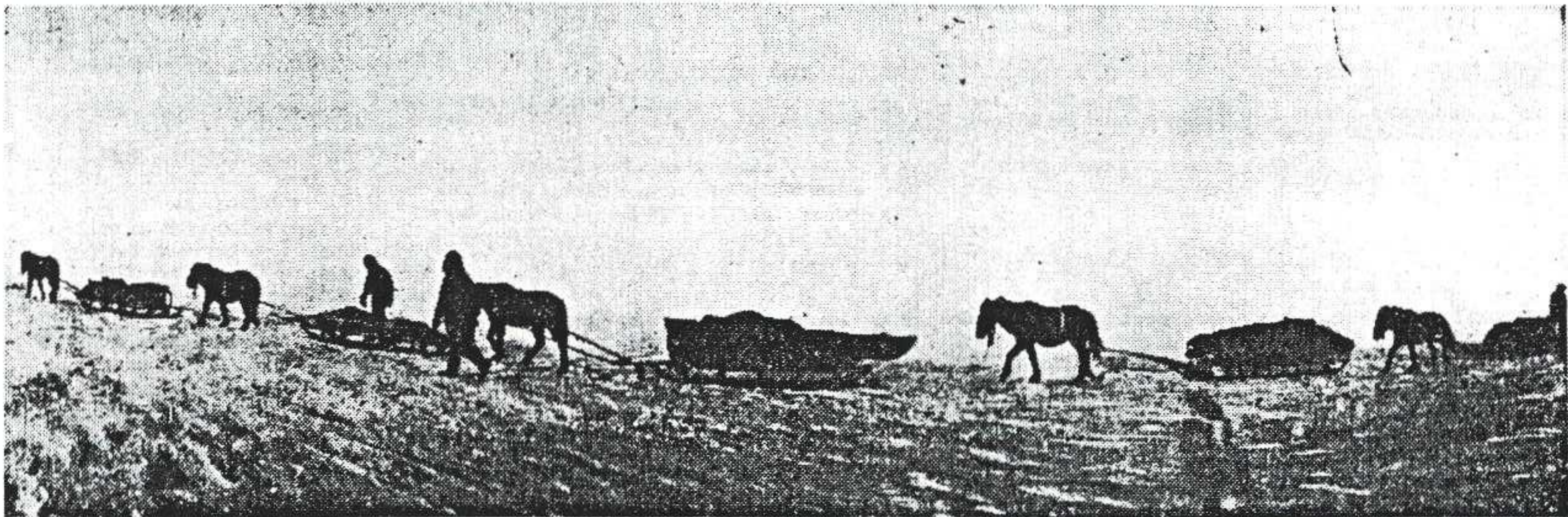
to believe Rudolph Island was a good jumping-off place.

The Duke, in his account, told how he and his companions celebrated the birthday of Queen Margherita of Italy by opening her gifts. They had been delivered to the expedition by Count Oldofredi when the ship called at Archangel. The Queen's husband, Humbert I, was assassinated while the expedition was in the Arctic.

The unopened gifts of the Queen and others had been salvaged when the expedition ship was lost. "One box had already been opened on Oct. 21," the Duke wrote in his account, "and the presents so kindly given by the Duchess Elena of Aosta were divided among the officers and men. 'Her majesty the Queen had allocated silver chains to the men and various objects for the officers. Each object bore the name of the person to whom it was to be given—a most tender bit of attention and one that permitted me to make my comrades happy with these remembrances of distant Italy.'"

It is at least possible that the expedition's royal sponsors thought top hats and tails would enliven evenings at a polar camp. The shoes may have been a memento of a more intimate kind.





From "Fighting the Polar Ice," Doubleday, Page & Co., 1906

Long-haired Siberian ponies of the American expedition of Ziegler-Fiala pulling sleds over Rudolf Island on one of three vain attempts at North Pole

Left- Back to front  
Peters, Seitz, Anton Vedoe,  
Meyer, Perry

Right- Back to front  
Bernard Spencer,  
Spencer Stewart, Tessem,  
Duffy, Hartt



American expedition on Rudolf Island celebrating Christmas in 1904. Russians reported finding top hats, tail coats and other finery at the site, though it is not evident here.



'04 NOTE STIRS POLAR MYSTERY

"We, the opposition, are leaving the camp on Saturday July 2, 1904, having 18 dogs, two ponies and an indian boat."

This note was left by Tessem, Vedoe, and Rilliet, but under different circumstances than Sullivan assumes. Information from Anton Vedoe's diary and Fiala's "Fighting the Polar Ice" refutes Sullivan's assumption that the note was indicative of dissent and defection. While it is true that there was dissension among some of the members, neither of the two Vedoes, nor Rilliet, nor Tessem were part of it.

As reported by the Russians, the note found on Rudolph Island was dated July 2, 1904. On this date Anton Vedoe and Rilliet, members of Porter's survey party, were on Rubini Rock off Hooker Island about 90 miles south of Camp Abruzzi, Rudolph Island, where the note was found. This party left Camp Abruzzi May 9, 1904 for Cape Flora on a journey of exploration and survey. ("Fighting the Polar Ice", pg 97.

John Vedoe and Tessem were at Camp Abruzzi July 2, 1904. Therefore, the trio of a Vedoe, Tessem and Rilliet which signed the note could not have been together July 2, 1904 at Camp Abruzzi nor anywhere else.

Anton Vedoe, Rilliet and Tessem were at Camp Abruzzi, Rudolph Island July 2 1905, and did leave a note there on that date.

In July, 1905 all members of the expedition were either at Cape Flora or Camp Ziegler or heading there to wait rescue. Commander Fiala and Chief Engineer Hartt, the last two at Camp Abruzzi, had left there May 26 for Camp Ziegler. Mr. Peters, at Camp Ziegler, was anxious for their safety and sent Anton with Tessem and Rilliet to search for them. They left June 5 and returned to Camp Ziegler June 16, 1905 with no news of Fiala. Peters then asked Anton to lead the trio of himself, Tessem and Rilliet to Camp Abruzzi to look for Fiala and Hartt. This was a 220 mile round trip. They arrived at Camp Abruzzi June 26, 1905. Anton writes in his diary on this date, "Nobody here and no message". They were now the last 3 men of the Ziegler Polar Expedition at Camp Abruzzi. They rested for a few days and left July 2, 1905 for Camp Ziegler. Anton's diary on this date reads, "Arose again at 11:00 a.m. After breakfast we packed the sledges, cleaned the house. At 5 we had everything in order, had our last lunch, nailed up the windows, doors and left for south, leaving a note at 6:30."

This is the note discovered by the Russians, either dated incorrectly or, more likely, incorrectly read by the Russians.

As reported "the note was found in a state of partial decay"



The difficulty in reading a decayed note and the possibility that the contents of the note may have been translated from English to Russian and back to English may explain some of the puzzles in the note.

Date- The note must have been written in 1905.

Ponies- There were no ponies At Camp Abruzzi in July of 1904 nor in July 1905. All ponies were taken south to Cape Flora by Fiala, arriving there May 16, 1904. All except two were shot immediately; the remaining two were shot for food September 1904. (Pg. 208, "Fighting the Polar Ice") The party of Vedoe, Tessem and Rilliet had dogs, two sledges and a canoe, but definitely no ponies. I believe that "sledges" not "ponies" was written, but not deciphered as such by the Russians.

Indian boat- An example of translation English to Russian back to English. The Ziegler Polar Expedition used a number of canoes which they called either canoe or indian canoe, never as boats.

Opposition- Something has happened here, either in translation or difficulty reading the handwriting, illegible because of decay. There is no reason for them to write "we, the opposition". There is absolutely no evidence that Vedoe, Tessem and Rilliet were defectors or dissenters. To the contrary, Anton's diary, Porter's and Peter's reports to the Commander, Fiala in "Fighting the Polar Ice", Porter in the "Arctic Diary of Russell Williams Porter" indicate obedience to orders, work performed well and efficiently and a harmonious relationship with the Commander and his staff. There is abundant evidence on this score and not one bit to the contrary. Let's take a look at the record:

Anton put up with Hartt's drunken behavior in Tromsoe and one can deduce that Anton was a principal in getting the engine room ready for the voyage.

He was chosen to go on all three Polar attempts.

He installed the light system, telephones and set up the machine shop at Camp Abruzzi.

The captain and first mate apparently lost control of the AMERICA during the storm of Oct. 22-24, 1903 in Teplitz Bay. On Nov. 3, Fiala commended Anton for his behavior during this critical period.

Discovered a coal mine at Cape Flora which solved a fuel shortage.

He made at least 11 sledge journeys and was leader in a number of them. As far as I can tell he spent more time in the field and travelled more miles than any other individual in the expedition.

It is clear that he served with distinction. Anton's discharge from the expedition reads in part, "After the loss of AMERICA, Engineer Vedoe assisted in the work of the expedition on shore and proved to be of great value in the many sledge journeys



made between 1903 and 1905. He is especially recommended for honesty, efficiency and faithfulness" Signed by Fiala, dated November 21, 1905. "Opposition" is not consistent with all we know of this episode when the note was written, nor what we know about the men.

The note that Vedoe, Tessem and Rilliet left was most likely this:

"We, the undersigned, are leaving camp on Saturday, July 2, 1905, having 18 dogs, two sledges and an indian canoe\* Tessem, Vedoe, Rilliet".

\*See pg 174-4 Draft Field Report for confirmation.

Douglas Vedoe

November 1990

---

February 1992

Through the courtesy of Dartmouth College I have read copies of journals of George Shorkley M.D., surgeon who was aboard FRITJOF, the relief ship for the Baldwin-Ziegler Expedition and chief medical officer for the Ziegler Polar Expedition 1903-05; Ernest De Koven Leffingwell, responsible for survey work on the Baldwin-Ziegler Expedition; Russell W. Porter, scientist and member of the Baldwin Expedition, third in command of the 1903-05 Ziegler Expedition. After reading the above and the Vedoe diaries and Fighting The Polar Ice I conclude as follows regarding the dissension on both expeditions:

It seems clear to me the Evelyn Baldwin did not supply the leadership required on the 1901-02 expedition, and that little was accomplished.

In his published "Arctic Diary of Russell Williams Porter" Porter refers (p 26/27 AMV) to the dissatisfaction of the men because Baldwin did not allow the men sleeping bags as safety measure after a near loss of a party in a snow storm while freighting supplies from West to East Camp Ziegler. He also alludes to the failure of Leffingwell to accomplish much in his work, because Baldwin attached priority to freighting over survey. In his diary on February 25, 1902 Leffingwell states that Baldwin peremptorily ordered him to "cease all preparations for field work and to hand in all data connected with my work (and further) that whether I should go on with my scientific work depends on circumstances." There are only five entries in the diary after that. Probably Leffingwell did no further scientific work worth reporting, and did take part in freighting supplies north to Camp Abruzzi.

It is tragic to read of the careless mistreatment and loss of the dogs to cold, hunger and worm infestation. Over half of the 428 dogs did not survive the winter. The dogs were not trained



and many others were lost in the spring sledging. Fiala in 1903-05 lost some dogs, but nowhere near the catastrophic number of Baldwin's losses. Ironically as Porter points out (pg. 26 Vedoe) some good came out of the 1901-02 expedition; the 15-20 tons of supplies Baldwin freighted to Rudolf Island were very valuable to Fiala after the loss of AMERICA with one half their supplies. On return from Franz Josef Land Baldwin was discharged by Ziegler and Fiala was chosen to lead the 1903-05 expedition.

Dissension on the 1903-05 expedition was probably created by the intermixing of the ship's crew with the field party after the sinking of the AMERICA. The groups, each with a different social background, were forced to live together in a small hut.

It seems obvious as I read Shorkley's journal that his sensibilities were offended by the ship's crew. In addition he had no use for Fiala, referring to him as cowardly among other choice adjectives and to the "headless" expedition. After Fiala took the home-bound party of crew and field party to Cape Flora in the spring of 1904, a physical division of the two groups took place; the ship's crew, with Fiala, in one set of quarters and the field party in another building. Shorkley continues to deprecate Fiala, and in one instance refuses to take orders from Fiala. Neither Porter nor Vedoe in their diaries hold with this action by Shorkley, and affirm their loyalty and desire to follow the commander's orders.

At Cape Flora Fiala, apparently fed up with the dissenting field party members, bunks with the ship's crew. Shorkley accuses Fiala of siding with the Captain and 1st Mate, who were alcoholics. According to Shorkley, Fiala gives the Captain access to the spirits. This is difficult to understand.

Not wanting to be involved with the disputing factions, Porter, the two Vedoes and Rilliet had their own quarters.

As one reads Shorkley's diary, one senses that he may have been a vocal leader in the dissension.

William R. Hunt wrote on page 101 of his "To Stand at the Pole", "Fiala wrote nothing of what was seemingly an assassination attempt on him." Hunt jumps on his own to this conclusion relying only on the Russian's report, which is suspect, as reported by Walter Sullivan in the New York Times and in the "Polar Times, and which is not substantiated by any other information on the expedition. Hunt's conclusion is unjustified and is so much hog-wash.

In conclusion, the much reported dissension did not include assassination, was confined to Cape Flora and while there are instances of individual quarrels, there was never any physical action between the Cape Flora parties.

J.D.V.





# NORSK POLARINSTITUTT

NORWEGIAN POLAR RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Postboks 158 N - 1330 Oslo lufthavn  
NORWAY

-VII-

Kontor: (02) 12 36 30  
- innvalg (02) 12 30 18 -

Materiell: (02) 24 88 60  
Ny-Ålesund: (080) 27 115  
Longyearbyen: (080) 21 121

Douglas Vedoe  
Gulls Nest  
Spruce Head  
MAINE 04859  
U S A

Vår dato  
- referanse

22.11.1990  
2839/90/SB/034.2

Deres dato  
- referanse

Dear Mr Vedoe

## The Arctic Diary of Anton M. Vedoe

I am an ethnologist/polar historian working at the Norwegian Polar Research Institute, where Frøystein Olsen is also employed. He has shown me the above-mentioned diary and told me that you would like to know if there is interest for this book in a museum or institution concerned with such historical matter.

I read the diary with very great interest. I was myself in Franz Josef Land this summer in a private expedition to discover the site of Nansen's and Johansen's wintering hut. We also visited Camp Ziegler, Teplitz Bay and Cape Flora, which are all mentioned in the diary. I must admit that I was almost living with your Father's expedition as I read the diary and could imagine the places and the scenery as I had seen them myself.

This private experience also gave me more background to judge the diary, and I was impressed by the wealth of useful details both about the area and the expedition. The diary is written in such a way that it will also appeal and be of use to others interested in such areas and to historians.

At the Polar Institute we have the largest collection in Norway of polar literature and other written and photographic historical material from the polar areas. This includes a collection of diaries, some original and some copies. We would be most pleased if we could include a copy of your Father's diary in our collection. Should you wish to place original material in the Institute, we would of course appreciate that very much.

I look forward to hearing from you on this matter.

Yours sincerely

Susan Barr  
Research Fellow

Copy: Frøystein Olsen



# Soviet-Norwegian Historical Expedition to Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa

Susan Barr

NAVF/Norsk Polarinstitut, P.O. Box 158, N-1330 Oslo Lufthavn, Norway

Received September 1990

**ABSTRACT.** In summer 1990 a Soviet-Norwegian expedition spent three weeks travelling to and around Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa (Franz Joseph Land). The main purpose of the expedition was to locate the remains of Fridtjof Nansen and Hjalmar Johansen's wintering quarters of 1895-96, and other historical sites at Cape Flora, Eira Harbour, Camp Ziegler, Buchta Tichaja and Teplitz Bay were also visited. The group experienced an amazing openness in this area which has been closed to visitors since 1930. The historical sites and their present condition are described.

## Contents

Introduction	297
Discovering Nansen's hut	297
Cape Flora and Eira Harbour	299
Camp Ziegler, Buchta Tichaja and Teplitz Bay	300
Conclusion and acknowledgements	301
References	302

## Introduction

The Soviet-Norwegian Historical Expedition to Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa (Franz Josef Land), consisted of five participants from Norway, including an interpreter and a journalist from one of the largest newspapers in Norway, and five from the Soviet Union including a film-photographer and a radio operator. The main aims of the expedition were to discover and document the remains of Fridtjof Nansen and Hjalmar Johansen's wintering hut from 1895-96, and to visit and record as many other historical remains as possible. The time span of the expedition was three weeks in July-August 1990.

In the course of the expedition we gained rough insight into an enormous area of the western Soviet Arctic. We flew by helicopter along the entire Taymyr peninsula from Dickson to Cape Tsjeljuskin, and from there to Severnaya Zemlya and along the main ice edge to Graham Bell Island, the northeasternmost of the Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa group. The original plan involved use of inflatable boats to get us from Jackson Island to Rudolph Island, with stops on the way. However, reconnaissance flights from Graham Bell Island southwestwards to Cape Flora and Bell Island and back, and later from Graham Bell around Rudolf Island to Jackson Island, showed that there was far too much drift ice to attempt using boats. Least ice was to be seen as expected in the southwest, while the more eastern and northern parts were totally ice-covered over large areas. Instead, the whole operation was carried out by helicopter. We spent a little time at various historical sites during our trips, including six highly profitable days at Cape Norvegia.

## Discovering Nansen's hut

Nansen's standing in Norway is that of national hero

because of his Arctic expeditions and later diplomatic and humanitarian work, and because he raised the national self-esteem at a time when Norway was regaining independence. He is held in great esteem also in the Soviet Union, both because of his Arctic work and because of the assistance he gave to the Soviet people during the hunger and refugee crises in 1921-22.

Nansen had set off from Norway in *Fram* and with 12 other crew members in July 1893. The ship froze into the ice north of Novosibirskie Ostrova and drifted slowly westwards as planned. In March 1895 Nansen and Johansen left the ship to strike for the North Pole. When they realized that they would not make it all the way, they turned at what was then a northern record (86°14'N) and headed south, uncertain as to where they were when they reached land early in August. Paddling their small kayaks southwards, they concluded correctly that it must be part of Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa, and hoped that they could reach the house of the British explorer Leigh Smith at Eira Harbour (see below) before the summer was too far advanced. However, the constant appearance of pack ice, blown before the wind, put paid to such hopes, and at the end of August the two decided to winter. They found a spot where a moss and stone terrace about 100m wide sloped gently towards the shore, backed by a bird breeding cliff, with talus providing ample building material.

During the month it took Nansen and Johansen to build their hut they lived in a temporary den (Hulen) consisting of draughty stone walls with the ragged tent stretched over as a roof. This was so small that Nansen could only lie down, not sit, and his feet protruded through the doorway (rather dangerous, with curious polar bears around). The wintering hut was built further back from the shore, midway between the cliff and the sea and slightly higher. With improvised tools including a sledge runner, ski poles, and a walrus shoulder blade and tusk, they scraped a hollow about 1 m deep and 2 x 3 m wide. Walls were raised around the hollow with stones from the talus, moss and earth to a height of about 1 m. We used some of the talus to build a cairn around a post with a memorial plaque, and can vouch for the fact that the large flat stones are excellent for the job. Both Nansen and we observed very little



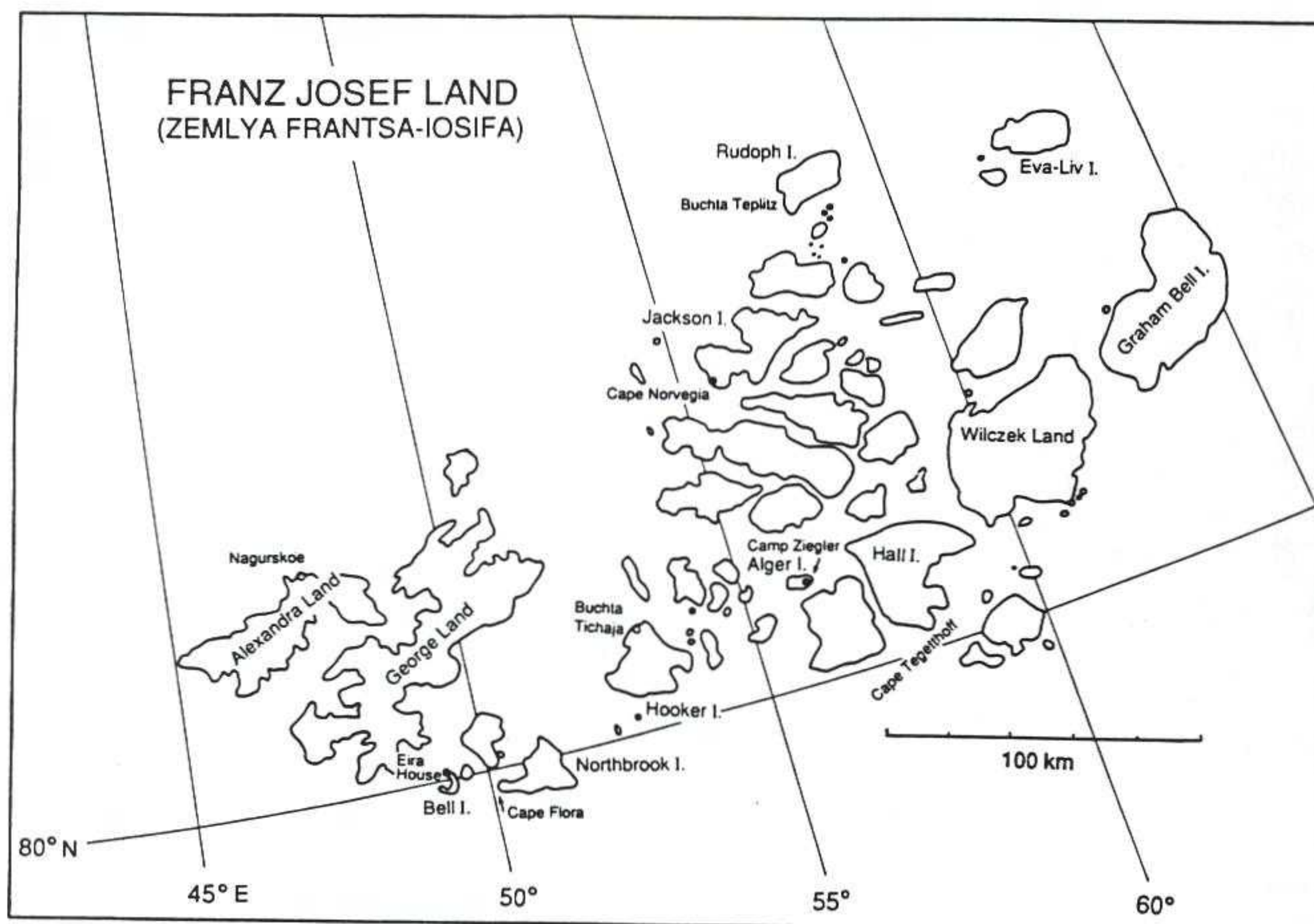


Fig. 1. Location map.

driftwood in the archipelago: the only large log he found became a ridge pole for the hut. Roofing material was walrus hides, which required considerable effort to get into place as they were not only extremely heavy, but also frozen.

A close reading of the literature and interpretation of both old maps and new Soviet maps had convinced the Norwegian group that the site of this hut was Cape Norvegia. The hut is marked, for example, on Ziegler's map of 1905 and the Norges Svalbard-og-Ishavs-undersøkelser map of 1929. The Russian group, however, considered that Nansen and Johansen wintered nearer to Cape Mill, slightly to the north of Cape Norvegia. We agreed that Cape Norvegia should be explored first, and landed by helicopter on a wide terrace between the bird cliffs and the sea. The camp was established and we set off eastwards along the shore looking for the remains. They proved to lie approximately 2.5 km to the east of our landing site.

Nansen and Johansen lived almost exclusively on walrus and polar bear meat and blubber during their wintering. We saw very few walrus, but there is no doubt that there was a polar bear route along the shore. During the six days we camped there, we had 17 visits from polar bears, all on their way from west to east around the cape.

Our experience made it easier to understand why the decision to winter was taken as early as the last part of August, despite the fact that the possibility of a solid house and perhaps stores was beckoning further south. We

experienced our first snow storm on 4 August and pack ice filled the sea lane three days later. From the various expedition reports we had read beforehand (see references) we expected wetter and more wintry summer weather than, for example, on Spitsbergen. This certainly proved true. We knew also to expect a lot of bears, a sore point of discussion with our Russian companions.

The hut was still standing in 1902 when visited by Evelyn Baldwin, and it was visited again in 1904 by two members of the Fiala-Ziegler expedition. Clearing it of snow, Baldwin had discovered inside it a blubber lamp and a note from the two explorers. We had with us a photostat copy of his photograph of the hut (Baldwin 1903: 590), showing two characteristic rock formations sticking up over a ridge: a similar photograph appears in Nansen's book (Nansen 1897: 428). Seeing these during our search made it clear that we were on the right track.

The ground was luckily free of snow, or the remains would have been more difficult to locate. Some distance away from it we caught sight of the ridge pole, the only driftwood in the area and too far from the shore (50m) to have arrived there naturally (Fig. 2). It still rested on the remains of the stone walls, which had collapsed and fallen partly into the hollow and partly outside: the remains now covered an area of 4 x 4 m. A 10 cm layer of moss had grown over the site in the course of the 94 years. There was no sign of the walrus-hide roof, which bears, birds and foxes had probably destroyed. Screws and nails used to



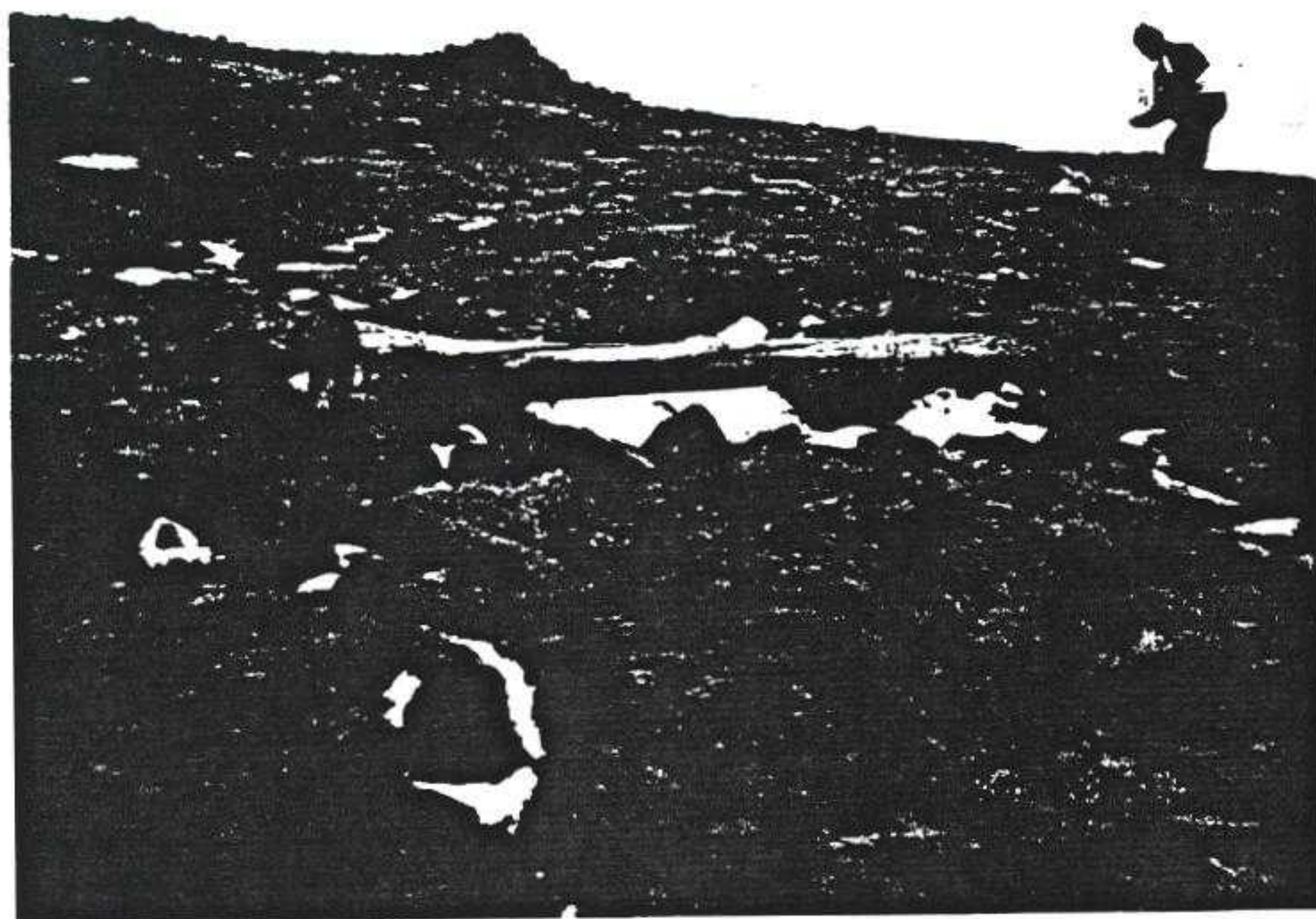


Fig. 2. Remains of Nansen and Johansen's wintering hut. hold the hide in place were still in the log.

Our expedition was not equipped for archaeological excavation. We lifted three of the wall stones from the hollow, but found that the depressions immediately filled with water. The ground around the site was not especially damp, though there was a brook 7 m to the east. Presumably melt water from the glacier on the cliff behind tended to collect in the hollow. Johansen mentioned in his book (1898: 264) that water trickled in when the weather was mild during the digging.

The first sweep of our Russian companions' metal detector discovered a cartridge case lying in deep moss outside the western wall of the hut. Experts at the Defence Museum in Oslo (Forsvarsmuseet), interpreting the marking DM 9.00 on the base of the case, later determined it to be Mauser ammunition of German manufacture dating from September 1900. Our two heroes did not have a Mauser with them, and the case did not match a box of unused ammunition from Nansen's expedition held in the museum. It was more likely, therefore, to have belonged to Baldwin, who spent two days recording the hut in 1902 (Baldwin 1903: 591). A thin strip of metal discovered in the same place is believed to be part of a nickel or german-silver sledge runner sheath (Nansen 1897: 67, 92). This is now in the Framhuset museum i Oslo. To reach both finds the vegetation layer was carefully stripped back and replaced as before. A large number of bones close by suggested that this was a rubbish tip close to the entrance by the southwest corner of the hut (Johansen 1898: 263). Skulls and other bones of polar bears lay visible in the moss all around the site.

The hut remains, Hulen and the surrounding area were thoroughly photographed, measured and sketched. A memorial cairn and post were raised nearby with a memo-

rial plaque in Norwegian and Russian commemorating the wintering, and a note explaining who had raised it and when. When we left the area after six days, we felt that we had done all that we had hoped to do.

#### Cape Flora and Eira Harbour

Cape Flora, in the southwest of the archipelago, is one of the most accessible places for ships. Benjamin Leigh Smith with 24 others wintered there in 1881 after losing his ship nearby, and Frederick Jackson established a large station, 'Elmwood', at the cape in 1894 for his three-year

exploration and study of Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa. It was here that Nansen met Jackson in June 1896 in what must be one of the happiest coincidences in arctic history. The turf and stone hut built by Leigh Smith at Cape Flora was described as derelict in 1894 (Jackson 1899: I: 41). Walter Wellman's expedition moved some of the Elmwood houses to Cape Tegetthof in 1898, and Sedov's expedition in 1914 found the remaining buildings an excellent source of firewood. The *Bratvaag* expedition in 1928 reported only a few remains of Elmwood.

During our two-hour visit by helicopter we found the Elmwood site clearly identifiable from the photographs in

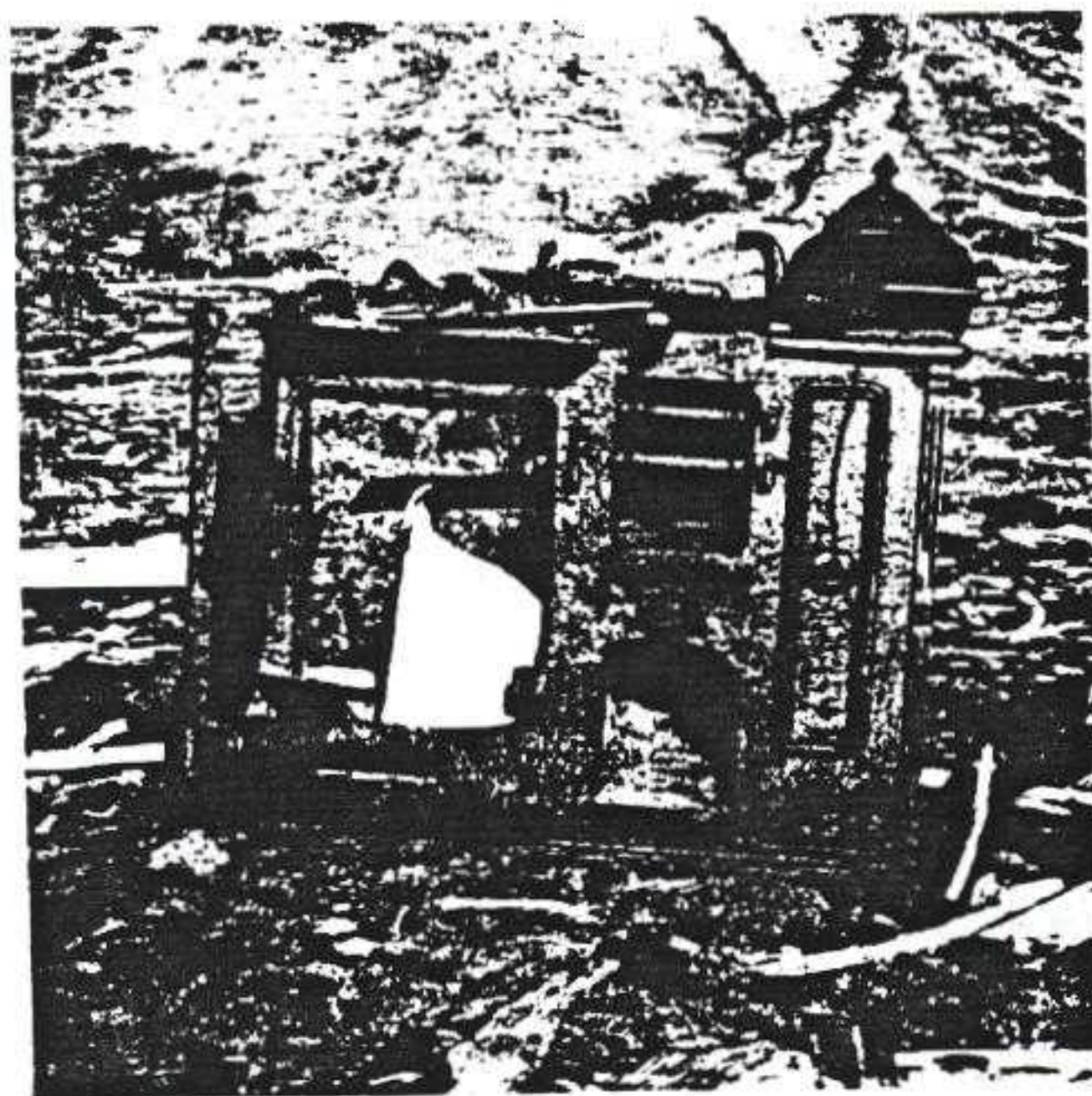


Fig. 3. The Monarch Portable Cooking Range, Elmwood, Cape Flora.





Fig. 4. Leigh Smith's Eira House, Bell Island.

Jackson's account. The pond is still there, also a large boulder seen in photographs beside the log cabin from Archangel. In front of this cabin Nansen and Johansen were photographed on their arrival at Cape Flora: only the foundations now remain, together with a Monarch Portable Cooking Range standing majestically in the open air, with a broken teapot looking ready to boil (Fig. 3). A few metres away lie the foundations and part of the timber frame of one of four octagonal canvas huts (Jackson 1899: I: 201, Abruzzi 1903: 61). Jackson described these as having a framework of wood and canvas, giving the advantage of light weight and easy packing; however, they were of no use as living accommodation in that climate (Jackson 1899: I: 48). Beyond this toward the shore could be seen a path where boulders had been cleared for



Fig. 5. Camp Ziegler

transporting goods from ship to camp. A more thorough investigation of the Elmwood site would no doubt turn up more objects and details of interest.

In March 1900 three members of the Duke of Abruzzi's *Zemlya Frantsa-Iosifa* expedition, Norwegian H. A. Stokken and Italians F. Querini and F. Ollier, disappeared on the ice north of Rudolph Island while assisting in an attempt to reach the North Pole. Stokken's father led an unsuccessful search expedition to the archipelago in 1901. The memorial pillar raised on Cape Flora to the missing men still stands firmly today. A nearby Soviet memorial post raised problems of identification. The text was torn off on both sides and the piece left in the middle did not give us our Soviet companions enough information. It seems to honour the heroic crew of a ship, but we hope for more definite identification from the Soviets at a later date.

During our visit to Cape Flora the sun was shining and the weather was calm. We had no problem in associating the name with the carpets of arctic poppies in the lush vegetation under the bird cliff. From there we flew to Bell Island and Eira Harbour, where Leigh Smith had built his large (5 x 7 m) wintering base in 1881. Leigh Smith's expedition never lived there: after erecting it they sailed further on an exploratory tour and lost their ship in the ice near Cape Flora. Jackson (1899: I: 223, 319) searched for the hut in 1895 but did not find it because it was buried in snow. This seemed amazing to us in summer conditions: the house stands alone and clearly visible on a spit of land where it could hardly be overlooked (Fig. 4). It remains in perfect condition, totally empty of furniture, goods or dividing walls, but seemingly ready for the next expedition to take over. As at Cape Flora, we could see here a path cleared of stones between the house and the shore.

#### Camp Ziegler, Buchta Tichaja and Teplitz Bay

Camp Ziegler on Alger Island was visited briefly. During our visit a Soviet ice-breaker was in the bay with a party of archaeologists from Moscow University who were engaged in a detailed study of the site, and would later in the summer be studying the sites at Cape Flora. The historic site consisted of two small huts built by Evelyn Baldwin in 1901 during the Baldwin-Ziegler attempt on the North Pole. The site was used also by the Fiala-Ziegler expedition with the same objective in 1903-05. We saw the lower part of what appeared to be two octagonal wooden huts joined by a timber framework. A wooden sledge lay in the space between the huts. The entire construction stood in a low sandy mound through which protruded the remains of wooden barrels or tubs of various sizes, tin cans, a stretch of wire netting and jumbled pieces of wood (Fig. 5). Still partly frozen near the outside wall of one of the huts was a pair of wooden shoes which, somewhat possessively, the archaeologists would not allow us to film in situ. We were told that Moscow archaeologists had worked at the site previously in 1965.

Buchta Tichaja (Calm Bay) on Hooker Island was also





Fig. 6. Abandoned meteorological station, Buchta Tichaja.

visited briefly. The name was given by Lt. Georgij Sedov who wintered there in 1913–14 in yet another attempt on the North Pole. Ice conditions in the archipelago vary considerably from year to year. While the Duke of Abruzzi could sail to Teplitz Bay on Prince Rudolf Island and use it as his starting point for an attempted north polar journey (see below), Sedov had to winter much further south. 'Calm' refers to the fact that there was very little movement in the sea ice during Sedov's wintering; his ship *Sr Foca* lay peacefully in the bay without being subjected to ice screwing. He in fact died of scurvy and exhaustion on Prince Rudolf Island as he made his way northwards in 1914. Fifteen years later the Soviet icebreaker *Sedov* established a meteorological station at Buchta Tichaja (Horn 1930: 23).

The station was enlarged for the Second International Polar Year in 1932, and operated throughout World War II: the crew who manned it at the outbreak could not be relieved until the end of the war. It remained open until 1963. We saw the remains of a considerable complex of approximately 20 buildings, most now snow-filled, a clutch of meteorological observation huts, two large tracked vehicles, an aircraft hangar, masts and antennae, piles of wooden barrels, heaps of coal, many kennels and more (Fig. 6). Though the site has protected status, it is visited by Soviet cruise ships and subject to souvenir hunting. A Russian Orthodox memorial cross to Sedov stands close to the station, together with a new memorial cross erected in 1990 by a group of women skiers, who had apparently visited several historic sites in the archipelago — yet another sign that the area is being opened to visitors. At the end of 1990 an agreement was made between the Norwegian Polar Research Institute and the Murmansk Marine Biological Institute on the use of Buchta Tichaja Station as a joint research station.

Teplitz Bay, our last stop, was named by Julius Payer

in 1874 after his birthplace in Bohemia. The Duke of Abruzzi's expedition wintered there in 1899–1900, and the Fiala-Ziegler expedition spent two winters there in 1903–05, losing their ship *America* in the bay. A Norwegian, Sigurd B. Myhre, died during the expedition and was buried on the summit of the rocky plateau overlooking the bay. A geophysical station was opened there in the Second International Polar Year 1932–33. Later in the 1930s Teplitz Bay became a starting point for several Soviet aviation achievements, including the landing of 11 men at the North Pole on 21 May 1937 (*Polar*

*Record* 1937). Ivan D. Papanin led the group of four which established a floating ice station at the Pole. During the drift of the station, relief aircraft were kept on standby at the Teplitz Bay station. Remains of an aircraft that crash-landed near the station in 1938 may still be seen. We did not have time to investigate the abandoned polar year station or earlier sites, but visited the current meteorological station, where we found the cross from Myhre's grave in the safe keeping of the meteorologists (Fig. 7).

#### Conclusion and acknowledgements

This Soviet-Norwegian historical expedition succeeded in its two most important objectives: locating and record-



Fig. 7. Soviet meteorologists holding part of a damaged memorial cross, recovered from the grave of Sigurd Myhre above Teplitz Bay.



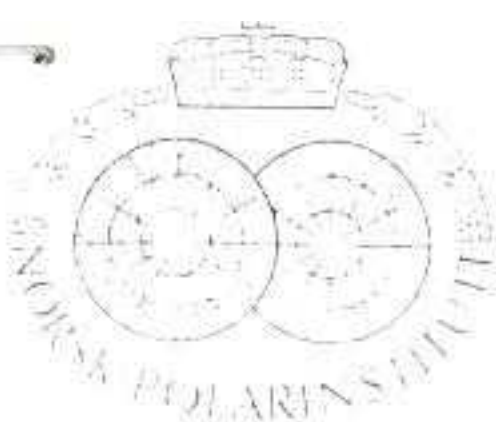
ing the remains of the Nansen-Johansen overwintering hut, and contributing to greater cooperation between Norwegian and Soviet scientists in an area that has for long been considered closed on grounds of military security. We are most grateful for the genuine openness and hearty friendliness that we encountered all the way.

#### References

- Abruzzi, Duke of. 1903. *On the "Polar Star" in the Arctic Sea*. London, Hutchinson.
- Baldwin, E. B. 1903. The Baldwin-Ziegler Polar Expedition. *Wide World Magazine* 10 (58): 396-402; (59):

- 432-36; (60): 587-93.
- Fiala, A. 1906. *Fighting the Polar Ice*. New York, Doubleday Page.
- Horn, G. 1930. *Franz Josef Land*. NSIU Skrifter No. 29. Norsk Polarinstitut, Oslo.
- Jackson, F. G. 1899. *A Thousand Days in the Arctic*. London, Harper and Brothers.
- Johansen, H. 1898. *Selv-anden paa 86°14'* Kristiania, Aschehong.
- Nansen, F. 1987. *Farthest North*. Westminster, Archibald Constable.
- Polar Record*. 1937. Soviet Union North Pole Expedition, 1937. *Polar Record* 14: 98-104.





# NORSK POLARINSTITUTT

NORWEGIAN POLAR RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Postboks 155 N - 1330 Oslo Linnøy  
NORWAY

1

Kontor: (02) 12 36 50  
- innvalg (02) 12 30 18 +  
Materiell: (02) 24 88 60  
Ny-Ålesund: (080) 27 115  
Longyearbyen: (080) 21 111

Douglas Vedoe  
Gulls Nest  
Spruce Head  
MAINE 04859  
U S A

Vår dato 11.3.1991  
- referanse 631/91/SB/034.2

Dato: 11.3.1991  
- referanse


Dear Mr Vedoe


## The Arctic Diary of Anton M. Vedoe

It was with great pleasure we received the copy of your father's diary and it is now safely in the Institute library. We thank you very much indeed for this most interesting addition to our collection.

We hope to hear from you concerning the original material from your father's arctic travels.

Yours sincerely

  
Susan Barr  
Research Fellow

  
Reidunn Lund  
Librarian

Kontoradresse: Rølfstangveien 12, Snarøya  
Materiellavdel.: Fossåveien 70, 1343 Eiksmarka  
Svalbardkontoret: Postboks 505, 9170 Longyearbyen  
Forskningsstasjonen: 9173 Ny-Ålesund

Telex: 74 745 Polar N  
Telefax: (02) 12 38 54  
Tgm.adr.: SVALIS OSLO

Bank giro: 0629,05,8(27)  
6039,05,16978  
Post giro: 0808,50,28800





# NORSK POLARINSTITUTT

NORWEGIAN POLAR RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Postboks 158 N - 1330 Oslo lufthavn  
NORWAY

Kontor: (02) 12 36 50  
- innvalg (02) 12 30 18 +

Materiell: (02) 24 88 60  
Ny-Ålesund: (080) 27 115  
Longyearbyen: (080) 21 121

Douglas Vedoe  
Gulls Nest  
Spruce Head  
MAINE 04859  
U S A

Vår dato:  
- referanse

22.11.1990  
2839/90/SB/

Deres dato:  
- referanse

Dear Mr Vedoe

## The Arctic Diary of Anton M. Vedoe

I am an ethnologist/polar historian working at the Norwegian Polar Research Institute, where Frøystein Olsen is also employed. He has shown me the above-mentioned diary and told me that you would like to know if there is interest for this book in a museum or institution concerned with such historical matter.

I read the diary with very great interest. I was myself in Franz Josef Land this summer in a private expedition to discover the site of Nansen's and Johansen's wintering hut. We also visited Camp Ziegler, Teplitz Bay and Cape Flora, which are all mentioned in the diary. I must admit that I was almost living with your Father's expedition as I read the diary and could imagine the places and the scenery as I had seen them myself.

This private experience also gave me more background to judge the diary, and I was impressed by the wealth of useful details both about the area and the expedition. The diary is written in such a way that it will also appeal and be of use to others interested in such areas and to historians.

At the Polar Institute we have the largest collection in Norway of polar literature and other written and photographic historical material from the polar areas. This includes a collection of diaries, some original and some copies. We would be most pleased if we could include a copy of your Father's diary in our collection. Should you wish to place original material in the Institute, we would of course appreciate that very much.

I look forward to hearing from you on this matter.

Yours sincerely

Susan Barr  
Research Fellow

Copy: Frøystein Olsen

Kontoradresse: Rolfstangveien 12, Snarøya  
Materiellavd./lager: Fossumvn. 70, 1343 Eiksmarka  
Svalbardkontoret: Postboks 505, 9170 Longyearbyen  
Forskningsstasjonen: 9173 Ny-Ålesund

Telex: 74 745 Polar N  
Telefax: (02) 12 38 54  
Tgmadr: SVALIS OSLO

Bankgiro: 0629,05,81271  
6039,05,16978  
Postgiro: 0808 5028800



